2022

Escalade

Contents

Introduction 1
Keys, Doors, and Windows 6
Seats and Restraints 39
Storage 97
Instruments and Controls 103
Lighting 150
Infotainment System 159
Climate Controls 220
Driving and Operating 229
Vehicle Care 367
Service and Maintenance 451
Technical Data 464
Customer Information 467
Reporting Safety Defects 477
OnStar 480
Connected Services 486
Index 489

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 84793868 A First Printing

Introduction

The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, CADILLAC, the CADILLAC Emblem, and ESCALADE are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Company” for Cadillac Motor Car Division wherever it appears in this manual.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on the vehicle because of optional equipment that was not purchased on the vehicle, model variants, country specifications, features/applications that may not be available in your region, or changes subsequent to the printing of this owner’s manual, including changes in standard or optional content.

If the vehicle has the Duramax diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for additional and specific information on this engine.

Refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm the features.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Canadian Vehicle Owners

A French language manual can be obtained from your dealer, at www.helminc.com, or from:

Propriétaires Canadiens

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès du concessionnaire ou à l'adresse suivante:

©2021 General Motors LLC. All Rights Reserved.

Helm, Incorporated
Attention: Customer Service
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, MI 48170
USA

Using this Manual

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

Danger, Warning, and Caution

Warning messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce them.

⚠ Danger

Danger indicates a hazard with a high level of risk which will result in serious injury or death.

⚠ Warning

Warning indicates a hazard that could result in injury or death.

Caution

Caution indicates a hazard that could result in property or vehicle damage.

A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

📖 **:** Shown when the owner’s manual has additional instructions or information.

: Shown when the service manual has additional instructions or information.

⇨ **:** Shown when there is more information on another page — “see page.”

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. See the features in this manual for information.

: Air Conditioning System

: Air Conditioning Refrigerant Oil

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Brake System Warning Light

: Dispose of Used Components Properly

: Do Not Apply High Pressure Water

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Flame/Fire Prohibited

: Flammable

: Forward Collision Alert

: Fuse Block Cover Lock Location

: Fuses

: ISOFIX/LATCH System Child Restraints

: Keep Fuse Block Covers Properly Installed

: Lane Change Alert

: Lane Departure Warning

: Lane Keep Assist

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Park Assist

: Pedestrian Ahead Indicator

: Power

: Rear Cross Traffic Alert

: Registered Technician

: Remote Vehicle Start

: Risk of Electrical Fire

: Seat Belt Reminders

: Side Blind Zone Alert

: Stop/Start

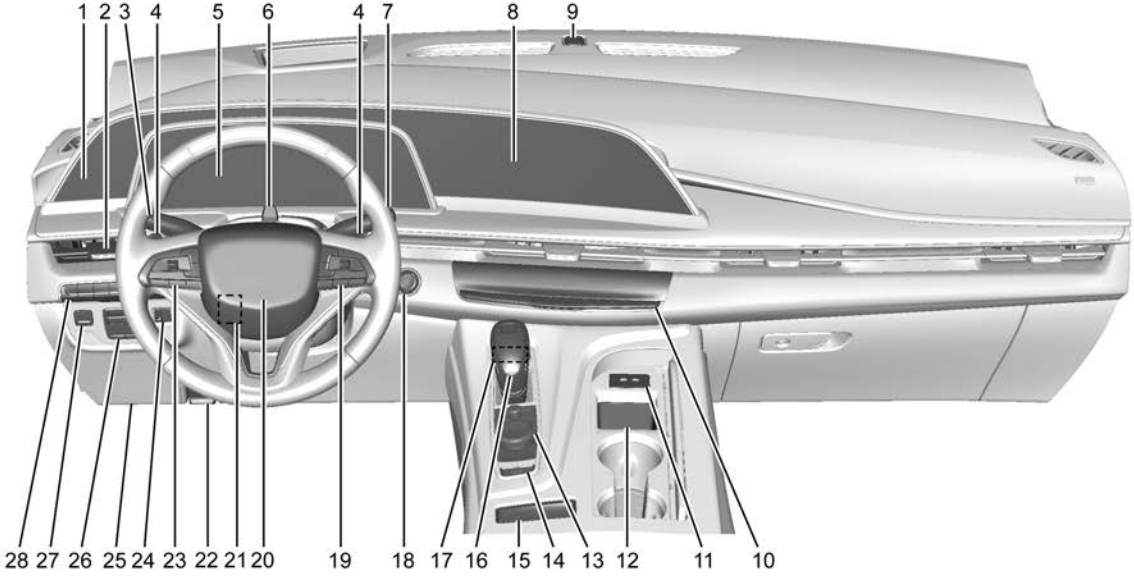
: Tire Pressure Monitor

: Traction Control/StabiliTrak/ Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

: Under Pressure

: Vehicle Ahead Indicator

Instrument Panel Overview



1. *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *132*.
2. *Air Vents* ⇨ *226*.
3. Turn Signal Lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *154*.

   Exterior Lamp Controls ⇨ *150*.
4. Tap Shift Controls (If Equipped). See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *255*.
5. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*.
6. Driver Monitoring Camera. See *Super Cruise* ⇨ *285* (If Equipped).
7. *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *105*.

   Rear Window Wiper/Washer ⇨ *107*.
8. Infotainment. See *Overview* ⇨ *160*.
9. Light Sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *153*.
10. *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *220*.

    Heated and Ventilated Front Seats ⇨ *47* (If Equipped).
11. USB Ports. See *USB Port* ⇨ *170*.
12. Storage Compartment.
13. Infotainment Controls. See *Overview* ⇨ *160*.
14. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *154*.
15. *Wireless Charging* ⇨ *111*.
16. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *251*.
17. *Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)* ⇨ *263* (Out of View).

    Auto Stop Disable Switch. See *Stop/Start System* ⇨ *247* (Out of View).

    Lane Keep Assist (LKA) ⇨ *329* (If Equipped) (Out of View).
18. ENGINE START/STOP Button. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *245*.
19. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *104*.
20. *Horn* ⇨ *104*.
21. Steering Column Adjustment. See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *104*.
22. Hood Release. See *Hood* ⇨ *369*.
23. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *272* (If Equipped).

    Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced) ⇨ *274* (If Equipped).

    Super Cruise ⇨ *285* (If Equipped).

    Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *318* (If Equipped).

    Heated Steering Wheel ⇨ *104* (If Equipped).
24. *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *155*.
25. Data Link Connector (DLC) (Out of View). See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *122*.
26. Trailer Brake Control. See *Towing Equipment* ⇨ *343* (If Equipped).
27. *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *261*.
28. *Four-Wheel Drive* ⇨ *256* (If Equipped).

    Four Corner Air Suspension System ⇨ *269* (If Equipped).

    Driver Mode Control ⇨ *266*

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks

Keys 6
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 7
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 7
Remote Vehicle Start 13
Door Locks 14
Power Door Locks 17
Delayed Locking 18
Automatic Door Locks 18
Lockout Protection 18
Safety Locks 19

Doors

Liftgate 19
Power Assist Steps 27

Vehicle Security

Vehicle Security 27
Vehicle Alarm System 27
Steering Column Lock 29
Immobilizer 30
Immobilizer Operation 30

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors 31
Power Mirrors 31
Folding Mirrors 31
Heated Mirrors 32
Automatic Dimming Mirror 32
Reverse Tilt Mirrors 33

Interior Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirrors 33
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 33
Rear Camera Mirror 33

Windows

Windows 35
Power Windows 35
Sun Visors 37

Roof

Sunroof 37

Keys and Locks

Keys

⚠ Warning

Leaving children in a vehicle with a remote key is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the remote key in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with a remote key.

The mechanical key inside the remote key can be used for all locks.

To remove the mechanical key, press the button near the bottom of the remote key, and pull the mechanical key out. Never pull the mechanical key out without pressing the button.

If it becomes difficult to turn a key, inspect the key blade for debris. Periodically clean with a brush or pick.

See your dealer if a replacement key or additional key is needed.

Contact Roadside Service if locked out of the vehicle. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *471*.

With an active OnStar or connected service plan, an OnStar Advisor may remotely unlock the vehicle. See *OnStar Overview* ⇨ *480*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *476*.

If there is a decrease in the remote key operating range:

- Check the distance. The remote key may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the remote key's battery. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section.
- If the remote key is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The Keyless Access system allows for vehicle entry when the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft). See "Keyless Access Operation" later in this section.

The remote key functions may work up to 60 m (197 ft) away from the vehicle.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the remote key. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *7*.

: Press to lock all doors.

If enabled, the turn signal lamps flash once on the second press to indicate locking has occurred. If enabled, the horn chirps when is pressed again within three seconds. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Pressing arms the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *27*.

If equipped with auto mirror folding, pressing and holding for one second will fold the mirrors, if enabled. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

: Press once to unlock the driver door and the fuel door. If is pressed again within three seconds, all remaining doors unlock. The interior lamps may come on and stay on for 20 seconds or until the ignition is turned on.

If enabled, the turn signal lamps flash twice to indicate unlocking has occurred. If enabled, the exterior lamps may turn on. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Pressing on the remote key disarms the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *27*.

If equipped with auto mirror folding, pressing and holding for one second will unfold the mirrors, if enabled. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

If equipped with the remote window open feature, press and hold on the remote key for about three seconds to open all windows. If equipped with the remote window close feature, press and hold for about three seconds to close all windows. The vehicle must be off and the remote window operation feature must be enabled. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

: Press twice to open or close the liftgate. Press once to stop the liftgate from moving.

: Press twice to open the liftglass.

: Press and release to initiate vehicle locate. The turn signal lamps flash and the horn sounds three times.

Press and hold for more than three seconds to activate the panic alarm. The turn signal lamps flash and the horn sounds repeatedly for 30 seconds. The alarm turns off when the ignition is turned on or is pressed again. The ignition must be off for the panic alarm to work.

(x2) : Press (x2) twice to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the remote key. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *13*.

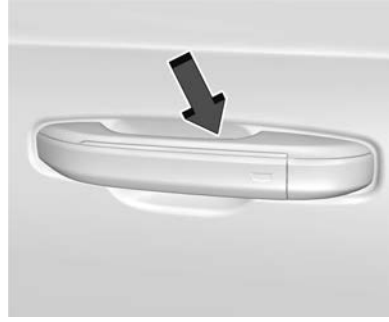
Keyless Access Operation

The Keyless Access system allows for doors and the liftgate to be accessed without removing the remote key from your pocket, purse, briefcase, etc. The remote key must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate or door being opened. If the vehicle has this feature, there will be a button on the outside door handles.

Keyless Access can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first door handle press from the driver door button. Keyless unlocking can be turned off. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

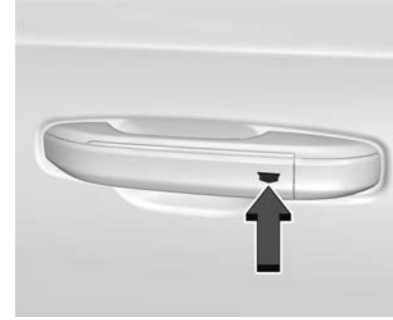
If equipped with memory seats, remote keys 1 and 2 are linked to seating positions of memory 1 or 2. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *45*.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door



Driver Door Unlock Touchpad Shown, Passenger Similar

When the doors are locked and the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, touching the driver door handle inside touchpad will unlock the driver door. Touching the driver door handle outside sensor will lock the doors.



Driver Door Lock Sensor Shown, Passenger Similar

If equipped with remote folding mirror, touching the driver door handle sensor may fold and unfold the mirrors. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ *31*.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Passenger Doors

When the doors are locked and the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, touching the door handle inside touchpad of the passenger door will unlock all doors. Touching the door handle outside sensor will lock the doors.

Disable/Enable Keyless Unlocking of Exterior Door Handles and Liftgate

If equipped, keyless unlocking of the exterior door handles and liftgate can be disabled and enabled.

Disabling Keyless Unlocking:

With the vehicle off, press and hold 🔒 and 🔓 on the remote key at the same time for approximately four seconds. The turn signal lamps will flash four times quickly to indicate access is disabled. Using any exterior handle to unlock the doors or open the liftgate will cause the turn signal lamps to flash four times quickly, indicating access is disabled. If disabled, disarm the alarm system before starting the vehicle.

Disabling Keyless Unlocking may also be configured under Vehicle Personalization. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Enabling Keyless Unlocking:

With the vehicle off, press and hold 🔒 and 🔓 on the remote key at the same time for approximately four seconds. The turn signal lamps will flash twice quickly to indicate access is enabled.

Enabling Keyless Unlocking may also be configured under Vehicle Personalization. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Passive Locking

The Keyless Access system will lock the vehicle several seconds after all doors are closed, if the vehicle is off and at least one remote key has been removed or none remain in the vehicle.

If equipped, the fuel door will also lock.

If other electronic devices interfere with the remote key signal, the vehicle may not detect the remote key inside the vehicle. If passive locking is enabled, the doors may lock with the remote key inside the vehicle. Do not leave the remote key in an unattended vehicle.

To customize the doors to automatically lock when exiting the vehicle, see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

If equipped with remote folding mirror, passive locking may fold and unfold the mirrors. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ *31*.

Temporary Disable of Passive Locking

Temporarily disable passive locking by pressing and holding 🔓 on the interior door switch with a door open for at least four seconds, or until three chimes are heard. Passive locking will then remain disabled until 🔒 on the interior door is pressed, or until the vehicle is turned on.

Remote Left In Vehicle Alert

When the vehicle is turned off and a remote key is left in the vehicle, the horn will chirp three times after all doors are closed. To turn on or off see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Remote No Longer in Vehicle Alert

If the vehicle is on with a door open, and then all doors are closed, the vehicle will check for remote keys inside. If a remote key is not detected, the Driver Information Center (DIC) will display NO REMOTE DETECTED and the horn will chirp three times. This occurs only once each time the vehicle is driven. To turn on or off see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Keyless Liftgate Opening

Press the touchpad on the underside of the liftgate handle to open the liftgate when all doors are unlocked, or when the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft).

Keyless Liftglass Opening

Press the exterior liftglass button to open the liftglass when all doors are unlocked, or when the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft).

See *Liftgate* ⇨ *19*.

Mechanical Key Access

To access a vehicle with a weak remote key battery, see *Door Locks* ⇨ *14*.

Programming Remote Keys to the Vehicle

Only remote keys programmed to the vehicle will work. If a remote key is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. The vehicle can be reprogrammed so that lost or stolen remote keys no longer work. Each vehicle can have up to eight remote keys matched to it.

Starting the Vehicle with a Low Remote Key Battery

If the remote key battery is weak or if there is interference with the signal, the DIC may display NO KEY FOUND, REPLACE BATTERY IN KEYor NO REMOTE KEY WAS DETECTED PLACE KEY IN KEY POCKET THEN START YOUR VEHICLE when starting the vehicle.

To start the vehicle:

1. Place the remote key into the front cupholder.
2. With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral) press the brake pedal and ENGINE START/STOP.

   Replace the remote key battery as soon as possible.

Battery Replacement

⚠ Warning

Never allow children to play with the remote key. The remote key contains a small battery, which can

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

be a choking hazard. If swallowed, internal burns can occur, resulting in severe injury or death. Seek medical attention immediately if a battery is swallowed.

⚠ Warning

To avoid personal injury, do not touch metal surfaces on the remote key when it has been exposed to extreme heat. These surfaces can be hot to the touch at temperatures above 59 °C (138 °F).

Caution

When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the remote key. Static from your body could damage the remote key.

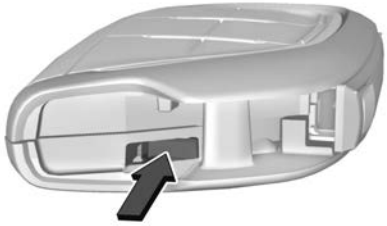
Caution

Always replace the battery with the correct type. Replacing the battery with an incorrect type could potentially create a risk of battery explosion. Dispose of used batteries according to instructions and local laws. Do not attempt to burn, crush, or cut the used battery, and avoid exposing the battery to environments with extremely low air pressures or high temperatures.

Replace the battery in the remote key soon if the DIC displays REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY.

To replace the battery:

1. Press the button on the side of the remote key and pull the mechanical key out. Never pull the mechanical key out without pressing the button.



2. With the mechanical key removed, insert a flat, thin object in the center of the remote key to separate and remove the back cover.

3. Lift the battery with a flat object.
4. Remove the battery.
5. Insert the new battery, positive side toward the back cover. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
6. Push together the remote key.
7. Reinsert the mechanical key.

Remote Vehicle Start

This feature allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

: This button on the remote key is for remote start.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear window defogger may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear defog indicator light does not come on during remote start.

If equipped, the heated and ventilated front seats may also come on when the vehicle personalization setting is enabled. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *47*.

If equipped with a remote start heated steering wheel, it may come on during a remote start. See *Heated Steering Wheel* ⇨ *104*.

Laws in some local communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view. Check local regulations for any requirements.

If your vehicle is low on fuel, do not use the remote start feature. The vehicle may run out of fuel.

The remote key range may be shorter while the vehicle is running.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the remote key. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *7*.

You are allowed multiple starts totaling 30 minutes of engine run time. The maximum run time of a single start is 15 minutes, and it will shut off automatically. You could do three 10 minute starts, if you manually shut off after 10 minutes. The last 10 minute start would shut off automatically as your total 30 minutes will have been used.

Starting the Engine Using Remote Start

1. Press (x2) twice on the remote key. The turn signal lamps will flash. The lamps flash to confirm the request to remote start the vehicle has been received. During the remote start, the doors will be locked and the parking lamps will remain on as long as the engine is running.
2. The engine will shut off after 15 minutes or after the remainder of the 30 minute total running time is used, unless you stop the remote start before engine running has completed or the vehicle is turned on.
3. Press the brake pedal and turn the ignition on to drive the vehicle.

Additional Engine Run Time

Remote start can be used for up to 30 minutes of total engine run time.

After two remote starts of 15 minutes, or multiple shorter time starts totaling 30 minutes have been used, the vehicle must be started and then turned off before the remote start can be used again.

Canceling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Press (x2) once. The parking lamps will turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then back off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

The remote start will not operate if any of the following occur:

- The ignition is in any mode other than off.
- A remote key is in the vehicle.
- The hood is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- There is an emission control system malfunction.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- The 30 minutes of engine run time have been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

Door Locks

⚠ Warning

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. The doors can be unlocked and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

opened while the vehicle is moving. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear seat belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.

- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

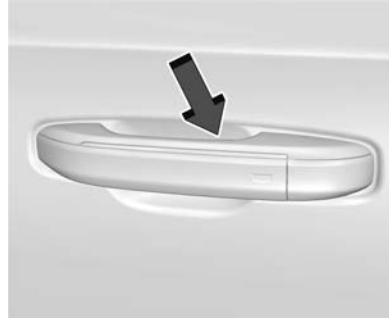
To lock or unlock the doors from inside the vehicle:

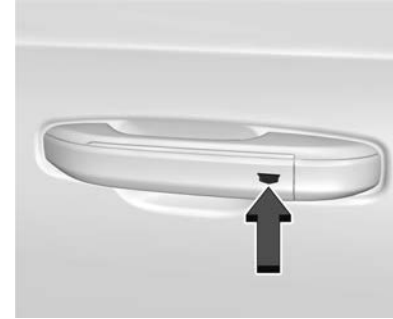
- Press 🔒 or 🔓 on a power door lock switch.
- Pull the front door handle once to unlock and open it. Pull the rear door handle once to unlock it and again to open it.

To lock or unlock the doors from outside the vehicle:

- Press 🔒 or 🔓 on the remote key.
- Use the mechanical key in the driver door. The key cylinder is covered by a cap. See “Driver Door Key Lock Cylinder Access” later in this section.

Keyless Access



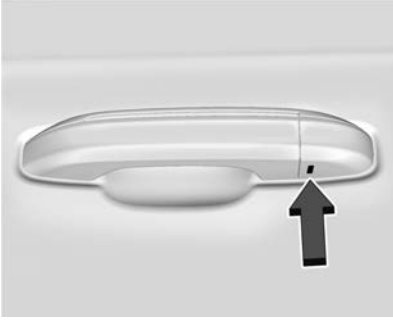


The remote key must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate or door being opened or locked. To unlock and open any door, press the touchpad on the inside grip area of the outside door handle. Touch the sensor on the front outside door handle to lock. See “Keyless Access Operation” in *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.

Driver Door Key Lock Cylinder Access (In Case of Dead Battery)

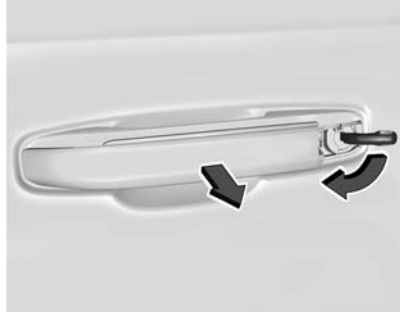
To access the driver door key lock cylinder and unlatch the door:

1. Remove the mechanical key from the remote key.



2. Insert the mechanical key into the slot at the bottom of the handle and push upward all the way until the cover frees. Do not pry or pull on the key.

3. Remove the cover.



4. Insert the mechanical key in the cylinder.
5. Turn the mechanical key clockwise until it stops.
6. Slowly turn the mechanical key counterclockwise while pulling the handle to unlatch the door.
7. Repeat steps 4 and 5 if the door does not fully open.

To replace the cap:

1. Align the top edge of the cover to the handle.

2. Turn downward to snap cover into position.
3. Check to ensure cap is fully seated.

Free-Turning Locks

The door key lock cylinder turns freely when either the wrong mechanical key is used, or the correct mechanical key is not fully inserted. The free-turning door lock feature prevents the lock from being forced open. To reset the lock, turn it to the vertical position with the correct mechanical key fully inserted. Remove the mechanical key and insert it again. If this does not reset the lock, turn the mechanical key halfway around in the cylinder and repeat the reset procedure.

Soft-Close/Cinching

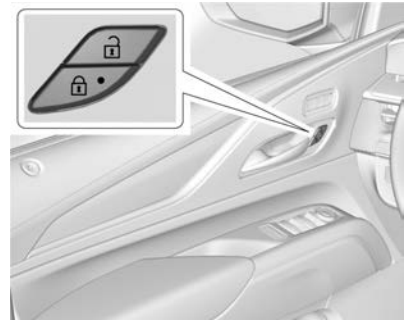
⚠ Warning

You or others could be injured if caught in the path of a closing door. Make sure the area is clear when using the automatic soft-close/cinching feature.

If equipped, to close any door, gently push or pull it until the power cinch motor draws the door the rest of the way closed and latches. Pull the handle during a soft-close to cancel the cinching and re-open the door.

Power Door Locks

Press 🔒 or 🔓 on the remote key. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.

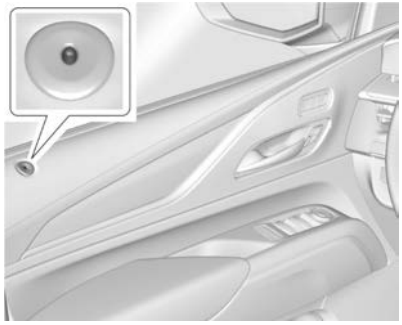


🔒 **:** Press to lock the doors. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when locked.

🔓 **:** Press to unlock the doors.

The fuel door is also locked or unlocked using these features.

Security Status indicator



A light on the upper surface of the driver's door trim is used to indicate vehicle security status.

This light will be OFF any time the ignition is ON, except momentarily when vehicle doors are locking.

Solid : Indicates securing with doors closed.

Fast Flash : Indicates securing with doors open.

Slow Flash : Indicates battery conserving secured state.

No light : Indicates unsecured state.

Delayed Locking

This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until five seconds after all doors are closed.

When 🔒 is pressed on the power door lock switch while the door is open, a chime will sound three times indicating that delayed locking is active.

The doors will then lock automatically five seconds after all doors are closed. If a door is reopened before five seconds have elapsed, the five-second timer will reset once all the doors are closed again.

Press 🔒 on the door lock switch again, or press 🔒 on the remote key, to override this feature and lock the doors immediately.

This feature can also be programmed. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Automatic Door Locks

The doors will lock automatically when all doors are closed, the ignition is on, and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

If a vehicle door is unlocked and then opened and closed, the doors will lock either when your foot is removed from the brake or the vehicle speed becomes faster than 13 km/h (8 mph).

To unlock the doors:

- Press 🔓 on the power door lock switch.
- Shift the transmission into P (Park).

Automatic door locking cannot be disabled. Automatic door unlocking can be programmed. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Lockout Protection

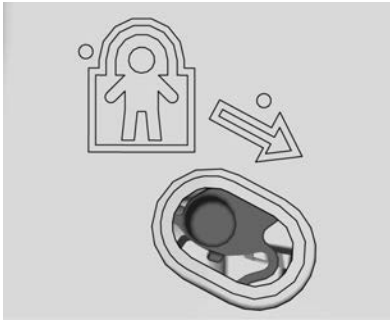
If the ignition is on or in ACC/ACCESSORY and the power door lock switch is pressed with the driver door open, all the doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock.

If the vehicle is off and locking is requested while a door is open, when all doors are closed the vehicle will check for remote keys inside. If a remote key is detected and the number of remote keys inside has not reduced, the driver door will unlock and the horn will chirp three times.

This can be manually overridden by pressing and holding 🔒 on the power door lock switch

Safety Locks

The rear door safety locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.



The safety lock is on the inside edge of the rear doors. To use the safety lock:

1. Move the lever down to the lock position.
2. Close the door.
3. Do the same for the other rear door.

To open a rear door when the safety lock is on:

1. Unlock the door by activating the inside handle, by pressing the power door unlock switch, or by using the remote key.
2. Open the door from the outside.

When the safety lock is enabled, adults and older children will not be able to open the rear door from the inside. Cancel the safety locks to enable the doors to open from the inside.

To cancel the safety lock:

1. Unlock the door and open it from the outside.
2. Move the lever up to unlock. Do the same for the other door.

Doors

Liftgate

⚠ Warning

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate or trunk/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the trunk/hatch or liftgate. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate or trunk/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- If the vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

See *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *251*.

Caution

To avoid damage to the liftgate or liftgate glass, make sure the area above and behind the liftgate is clear before opening it.

Power Liftgate Operation

⚠ Warning

You or others could be injured if caught in the path of the power liftgate. Make sure there is no one in the way of the liftgate as it is opening and closing.

Caution

Driving with an open and unsecured liftgate may result in damage to the power liftgate components.

The power liftgate switch is on the overhead console. The vehicle must be in P (Park).

The modes are:

MAX : Opens to maximum height.

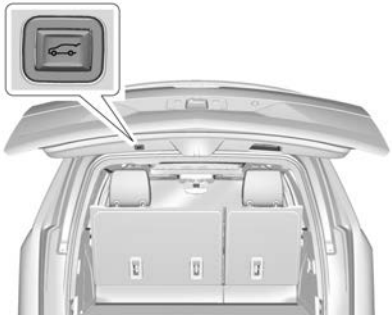
3/4 : Opens to a reduced height that can be set from 3/4 to fully open. Use to prevent the liftgate from opening into overhead obstructions such as a garage door or roof-mounted cargo. The liftgate can be manually opened all the way.

OFF : Opens manually only.

To power open or close the liftgate, select MAX or 3/4 mode and then:

- Press twice quickly on the remote key until the liftgate moves.
- Press on the overhead console. The driver door must be unlocked or locked without the security armed.

- Press the emblem under the liftglass, after unlocking all doors. A locked vehicle can be opened if the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the emblem.



- Press on the bottom edge of the liftgate next to the latch to close.

Press any liftgate button, the emblem, or on the remote key while the liftgate is moving to stop it. Pressing any liftgate button or pressing twice quickly on the remote key restarts the operation in the reverse direction. Pressing the emblem will restart the motion, but only in the opening direction.

Caution

Manually forcing the liftgate to open or close during a power cycle can damage the vehicle. Allow the power cycle to complete.

The power liftgate may be temporarily disabled in extremely low temperatures, or after repeated power cycling over a short period of time. If this occurs, the liftgate can still be operated manually.

If the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) while the power function is in progress, the liftgate will continue to completion. If the vehicle is accelerated before the liftgate has completed moving, the liftgate may stop or reverse direction. Check for Driver Information Center (DIC) messages and make sure the liftgate is closed and latched before driving.

Falling Liftgate Detection

If the power liftgate automatically closes after a power opening cycle, it indicates that the system is reacting to excess weight on the liftgate or a possible support strut failure.

A repetitive chime will sound while the falling liftgate detection feature is operating. Remove any excess weight. If the liftgate continues to automatically close after opening, see your dealer for service before using the power liftgate.

Interfering with the power liftgate motion or manually closing the liftgate too quickly after power opening may resemble a support strut failure. This could also activate the falling liftgate detection feature. Allow the liftgate to complete its operation and wait a few seconds before manually closing the liftgate.

Obstacle Detection Features

If the liftgate encounters an obstacle during a power open or close cycle, the liftgate will automatically reverse direction and move a short distance away from the obstacle. After removing the obstruction, the power liftgate operation can be used again. If the liftgate encounters multiple obstacles on the same power cycle, the power function will deactivate. After removing the obstructions,

manually close the liftgate. This will allow normal power operation functions to resume.

If the vehicle is locked while the liftgate is closing, and an obstacle is encountered that prevents the liftgate from completely closing, the horn will sound as an alert that the liftgate did not close.

Setting the 3/4 Mode

To change the position the liftgate stops at when opening:

1. Select MAX or 3/4 mode and power open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement at the desired height by pressing any liftgate button. Manually adjust the liftgate position if needed.
3. Press and hold on the bottom edge of the liftgate next to the latch on the outside of the liftgate until the turn signals flash and a beep sounds. This indicates the setting has been recorded.

The liftgate cannot be set below a minimum programmable height. If there is no light flash or sound, then the height adjustment may be too low.

Manual Operation

Select OFF to manually operate the liftgate.

Caution

Attempting to move the liftgate too quickly and with excessive force may result in damage to the vehicle.

Operate the liftgate manually with a smooth motion and moderate speed. The system includes a feature which limits the manual closing speed to protect the components.

To open the liftgate, press on the power door lock switch or press on the remote key twice to unlock all doors, then press the emblem. Once opened, raise the liftgate using the handle on the interior bottom edge.

Press the button above the license plate to open the liftglass, or press x2 twice quickly on the remote key. Do not leave the liftglass open when raising the liftgate.

There will be a delay in the release of the liftglass if there is an attempt to open it while the rear wiper is in motion.

Use the pull cup to lower and close the liftgate. Do not press the emblem while closing the liftgate. This will cause the liftgate to be unlatched.

The liftgate can be opened when locked if the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the emblem. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.

The liftgate has an electric latch. If the battery is disconnected or has low voltage, the liftgate will not open. The liftgate will resume operation when the battery is reconnected and charged.

Hands-Free Operation

If equipped, the liftgate may be operated with a kicking motion near the center of the rear bumper at the location of the projected logo. The remote key must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the rear bumper to operate the power liftgate hands-free.

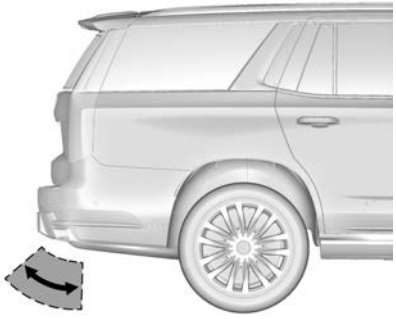
The hands-free feature will not work while the liftgate is moving. To stop the liftgate while in motion use one of the liftgate switches.

The hands-free feature can be customized. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*. Choose from the following:

On-Open and Close : The kicking motion is activated to both open and close the liftgate.

On-Open Only : The kicking motion is activated to only open the liftgate.

Off : The feature is disabled.



Kick Zone

To operate, move your foot in a forward kicking motion near the center of the rear bumper at the location of the projected logo, then pull it back. The kick must come within 14 cm (6 in) of the rear bumper to activate. Then step back.

- Do not sweep your foot side to side.
- Do not keep your foot under the bumper; the liftgate will not activate.
- Do not touch the liftgate until it has stopped moving.

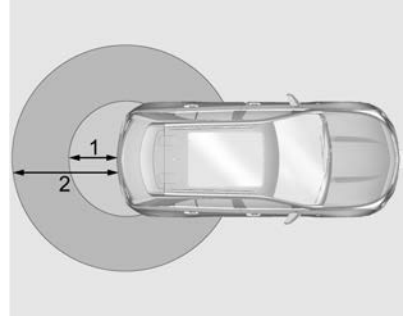
This feature may be temporarily disabled under some conditions. If the liftgate does not respond to the kick, open or close the liftgate by another method or start the vehicle. The feature will be re-enabled.

When closing the liftgate using this feature, there will be a short delay. The taillamps will flash and a chime will sound.

Step away from the liftgate before it starts moving.

Projected Logo

If equipped with this feature, a vehicle logo will be projected for one minute onto the ground near the rear bumper when a remote key is detected within approximately 2 m (6 ft) from the rear bumper. The projected logo may not be visible under brighter daytime conditions.



- 1 m (3 ft) Hands-Free Operation Detection Zone
- 2 m (6 ft) Projected Logo Detection Zone

The projected logo shows where to kick towards the rear bumper.

The projected logo will not be restarted using the same remote key unless it has been out of range for longer than 20 seconds.

If a remote key is again detected within approximately 2 m (6 ft) of the liftgate, or another kick has been detected, the one-minute timer will be reset.

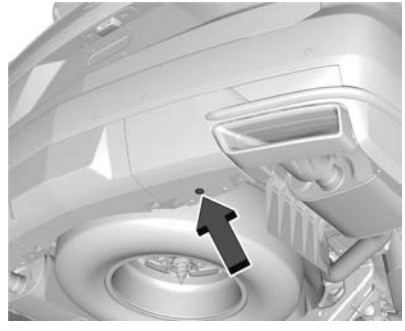
The projected logo will not work under these conditions:

- The vehicle battery is low.
- The transmission is not in P (Park).
- Hands Free Liftgate Control is set to off in vehicle personalization. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.
- Power liftgate is turned off.
- The vehicle remains parked for 72 hours or more, with no remote key use or Keyless Access operation. To re-enable, press any button on the remote key or open and close a vehicle door.

The projected logo will not work for a single remote key when a remote key:

- Has been left within approximately 5 m (15 ft) of the liftgate for several minutes.
- Has been left inside the vehicle and all vehicle doors are closed.
- Has approached the area outside of the liftgate five times within 10 minutes.

Lens Cleaning



If equipped, use a cotton swab to clean the lens.

Hands-Free Liftgate and Projected Logo Availability

Action	Hands-Free Liftgate	Projected Logo
Remote key entering projected logo detection zone	Operative	On for one minute
Remote key left inside projected logo detection zone for minimum of 10 minutes	Operative	Off until remote key button press or a door is opened and closed
Remote key brought in and out of projected logo detection zone five times or more within 10 minutes	Operative	Off for one hour or until remote key button press or a door is opened and closed
Vehicle remains parked for more than 72 hours	Operative	Off until remote key button press or a door is opened and closed
Vehicle battery is low	Non-operative	Off
Transmission is not in P (Park)	Non-operative	Off
Power liftgate is turned off	Non-operative	Off
Hands-free liftgate is disabled in vehicle personalization	Non-operative	Off

Power Assist Steps

⚠ Warning

To avoid personal injury or property damage, before entering or exiting the vehicle, be sure the power assist step is fully extended. Do not step on the power assist step while it is moving. Never place hands or other body parts between the extended power assist step and the vehicle.

If equipped, the power assist steps will deploy when the door is opened and automatically retract three seconds after the door is closed. The power assist steps will retract immediately if the vehicle starts moving.

Disable the power assist steps before jacking or placing any object under the vehicle. Too much ice buildup may prevent deployment of the power assist steps. Check the step position before exiting the vehicle. If this happens, disable the power assist steps, clear the ice, then enable the assist steps and confirm normal function prior to use.

Keep hands, children, pets, objects, and clothing clear of the power assist steps when in motion. The steps will reverse direction if they encounter an obstruction when opening or closing. Remove the obstruction, then open and close the door on the same side to complete the motion of the assist steps. If the obstruction is not cleared, the assist steps remain extended while driving.

To extend or retract both power assist steps for cleaning, see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

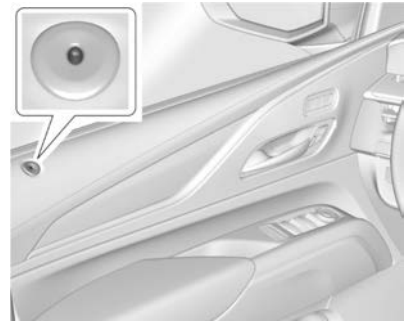
Enable/Disable

To enable or disable the power assist steps, see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make the vehicle impossible to steal.

Vehicle Alarm System



The indicator light, on the driver door near the window, indicates the status of the system. See *Power Door Locks* ⇨ *17*

Arming the Alarm System

1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Lock the vehicle in one of three ways:
   - Use the remote key.
   - Use the Keyless Access system.
   - With a door open, press 🔒 on the interior of the door.

3. After 30 seconds the alarm system will arm, and the indicator light will begin to slowly flash. Pressing 🔓 on the remote key a second time will bypass the 30-second delay and immediately arm the alarm system.

The vehicle alarm system will not arm if the doors are locked with the mechanical key.

If the driver door is opened without first unlocking with the remote key, the horn will chirp and the lights will flash to indicate pre-alarm. If the vehicle is not started, or the door is not unlocked by pressing 🔓 on the remote key during the 10-second pre-alarm, the alarm will be activated.

The alarm will also be activated if a passenger door, the liftgate, or the hood is opened without first disarming the system. When the alarm is activated, the turn signals flash and the horn sounds for about 30 seconds. The alarm system will then re-arm to monitor for the next unauthorized event.

Disarming the Alarm System

To disarm the alarm system or turn off the alarm if it has been activated:

- Press 🔓 on the remote key.
- Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Access system.
- Start the vehicle.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- Lock the vehicle after all occupants have exited.
- Always unlock a door with the remote key, or use the Keyless Access system.

  Unlocking the driver door with the mechanical key will not disarm the system or turn off the alarm.

How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If 🔓 is pressed on the remote key and the horn chirps three times, an alarm occurred previously while the alarm system was armed.

If the alarm has been activated, a message will appear on the DIC.

Power Sounder, Inclination Sensor, and Intrusion Sensor

In addition to the standard theft-deterrent system features, this system may also have a power sounder, inclination sensor, and intrusion sensor.

The power sounder provides an audible alarm which is distinct from the vehicle's horn. It has its own power source, and can sound an alarm if the vehicle's battery is compromised.

The inclination sensor can set off the alarm if it senses movement of the vehicle, such as a change in vehicle orientation.

The intrusion sensor monitors the vehicle interior, and can activate the alarm if it senses unauthorized entry into the vehicle's interior. Do not allow passengers or pets to remain in the vehicle when the intrusion sensor is activated.

Before arming the theft-deterrent system and activating the intrusion sensor:

- Make sure all doors and windows are completely closed.
- Secure any loose items such as a sunshades.
- Make sure there are no obstructions blocking the sensors in the front overhead console.
- Close DVD screens before leaving the vehicle.

Intrusion and Inclination Sensors Disable Switch

It is recommended that the intrusion and inclination sensors be deactivated if pets are left in the vehicle or the vehicle is being transported.

With the vehicle off, press in the front overhead console to turn off the feature.

The indicator light may come on momentarily, or a message may display on the instrument cluster, indicating that these sensors have been disabled until the next time the alarm system is armed.

Steering Column Lock

If equipped, the steering column lock is a theft-deterrent device. This feature locks the steering column when the vehicle is turned off and the driver door is opened, or when the driver door is opened and then the vehicle is turned off. The steering column unlocks when the vehicle is turned on.

The Driver Information Center (DIC) may display one of these messages:

- A message to service the steering column lock indicates that an issue has been detected with the column lock feature and the vehicle should be serviced.
- A message that the steering column is locked indicates that the engine is running, but the steering column is still locked. It is normal for the column to be locked during a remote start, but the column should unlock after the brake pedal is pressed and the vehicle is started. No message will display during a remote start.
- A message that the steering wheel must be turned and the vehicle must be started again indicates that the column lock mechanism is bound, the column locking device was unable to unlock the steering column, and the vehicle did not start. If this happens, immediately turn the steering wheel from side to side to unbind the column lock. If this does not unlock the steering column, turn the vehicle off and open the driver door to reset the system. Then turn the vehicle on and immediately turn the steering

wheel side to side for about 15 seconds. In some cases, it may take significant force to unbind the column.

To keep the steering column from binding, straighten the front wheels before turning off the vehicle.

Immobilizer

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *476*.

Immobilizer Operation

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilized when the vehicle is turned off.

The immobilization system is disarmed when the ignition is turned on or to ACC/ACCESSORY and a valid remote key is present in the vehicle.

The security light, in the instrument cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

The system has one or more remote keys matched to an immobilizer control unit in the vehicle. Only a correctly matched remote key will start the vehicle. If the remote key is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light may come on briefly.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the vehicle will not change ignition modes (ACC/ACCESSORY, on, off), and the remote key appears to be undamaged, try another remote key. Or, you may try placing the remote key in the backup location. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.

If the ignition modes will not change with the other remote key or in the backup location, the vehicle needs service. If the ignition does change modes, the first remote key may be faulty. See your dealer.

It is possible for the immobilizer system to learn new or replacement remote keys. Up to eight remote keys can be programmed for the vehicle. To program additional remote keys, see “Programming Remote Keys to the Vehicle” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.

Do not leave the remote key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

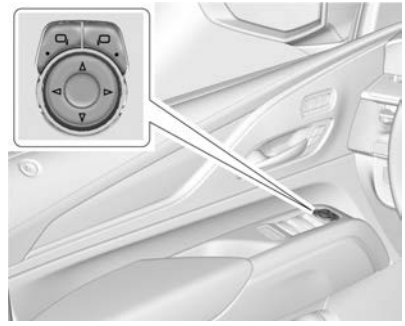
Convex Mirrors

⚠ Warning

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

Power Mirrors



To adjust each mirror:

1. Press ⧉ or ⧉ for the driver or passenger side mirror. The indicator light will illuminate.
2. Press the arrows on the control pad to move the mirror in the desired direction.
3. Adjust each outside mirror so that a little of the vehicle and the area behind it can be seen.
4. Press ⧉ or ⧉ again to deselect the mirror.

Memory Mirrors

The vehicle may have memory mirrors. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *45*.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

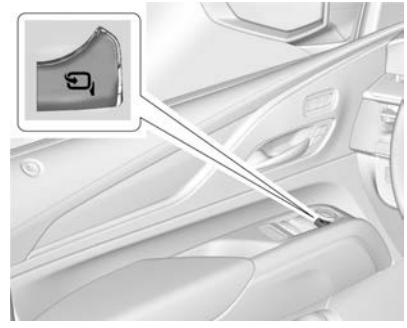
The vehicle may have SBZA. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *326*

Lane Change Alert (LCA)

The vehicle may have LCA. See *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *326*.

Folding Mirrors

Power Folding Mirrors



If equipped, press to power fold the mirrors. Press again to unfold.

The outside mirrors may automatically unfold when the vehicle is driven above 20 km/h (12 mph), but may be folded with the power folding mirror switch. If the vehicle speed is driven above 40 km/h (25 mph), they may automatically unfold and may not be refolded with the power folding mirror switch.

Resetting the Power Folding Mirrors

Reset the power folding mirrors if:

- The mirrors are accidentally obstructed while folding.
- They are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors do not stay in the unfolded position.
- The mirrors vibrate at normal driving speeds.

Fold and unfold the mirrors one time using the mirror controls to reset them to their normal position. A noise may be heard during the resetting of the power folding mirrors. This sound is normal after a manual folding operation.

Remote Mirror Folding

If equipped with power folding mirrors and the mirrors have been folded with the power folding mirror switch, they may not be automatically unfolded.

If equipped with power folding mirrors and the mirrors have not been folded with the power folding mirror switch and the vehicle is in P (Park), they may be automatically folded/unfolded as follows:

1. If doors are locked by pressing on the remote key, the mirrors will fold. If doors are unlocked by pressing on the remote key, the mirrors will unfold. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.
2. If doors are locked by pressing the door handle lock/unlock button, the mirrors will fold. If doors are unlocked by pressing the door handle button, the mirrors will unfold. See “Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door” in *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.
3. If passive locking is enabled and doors are locked by that feature, the mirrors will fold. See “Passive Locking” in *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.

This feature is turned on or off through vehicle personalization. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Heated Mirrors

The rear window defogger also heats the outside mirrors.

REAR : Press to heat the outside mirrors. See “Rear Window Defogger” under *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *220*.

Automatic Dimming Mirror

If equipped, the driver outside mirror automatically adjusts for the glare of the headlamps from behind. This feature comes on when the vehicle is started.

Reverse Tilt Mirrors

If equipped with reverse tilt mirrors and memory seats, the passenger and/or driver mirror tilts to a preselected position when the vehicle is in R (Reverse). This allows the curb to be seen when parallel parking.

The mirror(s) may move from their tilted position when:

- The vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse), or remains in R (Reverse) for about 30 seconds.
- The vehicle is turned off.
- The vehicle is driven in R (Reverse) above a set speed.

To turn this feature on or off, see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Interior Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirrors

Adjust the rearview mirror for a clear view of the area behind your vehicle.

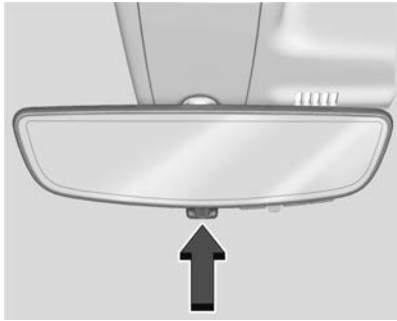
Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The rearview mirror automatically dims to reduce the glare of the headlamps from behind. This feature comes on when the vehicle is started.

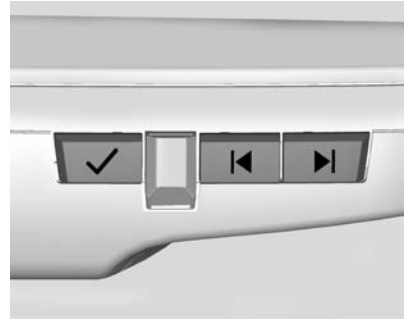
Rear Camera Mirror

If equipped, this automatic dimming mirror provides a wide angle camera view of the area behind the vehicle.



Pull the tab to turn on the display. Push the tab to turn it off. When off the mirror is automatic dimming.

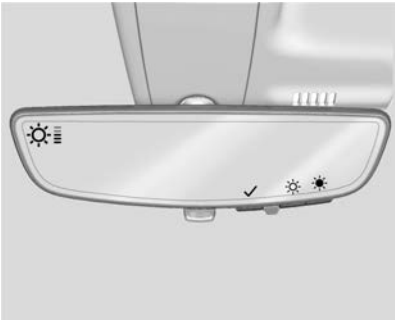
Adjust the mirror for a clear view of the area behind the vehicle while the display is off.



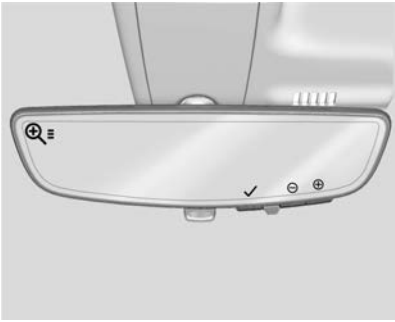
Press ✓ to scroll through the adjustment options.

Press |◀ and ▶| to adjust the settings using the indicators on the mirror. The indicators will remain visible for five seconds after the last button activation, and the settings will remain saved.

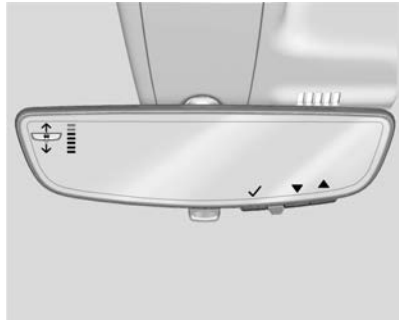
The adjustment options are:



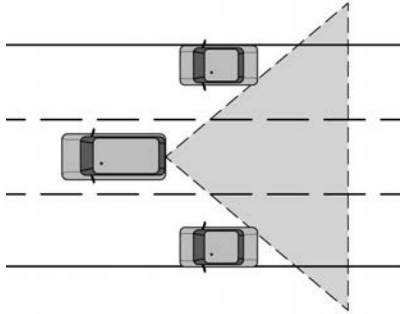
- Brightness



- Zoom



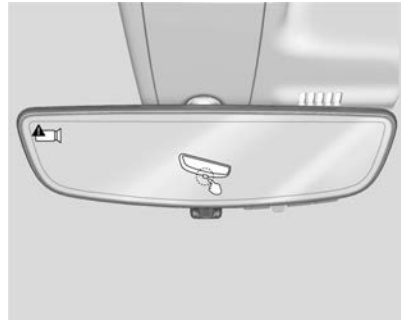
- Tilt



⚠ Warning

The Rear Camera Mirror (RCM) has a limited view. Portions of the road, vehicles, and other objects may not be seen. Do not drive or park the vehicle using only this camera. Objects may appear closer than they are. Check the outside mirrors or glance over your shoulder when making lane changes or merging. Failure to use proper care may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

Troubleshooting



See your dealer for service if a blue screen and ⚠ are displayed in the mirror, and the display shuts off. Also, push the tab as indicated to return to the automatic dimming mode.

The Rear Camera Mirror may not work properly or display a clear image if:

- There is glare from the sun or headlamps. This may obstruct objects from view. If needed, push the tab to turn off the display.

- Dirt, snow, or other debris blocks the camera lens. Clean the lens with a soft damp cloth, or, if equipped, with the Rear Camera Washer. See *Rear Window Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *107*.
- The camera's mounting on the vehicle has been damaged, and/or the position or the mounting angle of the camera has changed.

Windows

⚠ Warning

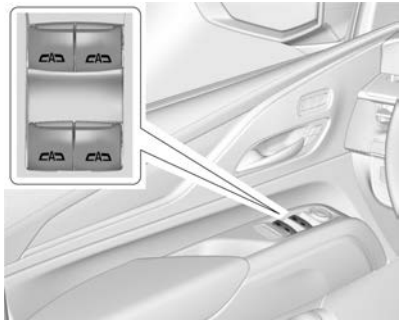
Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.

The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open either a front window or the sunroof, if equipped.

Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Never leave the remote key in a vehicle with children. When there are children in the rear seat, use the window lockout switch to prevent operation of the windows. See *Keys* ⇨ *6*.



Power windows work when the ignition is on, in ACC/ACCESSORY, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *249*.

Using the window switch, press to open or pull to close the window.

The windows may be temporarily disabled if they are used repeatedly within a short time.

Window Lockout

This feature stops the rear passenger window switches from working.

- Press to engage the rear window lockout feature. The indicator light is on when engaged.
- Press again to disengage.

Window Express Movement

All windows can be opened without holding the window switch. Press the switch down fully and quickly release to express open the window.

If equipped, pull the window switch up fully and quickly release to express close the window.

Briefly press or pull the window switch in the same direction to stop that window's express movement.

Window Automatic Reversal System

The express-close feature will reverse window movement if it comes in contact with an object. Extreme cold or ice could cause the window to auto-reverse. The window will operate normally after the object or condition is removed.

Automatic Reversal System Override

⚠ Warning

If automatic reversal system override is active, the window will not reverse automatically. You or others could be injured and the window could be damaged. Before using automatic reversal system override, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window path.

When the engine is on, override the automatic reversal system by pulling and holding the window switch if conditions prevent it from closing.

Programming the Power Windows

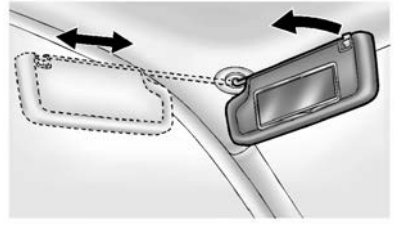
Programming may be necessary if the vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged. If the window is unable to express-up, program each express-close window:

1. Close all doors.
2. Turn the ignition on or to ACC/ ACCESSORY.
3. Partially open the window to be programmed. Then close it and continue to pull the switch briefly after the window has fully closed.
4. Open the window and continue to press the switch briefly after the window has fully opened.

Remote Window Operation

If equipped with remote window open feature, press and hold 🔓 on the remote key for about three seconds to open all windows. If equipped with remote window close feature, press and hold 🔒 on the remote key for three seconds to close all windows. The vehicle must be off and the remote window operation must be enabled. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Sun Visors



Pull the sun visor down to block glare. Detach the sun visor from the center mount to pivot to the side window and, if equipped, extend along the rod.

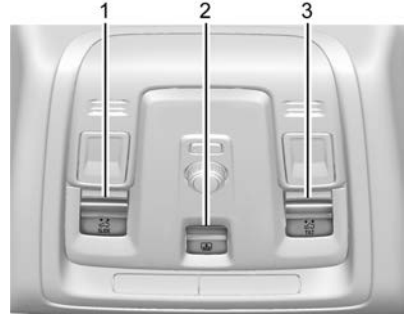
Roof

Sunroof

If equipped, the ignition must be on or in ACC/ACCESSORY, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active to operate the sunroof. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *245* and *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *249*.

While the sunroof always operates in express mode, movement can be stopped by pressing the switch again.

The sunroof cannot be opened or closed if the vehicle has an electrical failure.



1. SLIDE Switch
2. Power Sunshade Switch
3. TILT Switch

Sunroof Operation:

- Press and release SLIDE (1) to express-open to the fully open position. This vehicle may be equipped with a comfort stop position to prevent excessive wind

noise. The sunroof will stop approximately halfway open during an express open. To fully open the sunroof, press and release SLIDE (1) again.

- Pull and release SLIDE (1) to express-close.
- Press or pull SLIDE (1) again to stop at the desired location.

Sunshade Operation:

- Press and release (2) to express-open.
- Pull and release (2) to express-close.
- Press or pull (2) again to stop at the desired location.

Sunroof Vent Operation:

- Press and release TILT (3) to vent the sunroof.
- Pull and release TILT (3) to close the sunroof vent.

Automatic Reversal System

The sunroof and power sunshade, if equipped, have an automatic reversal system that is only active when the sunroof and power sunshade are operated in express-close mode.

If an object is in the path while express-closing, the reversal system will detect an object, stop, and open the sunroof or power sunshade slightly.

If this condition occurs, attempt to remove the object, then pull and release the switch to express close. If the reversal occurs multiple times, the DIC message OPEN THEN CLOSE SUNROOF will display, and express is disabled. To operate sunroof while express is disabled, the switch must be either pressed or pulled and held.

Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation or noise. It could also plug the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints

Head Restraints 40

Front Seats

Power Seat Adjustment 42
Reclining Seatbacks 43
Lumbar Adjustment 43
Massage 44
Memory Seats 45
Heated and Ventilated Front Seats 47

Rear Seats

Rear Seats 49
Second Row Seats 49
Heated Rear Seats 53
Third Row Seats 54

Seat Belts

Seat Belts 57
Buckle To Drive 58
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 58
Lap-Shoulder Belt 61
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 63
Seat Belt Extender 64
Safety System Check 64
Seat Belt Care 64
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 65

Airbag System

Airbag System 65
Where Are the Airbags? 67
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 68
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? ... 69
How Does an Airbag Restrain? ... 69
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 70
Passenger Sensing System 71
Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 75
Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 75
Airbag System Check 76
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 76

Child Restraints

Older Children 76
Infants and Young Children 78
Child Restraint Systems 80
Where to Put the Restraint 82
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 83
Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash 91
Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat) 91
Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Passenger Seat) 94

Head Restraints

The vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

⚠ Warning

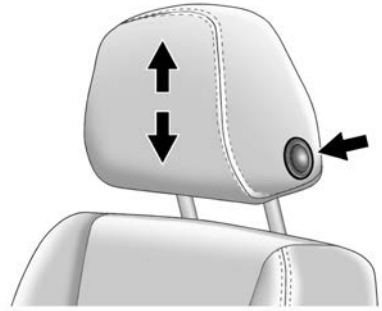
With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

If your vehicle has rear head restraints that fold down, always return them to the full upright position whenever an occupant is seated in the seat.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

Front Seats

The vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.



The height of the head restraint can be adjusted.

To raise or lower the head restraint, press the button located on the side of the head restraint and pull up or push the head restraint down, and release the button. Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The front seat outboard head restraints are not removable.

Rear Seats

Second Row Seats

The vehicle's second row seats have head restraints in the outboard seating positions that cannot be adjusted.

The second row outboard head restraints are not removable.

The second row outboard head restraints are designed to be folded.

When folding the second row seatbacks down, the head restraint will automatically fold out of the way as the seat is folded down.

The second row outboard head restraints can be folded forward to allow for better visibility when the rear seat is unoccupied.

To fold the head restraint, press the button on the side of the head restraint.

The head restraint will fold forward automatically.

When an occupant or child restraint is in the seat, always return the head restraint to the full upright position. Push the head restraint up and rearward until it locks into place. Push and pull on the head restraint to make sure that it is locked.

Third Row Seats

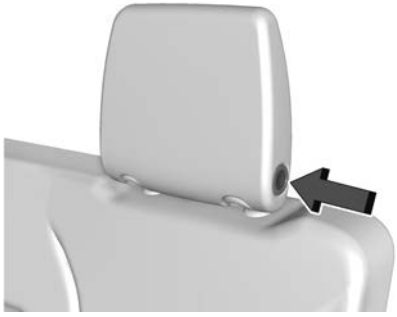
The vehicle's third row seats have head restraints in the outboard seating positions that cannot be adjusted up or down.

The third row outboard head restraints are not removable.

The third row outboard head restraints are designed to be folded.

When folding the third row seatbacks down, the head restraint will automatically fold out of the way as the seat is folded down.

The head restraint can be folded forward to allow for better visibility when the rear seat is unoccupied.



To fold the head restraint, press the button on the side of the head restraint.

The head restraint will fold forward automatically.

When an occupant or child restraint is in the seat, always return the head restraint to the full upright position. Push the head restraint up and rearward until it locks into place. Push and pull on the head restraint to make sure that it is locked.

Front Seats

Power Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ Warning

The power seats will work with the ignition off. Children could operate the power seats and be injured. Never leave children alone in the vehicle.

To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.

- Raise or lower the seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.

Reclining Seatbacks

To recline the seatback:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

⚠ Warning

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the seat belts cannot do their job.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

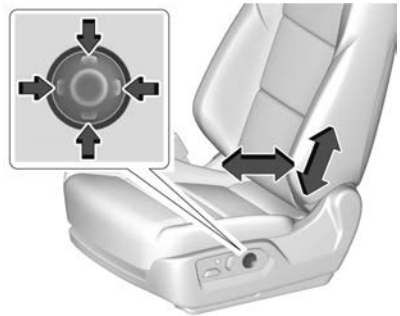
The shoulder belt will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the seat belt properly.

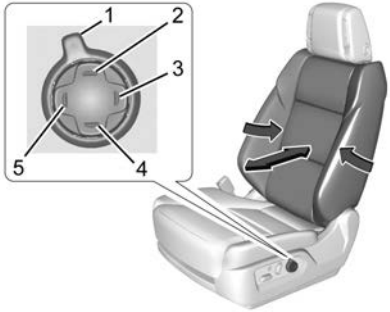
Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

Lumbar Adjustment



- Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or decrease lumbar support.
- Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower lumbar support.

Uplevel Seat Adjustment



To adjust lumbar support, if equipped:

- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to lumbar support on the infotainment display.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust lumbar forward or rearward.
- Press Up (2) or Down (4) to adjust lumbar up or down.

Bolster Support

To adjust bolster support, if equipped:

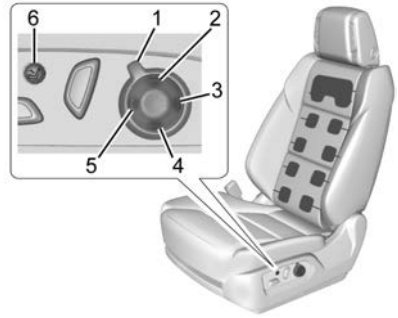
Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to bolster support on the infotainment display. Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust bolster support inward or outward.

Upper Shoulder Support

To adjust upper shoulder support, if equipped:

- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to upper shoulder support on the infotainment display.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust shoulder support forward or rearward.

Massage



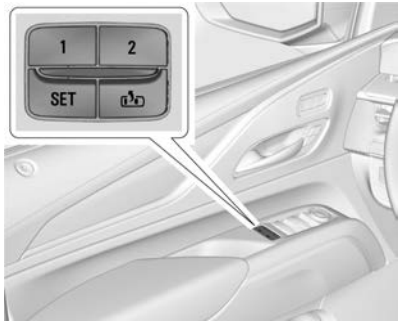
If equipped, the vehicle must be on to use the massage feature.

To activate and adjust massage:

- Turn the Feature Select (1) to scroll to massage on the infotainment display.
- Press Up (2) or Down (4) to adjust massage type.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust the intensity.
- To turn massage off or to activate massage at last massage type and intensity settings, press the massage On/Off Control (6).

The massage feature will turn off after approximately 20 minutes. Press the massage On/Off Control (6) to restart the massage feature.

Memory Seats



Overview

If equipped, the memory seat feature allows drivers to save their unique driving positions and a shared exit position. See “Saving Seating Positions” later in this section. The saved positions can be recalled manually by all drivers. See “Manually Recalling Seating Positions” later in this section. Drivers with remote key 1 and 2 can also recall them automatically. See “Auto Seat Entry Memory Recall” or “Auto Seat Exit Memory Recall” later in this section. To enable automatic recalls, turn on Seat Entry Memory and/or Seat Exit Memory. See “Enable Automatic Recalls” under “Vehicle Personalization Settings” later in this section. The memory recalls may be cancelled at any time during the recall. See “Cancel Memory Seating Recalls” later in this section.

Identifying Driver Number

The vehicle identifies the current driver by their remote key number 1–8. The current remote key number may be identified by Driver Information Center (DIC) welcome message, “You are driver x for memory recalls,” This message is displayed the first few times the vehicle is turned on when a different remote key is used. For Seat Entry Memory to work properly, save positions to the 1 or 2 memory button matching the driver number of this welcome message. To aid in identifying remote key IDs, it is recommended to only carry one remote key when entering the vehicle. Perform the following if the welcome message is not displayed:

1. Move all remote keys away from the vehicle.
2. Start the vehicle with another remote key. A DIC welcome message should display indicating the driver number of the other remote key. Turn the vehicle off and remove the other remote key from the vehicle.
3. Start the vehicle with the initial remote key. The DIC welcome message should display the driver number of the initial remote key.

Saving Seating Positions

Read these instructions completely before saving memory positions.

To save preferred driving positions to 1 and 2:

1. Turn the vehicle on or to ACC/ACCESSORY. A DIC welcome message may indicate the driver number of the current remote key. See “Identifying Driver Number” previously in this section.

2. Adjust all available memory features to the desired driving position.
3. Press and release SET; a beep will sound.
4. Immediately upon releasing SET, press and hold memory button 1 or 2 matching the current Driver's remote key number until two beeps sound. If too much time passes between releasing SET and pressing 1 or 2, the two beeps will not sound indicating memory position were not saved. Repeat Steps 3 and 4 to try again.
5. Repeat Steps 1–4 for the other remote key 1 or 2 using the other 1 or 2 memory button.

It is recommended to save the preferred driving positions to both 1 and 2 if you are the only driver.

To save the common exit seating position to that is used by all drivers for Manually Recalling Seating Positions and Auto Seat Exit Memory Recall features, repeat Steps 1–4 using , the exit button.

Manually Recalling Seating Positions

Press and hold 1, 2, or button until the recall is complete, to recall the positions previously saved to that button.

Manual Memory recall movement for 1, 2 or buttons may be initiated and will complete to the saved memory position if the vehicle is in or out of P (Park).

Enable Automatic Recalls under Vehicle Personalization Settings

- For Seat Entry Memory that begins movement to the preferred driving position of the 1 or 2 button when the vehicle is turned on, select the Settings menu, then Vehicle, then Seating Position, then Seat Entry Memory, and then Select ON or OFF. See "Auto Seat Entry Memory Recall" later in this section.
- For Seat Exit Memory that begins movement to the preferred exit position of the button when the vehicle is turned off and the driver door is open or opened, select the Settings menu, then Vehicle, then Seating Position, then Seat Exit Memory, and then Select ON or OFF. See "Auto Seat Exit Memory Recall" later in this section.
- See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139* for additional setting information.

Auto Seat Entry Memory Recall

Seat Entry Memory will automatically begin movement to the seating positions of the 1 or 2 button corresponding to the driver's remote key number 1 or 2 detected by the vehicle when:

- The vehicle is turned ON.
- Seating positions have been previously saved to the same 1 or 2 button. See "Saving Seating Positions" previously in this section.
- Seat Entry Memory is enabled. See "Enable Automatic Recalls" under "Vehicle Personalization Settings" previously in this section.
- The shift lever is in P (Park).

Seat Entry Memory Recall will continue if the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) prior to reaching the saved memory position.

If the saved memory seat position does not automatically recall, verify the recall is enabled. See “Enable Automatic Recalls” under “Vehicle Personalization Settings” previously in this section.

If the memory seat recalls to the wrong position, the driver’s remote key number 1 or 2 may not match the memory button number positions they were saved to. Try the other remote key or try saving the positions to the other 1 or 2 memory button. See “Saving Seating Positions” previously in this section.

Automatic Seat Entry Memory recalls are only available for driver’s remote key numbers 1 and 2. Remote keys 3–8 will not provide Seat Entry Memory recalls.

Auto Seat Exit Memory Recall

Seat Exit Memory will begin movement to the seating position of the button when:

- The vehicle is turned off and the driver door is open or opened within a short time.
- A seating position has been previously been saved to the memory button. See “Saving Seating Positions” previously in this section
- Seat Exit Memory is enabled. See “Enable Automatic Recalls” under “Vehicle Personalization Settings” previously in this section.
- The shift lever is in P (Park).

Seat Exit Memory recall will continue if the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) prior to reaching the saved memory position.

Seat Exit Memory is not linked to the driver’s remote key. The seating position saved to is used for all drivers.

Cancel Memory Seating Recalls

- During any memory recall:

  Press a power seat control

  Press SET memory button
- During Manual memory recall:

  Release 1, 2, or memory button
- During Auto Seat Entry Memory Recall:

  Turn vehicle off

  Press SET, 1, 2, or memory buttons
- During Auto Seat Exit Memory Recall:

  Press SET, 1, 2, or memory buttons

Obstructions

If something has blocked the seat while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction and try the recall again. If the memory position still does not recall, see your dealer.

Heated and Ventilated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

If temperature change or pain to the skin cannot be felt, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Heated and Ventilated Seat Buttons Shown, Heated Seat Buttons Similar

If equipped, the buttons are located on the door panel. To operate, the engine must be running.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat back and cushion.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat back.

Press or, if available, to ventilate the driver or passenger seat.
A ventilated seat has a fan that pulls or pushes air through the seat. The air is not cooled.

When this feature is off, the heated and ventilated seat symbols on the buttons are white. When a heated seat is turned on, the symbol turns red. When a ventilated seat is turned on, the symbol turns blue.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The indicator lights next to the buttons indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest. If the heated seats are on high, the level may automatically be lowered after approximately 30 minutes.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

Auto Heated and Ventilated Seats

When the vehicle is on, this feature will automatically activate the heated or ventilated seats at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature.

The active high, medium, low, or off heated or ventilated seat level will be indicated by the manual heated or ventilated seat buttons on the door panel. Use the manual heated or ventilated seat buttons on the door panel to turn auto heated or ventilated seats off. If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the auto heated or ventilated seats feature will not activate that seat. The auto heated or ventilated seats feature can be programmed to always be enabled when the vehicle is on.

See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Remote Start Heated and Ventilated Seats

During a remote start, the heated or ventilated seats, if equipped, can be turned on automatically. When it is cold outside, the heated seats turn on, and when it is hot outside the

ventilated seats turn on. If the auto heated or ventilated seats feature, if equipped, is not turned on, the heated or ventilated seats may be canceled when the ignition is turned on. If necessary, press the heated or ventilated seat button to use the heated or ventilated seats after the vehicle is started.

The heated or ventilated seat indicator lights may turn on during a remote start.

The temperature performance of an unoccupied seat may be reduced. This is normal.

The remote start heated or ventilated seats may be enabled or disabled in the vehicle personalization menu. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *13* and *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Reminder

If equipped, the message REAR SEAT REMINDER LOOK IN REAR SEAT displays under certain conditions indicating there may be an item or passenger in the rear seat. Check before exiting the vehicle.

This feature will activate when a second row door is opened while the vehicle is on or up to 10 minutes before the vehicle is turned on. There will be an alert when the vehicle is turned off. The alert does not directly detect objects in the rear seat; instead, under certain conditions, it detects when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seat.

The feature is active only once each time the vehicle is turned on and off, and will require reactivation by opening and closing the second row doors. There may be an alert even when there is nothing in the rear seat; for example, if a child entered the vehicle through the rear door and left the vehicle without the vehicle being shut off.

The feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Second Row Seats

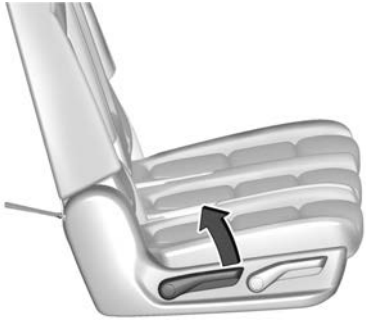
Rear Seat Adjustment

To adjust the seat position:

1. Remove objects on the floor in front of or on the second row seat, or in the seat tracks on the floor.
2. Lift the lever on the side of the seat cushion and slide the seat forward or backward.

Reclining Seatbacks

To recline the seatback:



1. Lift the lever on the outboard side of the seat.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

1. Lift the lever fully while applying pressure to the seatback, and the seatback will return to the upright position. If the lever is lifted without applying pressure, the seat will release to a folded position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Entering and Exiting the Third Row

Manual Fold and Tumble Feature

⚠ Warning

Do not leave the second row seat in a tumbled position while the vehicle is in motion. A tumbled seat is not locked. It can move when the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

vehicle is in motion. People in the vehicle could be injured in a sudden stop or crash. Be sure to return the seat to the passenger seating position before driving the vehicle. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place.

Caution

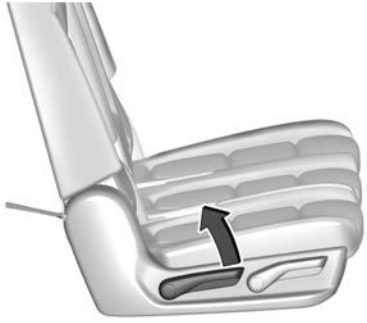
Folding a rear seat with the seat belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the seat belts. Always unbuckle the seat belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

The second row seats can be folded for additional cargo space or folded and tumbled for easy entry and exit to the third row seat.

Folding and Tumbling the Seat

To fold and tumble the seat:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.



2. Lift the lever on the outboard side of the seat to release the seatback.

The seatback will fold forward to create a flat load floor.

If the seatback cannot fold flat, try moving the front seat forward and/or put the front seatback in the upright position.

3. Lift the lever again to release the rear of the seat from the floor. The seat will tumble forward.

Folding and Tumbling the Seat from the Third Row Seat

⚠ Warning

Using the third row seating position while the second row is folded, or folded and tumbled, could cause injury in a sudden stop or crash. Be

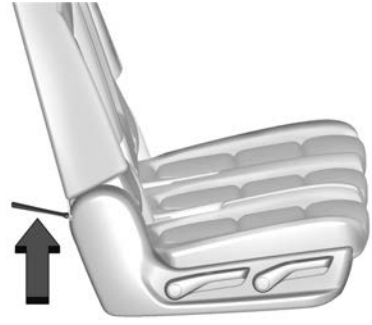
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

sure to return the seat to the passenger seating position. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place.

To fold and tumble the seat from the third row seat:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.



2. Pull the strap on the bottom rear of the second row seat to release the seatback. The seatback will fold forward.

3. Pull the strap again to release the rear of the seat from the floor. The seat will tumble forward.

Automatic Fold and Tumble Feature

⚠ Warning

Do not leave the second row seat in a tumbled position while the vehicle is in motion. A tumbled seat is not locked. It can move when the vehicle is in motion. People in the vehicle could be injured in a sudden stop or crash. Be sure to return the seat to the passenger seating

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

position before driving the vehicle. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place.

⚠ Warning

Automatically folding and tumbling the seat when someone is sitting in the seat, could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always make sure there is no one sitting in the seat before pressing the automatic seat release switch.

Caution

Folding a rear seat with the seat belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the seat belts. Always unbuckle the seat belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

The transmission must be in P (Park) for this feature to work.

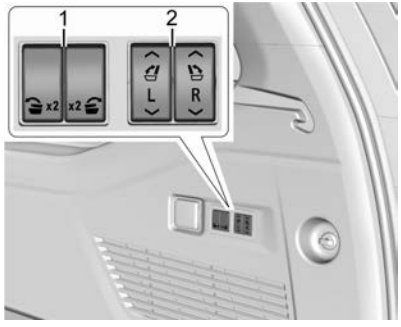
To fold and tumble the seat:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.

Driver Side Rear Panel Switch

2. Press the automatic seat release switch on the panel behind the rear doors. The seatback automatically folds flat.
3. Press the switch again to release the rear of the seat from the floor. The seat will tumble forward.

Folding and Tumbling the Second Row Seat from the Cargo Area



1. Second Row Power Seat Fold and Tumble Switches
2. Third Row Power Seat Fold and Raise Switches

To fold and tumble the seat from the cargo area:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.
2. Press the switch (1) on the side trim of the cargo area to fold the second row seatback. The left switch folds the left seatback, and the right switch folds the right seatback.
3. Press the switch again to release the rear of the seat from the floor. The seat will tumble forward.

The switches (2) can be used to fold the third row seatbacks from the cargo area. See *Third Row Seats* ⇨ *54*.

Returning the Seat to the Sitting Position

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

To return the seat to the sitting position from the tumbled position:

1. Pull the seat down until it latches to the floor. The seatback cannot be raised if the seat is not latched to the floor.
2. Lift the seatback and push it rearward. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.
3. For the 60/40 split-bench seat, make sure the seat belt in the center seating position is not caught between the two seats and is not twisted.

Heated Rear Seats

⚠ Warning

If temperature change or pain to the skin cannot be felt, the seat heater may cause burns. See the Warning under *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *47*.

The buttons are on the rear of the center console.

With the engine running, press or to heat the left or right outboard seat cushion. An indicator on the rear climate control display appears when this feature is on.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The indicator lights next to the buttons indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

If the heated seats are on high for 30 minutes, their level may automatically be lowered.

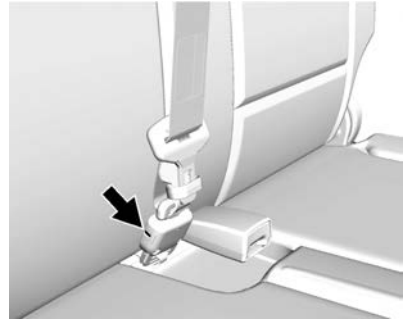
Third Row Seats

Caution

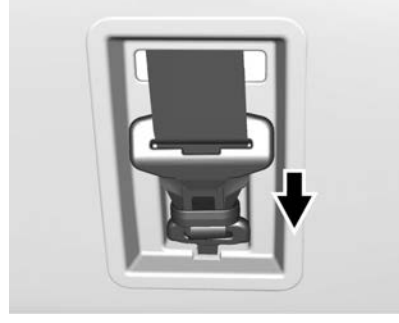
Folding a rear seat with the seat belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the seat belts. Always unbuckle the seat belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

The third row seatbacks can be folded to increase cargo space.

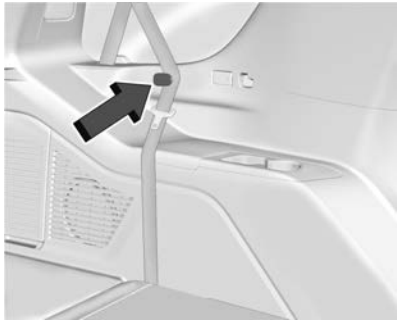
1. Open the liftgate to access the controls for the third row seat.
2. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.
3. If the second row seat is in the full rear position, adjust it forward to allow the third row seat to fold fully flat.



4. Disconnect the rear seat belt mini-latch, using a key in the slot on the mini-buckle, and let the belt retract into the headliner.



5. Stow the mini-latch in the holder in the headliner.

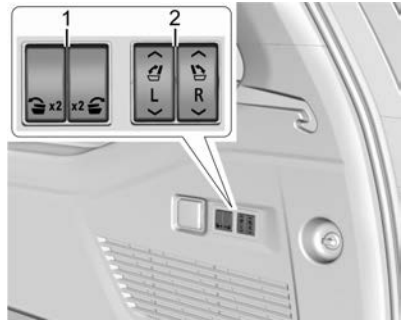


6. Stow the seat belt in the belt stowage clip.

   Repeat the steps to fold the other seatback, if desired.

Power Seatback Folding

The vehicle must be in P (Park) for this feature to work.



1. Second Row Power Seat Fold and Tumble Switches
2. Third Row Power Seat Fold and Raise Switches

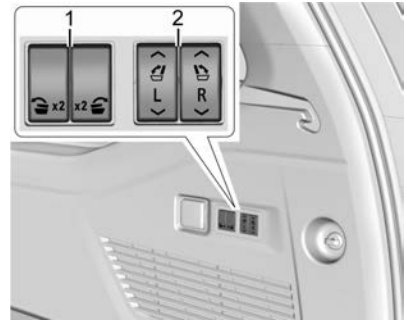
1. Press and hold the switch (2) on the side trim of the cargo area to fold the third row seatback.

   The left switch folds the left seatback, and the right switch folds the right seatback.

2. Repeat the steps for the other seatback, if desired.

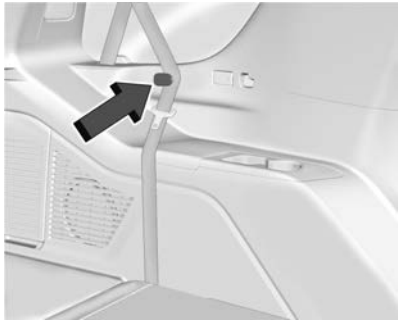
The switches (1) can be used to fold or fold and tumble the second row seats from the cargo area. See *Second Row Seats* ⇨ *49*.

Returning the Third Row Seatback to the Upright Position



1. Second Row Power Seat Fold and Tumble Switches
2. Third Row Power Seat Fold and Raise Switches

To return the third row seatback to the upright position:



1. Ensure the seat belt is in the belt stowage clip.
2. Open the liftgate to access the controls for the seat.
3. Press and hold the switch (2) on the side trim of the cargo area to raise the third row seatback.

   The left switch raises the left seatback, and the right switch raises the right seatback.

⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the seat belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

4. Reconnect the center seat belt mini-latch to the mini-buckle. Do not let it twist.
5. Pull on the seat belt to be sure the mini-latch is secure.
6. Repeat the steps for the other seatback, if desired.

Folding the Third Row Seats from the Overhead Console

To fold the seats from the overhead console, if equipped:

The vehicle must be in P (Park) for this feature to work.

1. Press and hold the switch to fold the third row seatback.

   The left switch folds the left seatback, and the right switch folds the right seatback.
2. Repeat the steps for the other seatback, if desired.

3. Press and hold the switch to return the seatback to the seating position.

   If the red light on the switch is illuminated, the third row seatback is not in the seating position.

   If the red light on the switch is off, the third row seatback is in the seating position.

There are additional switches which can be used to fold the third row seatbacks from the cargo area. See *Third Row Seats* ⇨ *54*.

Seat Belts

This section describes how to use seat belts properly, and some things not to do.

⚠ Warning

Do not let anyone ride where a seat belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing seat belts, injuries can be much worse than if you are wearing seat belts. You can be

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

seriously injured or killed by hitting things inside the vehicle harder or by being ejected from the vehicle. In addition, anyone who is not buckled up can strike other passengers in the vehicle.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, passengers riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow passengers to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

Always wear a seat belt, and check that all passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the seat belts. See *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *119*.

Why Seat Belts Work

When riding in a vehicle, you travel as fast as the vehicle does. If the vehicle stops suddenly, you keep going until something stops you. It could be the windshield, the instrument panel, or the seat belts!

When you wear a seat belt, you and the vehicle slow down together. There is more time to stop because you stop over a longer distance and, when worn properly, your strongest bones take the forces from the seat belts. That is why wearing seat belts makes such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Seat Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a seat belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a seat belt or not. Your chance of being conscious during and after a crash, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear seat belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only. They work *with* seat belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection.

Also, in nearly all states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing seat belts.

Buckle To Drive

If equipped, this feature prevents the vehicle from shifting out of P (Park) when the driver seat belt is not buckled. The Buckle to Drive feature must be turned ON in the infotainment system to work. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139* and if equipped, *Teen Driver* ⇨ *208*. If the engine is running, the driver seat belt is not buckled, and the brake pedal is pressed with the vehicle in P (Park), a message displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC). Buckle the driver seat belt to shift out of P (Park). Shifting from P (Park) will be prevented once for each ignition cycle.

For some fleet vehicles, the feature is always ON and it cannot be turned OFF in the infotainment system. Shifting from P (Park) will be prevented each time the above conditions exist.

On some models, Buckle to Drive may also prevent shifting out of P (Park) if a front passenger is unbuckled under similar conditions. A message displays in the DIC. Buckle the front passenger seat belt to shift out of P (Park). This feature may not allow the vehicle to shift out of P (Park) if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device, is on the front passenger seat. If this happens, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt to shift out of P (Park).

If the driver, or on some vehicles, the present front passenger remains unbuckled, the DIC message will turn off after several seconds and the vehicle can be shifted out of P (Park). See “Seat Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for information about the importance of proper restraint use.

If the driver seat belt or the front passenger seat belt is unbuckled when driving, the seat belt reminder chime and light(s) will come on. See *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *119*. This feature may not function properly if the airbag readiness light is on. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120*.

How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

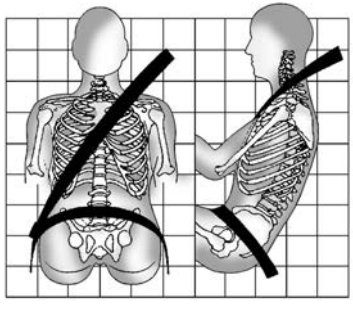
Follow these rules for everyone's protection.

There are additional things to know about seat belts and children, including smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle,

see *Older Children* ⇨ *76* or *Infants and Young Children* ⇨ *78*. Review and follow the rules for children in addition to the following rules.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing seat belts.

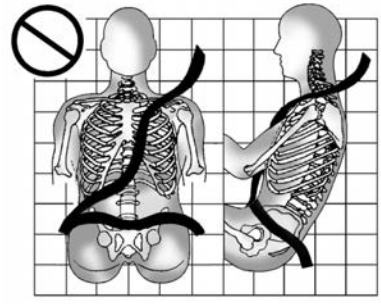
There are important things to know about wearing a seat belt properly.

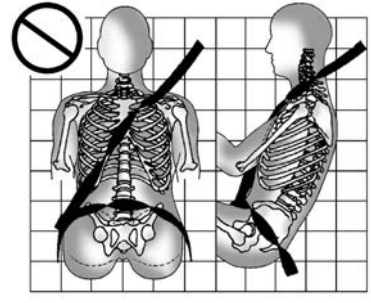


- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you (if possible).
- Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.
- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

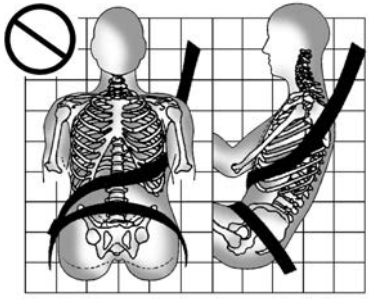
⚠ Warning

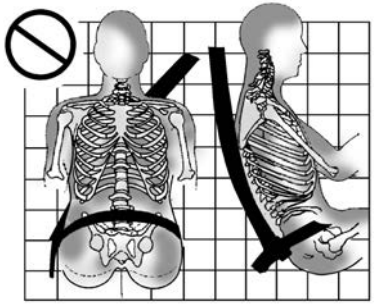
You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your seat belt properly.



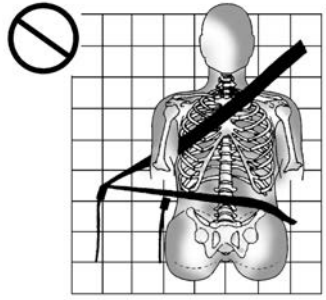


Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.

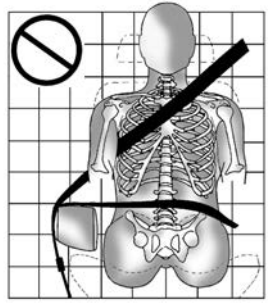




Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.



Always use the correct buckle for your seating position.



Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.

⚠ Warning

The seat belt can be pinched if it is routed under plastic trim on the seat, such as trim around the rear seatback folding handle or side airbag. In a crash, pinched seat belts might not provide adequate protection. Never allow seat belts to be routed under plastic trim pieces.

⚠ Warning

You can be seriously injured or killed if the shoulder belt is worn behind your back, under your legs, or wrapped around your neck. The shoulder belt can tighten but cannot be loosened if it is locked. The shoulder belt locks when it is pulled all the way out of the retractor. It unlocks when the shoulder belt is allowed to go all the way back into the retractor, but it cannot do this if it is wrapped around you. You may have to cut the seat belt if it is locked and tightened around you.

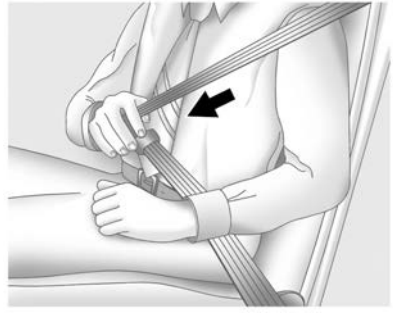
Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

If you are using a rear seating position with a detachable seat belt and the seat belt is not attached, see *Third Row Seats* ⇨ *54* for instructions on reconnecting the seat belt to the mini-buckle.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.

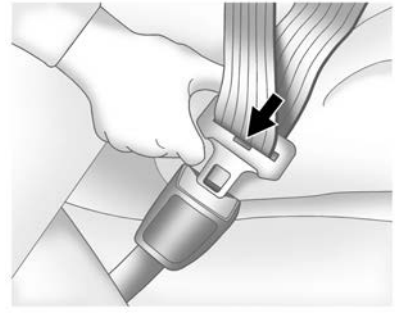


2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

   If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. See *Child Restraint Systems* ⇨ *80*. If this occurs, let the belt go back all the way and start again. If the locking feature stays engaged after letting the belt go back to stowed position on the seat, move the seat rearward or recline the seat until the shoulder belt retractor lock releases.

   Engaging the child restraint locking feature in the front outboard seating position may affect the passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *71*.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

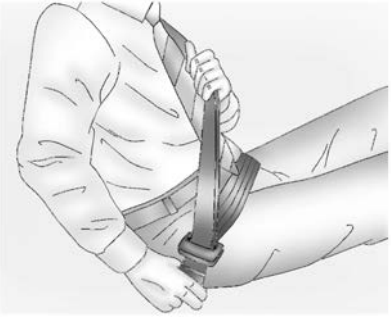
   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

   If the belt is not long enough, see *Seat Belt Extender* ⇨ *64*.

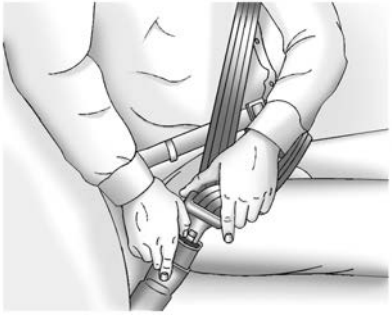
If the latch plate will not go fully into the buckle, check if the correct buckle is being used.

Position the release button on the buckle so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See "Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster" in this section for instructions on use and important safety information.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.



To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

Always stow the seat belt slowly. If the seat belt webbing returns quickly to the stowed position, the retractor may lock and cannot be pulled out. If this happens, pull the seat belt straight out firmly to unlock the webbing, and then release it. If the webbing is still locked in the retractor, see your dealer.

Before a door is closed, be sure the seat belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a seat belt, damage can occur to both the seat belt and the vehicle.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and front outboard passenger positions.

Adjust the height so the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in a crash. See *How to Wear Seat Belts Properly* ⇨ *58*.

Push the release button to move the height adjuster to the desired position.

After the adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it down without pushing the release button to make sure it has locked into position.

Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System

The vehicle may have the Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System.

Each time the front seat belts are buckled while the vehicle is in P (Park) or D (Drive) and the engine is running or in Auto Stop (if equipped), the system may activate to tighten the seat belts.

The system also activates during emergency braking and/or sudden driving maneuvers and releases when driving conditions return to normal.

The system will not activate if the Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control system is not functioning properly. See *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *264*. If there is a problem with the Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System, a message displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC). If a system unavailable message displays repeatedly or if a service message displays, see your dealer. Other seat belt functions are not affected by the Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System.

Seat Belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has seat belt pretensioners for the front outboard occupants.

Although the seat belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the seat belt assembly. They can help tighten the seat belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal or near frontal crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met.

Seat belt pretensioners can also help tighten the seat belts in a side crash or rollover event.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, the pretensioners and probably other parts of the vehicle's seat belt system will need to be replaced. See *Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash* ⇨ *65*.

Do not sit on the outboard seat belt while entering or exiting the vehicle or at any time while sitting in the seat. Sitting on the seat belt can damage the webbing and hardware.

Rear Seat Belt Comfort Guides

Rear seat belt comfort guides may provide added seat belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the shoulder belt away from the neck and head.

Comfort guides are available through your dealer for the rear outboard seating positions. Instructions are included with the comfort guides.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear seat belts.

A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a seat belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making seat belts effective is wearing them properly.

Seat Belt Extender

If the vehicle's seat belt will fasten around you, you should use it. But if a seat belt is not long enough, your dealer will order you an extender. Only a GM dealer issued extender should be used. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child restraints. For more information on the proper use and fit of seat belt extenders see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

Safety System Check

Periodically check the seat belt reminder, seat belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), and seat belt anchorages to make sure they are all in working order. Look for any other loose or damaged seat belt system parts that might keep a seat belt system from performing properly. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn, frayed, or twisted seat belts may not protect you in a crash. Torn or frayed seat belts can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, have it replaced immediately. If a belt is twisted, it may be possible to untwist by reversing the latch plate on the webbing. If the twist cannot be corrected, ask your dealer to fix it.

Make sure the seat belt reminder light is working. See *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *119*.

Keep seat belts clean and dry. See *Seat Belt Care* ⇨ *64*.

Seat Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

Seat belts should be properly cared for and maintained.

Seat belt hardware should be kept dry and free of dust or debris. As necessary, exterior hard surfaces and seat belt webbing may be lightly cleaned with mild soap and water. Ensure there is not excessive dust or debris in the mechanism. If dust or debris exists in the system please see the dealer. Parts may need to be replaced to ensure proper functionality of the system.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye seat belt webbing. It may severely weaken the webbing. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean and rinse seat belt webbing only with mild soap and lukewarm water. Allow the webbing to dry.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the seat belt system in the vehicle. A damaged seat belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the seat belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of seat belts may not be necessary. But the seat belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer to have the seat belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the seat belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the seat belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120*.

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver
- A frontal airbag for the front outboard passenger
- A front center airbag for the driver and front outboard passenger
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the front outboard passenger
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and for the second and third row passengers seated directly behind the driver
- A roof-rail airbag for the front outboard passenger and the second and third row passengers seated directly behind the front outboard passenger

All vehicle airbags have the word AIRBAG on the trim or on a label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the center of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the front outboard passenger.

For the front center airbag, the word AIRBAG is on the inboard side of the driver seatback.

For seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the side of the seatback or side of the seat closest to the door.

For roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the ceiling or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by seat belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ Warning

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your seat belt, even with airbags. Airbags are designed to work with seat belts, not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to inflate in every crash. In some crashes seat belts are the only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ *68*.

Wearing your seat belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are "supplemental restraints" to the seat belts. Everyone in the vehicle

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

should wear a seat belt properly, whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ Warning

Because airbags inflate with great force and faster than the blink of an eye, anyone who is up against, or very close to any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to any airbag, as you would be if sitting on the edge of the seat or leaning forward. Seat belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear a seat belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. The seat belts and the front outboard passenger airbags are most effective when you are sitting well back and upright in the seat with both feet on the floor.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the front center armrest or console in vehicles with a front center airbag.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

⚠ Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children* ⇨ *76* or *Infants and Young Children* ⇨ *78*.

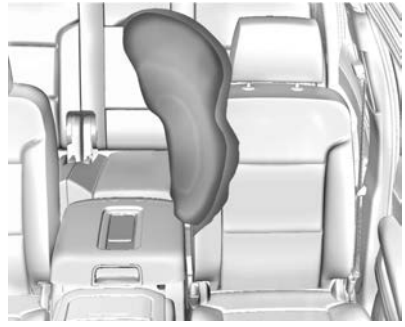
There is an airbag readiness light on the center stack below the infotainment screen, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120*.

Where Are the Airbags?

The driver frontal airbag is in the center of the steering wheel.

The front outboard passenger frontal airbag is in the passenger side instrument panel.



The front center airbag is in the inboard side of the driver seatback.

Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

The driver and front outboard passenger seat-mounted side impact airbags are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, front outboard passenger, and second and third row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.

⚠ Warning

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat or console accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag or the front center airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie-down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

This vehicle is equipped with airbags. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *65*. Airbags are designed to inflate if the impact exceeds the specific airbag system's deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. The vehicle has electronic sensors that help the airbag system determine the severity of the impact. Deployment thresholds can vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries, mainly to the driver's or front outboard passenger's head and chest.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should inflate is not based primarily on how fast the vehicle is traveling. It depends on what is hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds depending on whether the vehicle hits an object straight on or at an angle, and whether the object is fixed or moving, rigid or deformable, narrow or wide.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or many side impacts.

In addition, the vehicle has advanced technology frontal airbags. Advanced technology frontal airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity.

The front center airbag is designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes depending upon the location of the impact, when either side of the vehicle is struck. In addition, the front center airbag is designed to inflate when the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over on its side. The front center airbag is not designed to inflate in frontal impacts, near frontal impacts, or rear impacts.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes depending on the location of the impact. Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not designed to inflate in frontal impacts, near frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts. A seat-mounted side impact airbag is designed to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

Roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes depending on the location of the impact. In addition, these roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Roof-rail airbags are not designed to inflate in rear impacts. Both roof-rail airbags will inflate when either side of the vehicle is struck, if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over on its side, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the vehicle damage or the repair costs.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

For airbag locations, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *67*.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by seat belts by distributing the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's body.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help contain the head and chest of occupants in the outboard seating positions in the first, second, and third rows. The rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of full or partial ejection in rollover events, although no system can prevent all such ejections.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ *68*.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to seat belts.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

After frontal and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize the airbags inflated. The front center airbag and roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they inflate. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *67*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn on the interior lamps and hazard warning flashers, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. The feature may also activate, without airbag inflation, after an event that exceeds a predetermined threshold. After turning the ignition off and then on again, the fuel system will return to normal operation; the doors can be locked, the interior lamps can be turned off, and the hazard warning flashers can be turned off using the controls for those features. If any of these systems are damaged in the crash they may not operate as normal.

⚠ Warning

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the front outboard passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for the vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy* ⇨ *478* and *Event Data Recorders* ⇨ *478*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Passenger Sensing System

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator will light on the overhead console when the vehicle is started.

United States and Canada

The words ON and OFF, and the symbols for on and off, will be visible during the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or OFF, and the symbol for on or off, will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *121*.

The passenger sensing system turns off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. No other airbag is affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front outboard passenger seat and seat belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag should be allowed to inflate or not.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in the correct child restraint for their weight and size.

Whenever possible, children aged 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag inflates.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag is turned off.

Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat, even if the airbag is off. If securing a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure child restraints in the rear seat. Consider using another vehicle to transport the child when a rear seat is not available.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, a rear-facing child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag if:

- The front outboard passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A front outboard passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag, the OFF indicator will light and stay lit as a reminder that the airbag is off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *121*.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on the front outboard passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front outboard passenger seat.

When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the ON indicator will light and stay lit as a reminder that the airbag is active.

For some children, including children in child restraints, and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in the vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a seat belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120* for more information, including important safety information.

If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag if the system determines that an infant

is present in a child restraint. If a child restraint has been installed and the ON indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.
3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and refer to *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)* ⇨ *91* or *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Passenger Seat)* ⇨ *94*.

   Make sure the seat belt retractor is locked by pulling the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor when installing the child restraint, even if the child restraint is equipped with a seat belt lock off. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.
5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the ON indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

   Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *40*.
6. Restart the vehicle.

The passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the airbag for a child in a child restraint depending upon the child's size. It is better to secure child restraints in a rear seat. Consider using another vehicle to transport the child when a rear seat is not available. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat, even if the ON indicator is not lit.

If the Off Indicator Is Lit for an Adult-Sized Occupant

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front outboard passenger seat, but the OFF indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat or that the child restraint locking feature is engaged. Use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the front outboard passenger frontal airbag:

1. Turn the vehicle off.

2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. If the shoulder portion of the belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature will be engaged. This may unintentionally cause the passenger sensing system to turn the airbag off for some adult-sized occupants. If this happens, unbuckle the belt, let the belt go back all the way, and then buckle the belt again without pulling the belt out all the way.
6. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the ON indicator is lit.

⚠ Warning

If the front outboard passenger airbag is turned off for an adult-sized occupant, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect that person in a crash, resulting in an increased risk of serious injury or even death. An adult-sized occupant should not ride in the front outboard passenger seat, if the passenger airbag OFF indicator is lit.

Additional Factors Affecting System Operation

Seat belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Seat Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *75* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

The ON indicator may be lit if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device, is put on an unoccupied seat. If this is not desired, remove the object from the seat.

⚠ Warning

Stowing articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Publication Ordering Information* ⇨ *476*.

⚠ Warning

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end, or side sheet metal may keep the airbag system from working properly.

The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing, including improperly repairing or replacing, any parts of the following:

- Airbag system, including airbag modules, front or side impact sensors, sensing and diagnostic module, airbag wiring, or front center console
- Front seats, including stitching, seams or zippers
- Seat belts
- Steering wheel, instrument panel, overhead console, ceiling trim, or pillar garnish trim
- Inner door seals, including speakers

Your dealer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag modules and sensors, sensing and diagnostic module, and airbag wiring along with the proper replacement procedures.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger's seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery, or trim, or with GM covers, upholstery, or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *71*.

If the vehicle has rollover roof-rail airbags, see *Different Size Tires and Wheels* ⇨ *418* for additional important information.

If the vehicle must be modified because you have a disability and you have questions about whether the modifications will affect the vehicle's airbag system, or if you have questions about whether the airbag system will be affected if the vehicle is modified for any other reason, call Customer Assistance. See *Customer Assistance Offices* ⇨ *469*.

Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120*.

Caution

If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag coverings, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *67*. See your dealer for service.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

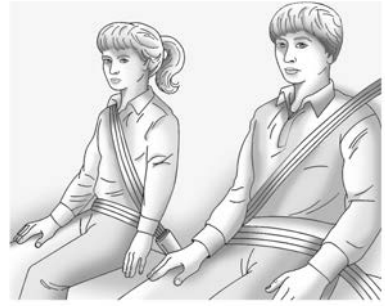
A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle. A damaged airbag system may not properly protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120*.

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's seat belts.

The manufacturer instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear seat belt comfort guide, if available. See “Rear Seat Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt* ⇨ *61*. If a comfort guide is not available, or if the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper seat belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

Q: What is the proper way to wear seat belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see “Rear Seat Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt* ⇨ *61*.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use seat belts properly.

⚠ Warning

Never allow more than one child to wear the same seat belt. The seat belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, they can be crushed together and seriously injured. A seat belt must be used by only one person at a time.

⚠ Warning

Never allow a child to wear the seat belt shoulder belt under both arms or behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Children can be seriously injured or killed if the shoulder belt is worn behind their back, under their legs, or wrapped around their neck. The shoulder belt can tighten but cannot be loosened if it is locked. The shoulder belt locks when it is pulled all the way out of the retractor. It unlocks when the shoulder belt is allowed to go all the way back into the retractor, but it cannot do this if it is wrapped around the child. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to improperly wear, or play with, the seat belts.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints. Neither the vehicle's seat belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant or child should be secured in an appropriate child restraint.

⚠ Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat.

It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If a forward-facing child restraint must be secured in the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

front passenger seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

If a child restraint is installed in the second row center seat, move the second row seat to the rearward position, whenever possible, to minimize contact with the front center airbag.

Child restraints are devices used to restrain, seat, or position children in the vehicle and are sometimes called child seats or car seats.

There are three basic types of child restraints:

- Forward-facing child restraints
- Rear-facing child restraints
- Belt-positioning booster seats

The proper child restraint for your child depends on their size, weight, and age, and also on whether the child restraint is compatible with the vehicle in which it will be used.

For each type of child restraint, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle and is certified to comply with US Federal or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. If it is, the child restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards. The NHTSA website includes a list of registered car seat manufacturers (https://www.nhtsa.gov) and links to their registration pages for consumers. Registration helps manufacturers identify purchasers for recall notices.

The instruction manual that is provided with the child restraint states the weight and height limitations for that particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of child restraints available for children with special needs.

⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury in a crash, infants and toddlers should be secured in a rear-facing child restraint until age two, or until they reach the maximum height and weight limits of their child restraint.

⚠ Warning

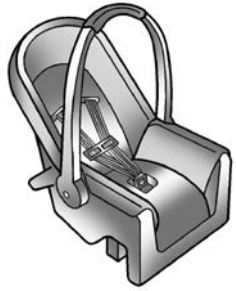
A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle seat belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in an appropriate child restraint.

Child Restraint Systems



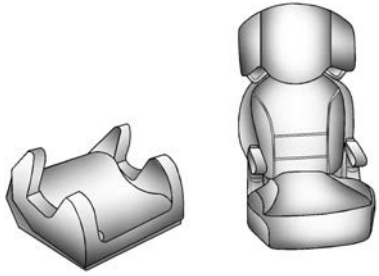
Rear-Facing Infant Restraint

A rear-facing child restraint provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.

Forward-Facing Child Restraint

A forward-facing child restraint provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



Booster Seats

A belt-positioning booster seat is used for children who have outgrown their forward-facing child restraint. Boosters are designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system until the child is large enough for the vehicle seat belts to fit properly without a booster seat. See the seat belt fit test in *Older Children* ⇨ *76*.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle seat belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraints must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *83* for more information. Never use a seat belt extender when installing a child restraint. Use only seats and related equipment that are certified to comply with US Federal or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards to secure a child restraint. Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the following:

1. Instruction labels provided on the child restraint
2. Instruction manual provided with the child restraint
3. This vehicle owner's manual

The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

In some areas Certified Child Passenger Safety Technicians (CPSTs) are available to inspect and demonstrate how to correctly use and install child restraints. In the U.S., refer to the National Highway Traffic

Safety Administration (NHTSA) website to locate the nearest child safety seat inspection station. For CPST availability in Canada, check with Transport Canada or the Provincial Ministry of Transportation office.

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

⚠ Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint secured in a rear seating position.

Whenever possible, children aged 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

The vehicle is equipped with a front center airbag in the inboard side of the driver seat. Even with a front center airbag, a child restraint can be installed in any second row seating position.

Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *71* for additional information.

If a child restraint is installed in a second row center seat, move the second row seat to the rearward position, whenever possible, to minimize contact with the front center airbag.

⚠ Warning

A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the frontal airbags if they inflate. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

When securing a child restraint with the seat belts in a rear seat position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others. Do not install a child restraint in any rear seating position where it cannot be installed securely.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent seat belts or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the seat belt.

The seat in front of an installed child restraint should be adjusted to ensure proper installation according to the child restraint manual.

When installing a child restraint in an adjustable second row seating position, the seat should be adjusted fore or aft to ensure proper installation according to the child restraint manual. If the seat is able to recline, the seat back should be positioned to its full upright position before installing a child restraint.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint and secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

The LATCH system secures a child restraint during driving or in a crash. LATCH attachments on the child restraint are used to attach the child restraint to the anchors in the vehicle. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. LATCH-compatible rear-facing and forward-facing child seats can be properly installed using either the LATCH anchors or the vehicle's seat belts. Do not use both the seat belts and the LATCH

anchorage system to secure a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint.

Booster seats use the vehicle's seat belts to secure the child and the booster seat. If the manufacturer recommends that the booster seat be secured with the LATCH system, this can be done as long as the booster seat can be positioned properly and there is no interference with the proper positioning of the lap-shoulder belt on the child.

Make sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the seat belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be attached using only the top tether.

For a forward-facing 5-pt harness child restraint where the combined weight of the child and restraint are up to 29.5 kg (65 lb), use either the lower LATCH anchorages with the top tether anchorage, or the seat belt with the top tether anchorage. Where the combined weight of the child and restraint are greater than 29.5 kg (65 lb), use the seat belt with the top tether anchorage only.

Recommended Methods for Attaching Child Restraints

Restraint Type	Combined Weight of the Child + Child Restraint	Use Only Approved Attachment Methods Show with an X			
		LATCH-Lower Anchors Only	Seat Belt Only	LATCH-Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor	Seat Belt and Top Tether Anchor
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 29.5 kg (65 lb)	X	X		
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	Greater than 29.5 kg (65 lb)		X		
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 29.5 kg (65 lb)			X	X
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	Greater than 29.5 kg (65 lb)				X

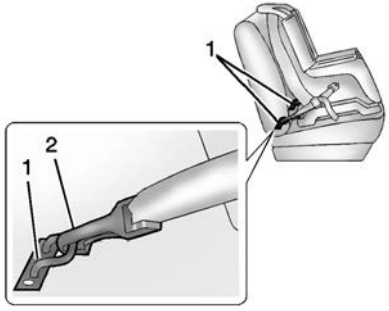
See *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)* ⇨ *91* or *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Passenger Seat)* ⇨ *94*.

Child restraints built after March 2014 are labeled with the maximum child weight, with which the LATCH system can be used for installing the child restraint.

The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in the vehicle.

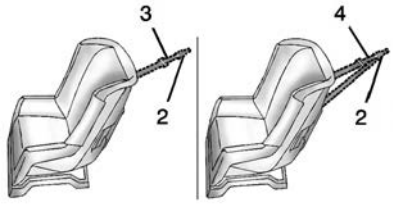
Not all vehicle seating positions have lower anchors. In this case, the seat belt must be used (with top tether where available) to secure the child restraint. See *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)* ⇨ *91* or *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Passenger Seat)* ⇨ *94*.

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (1) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (2).

Top Tether Anchor

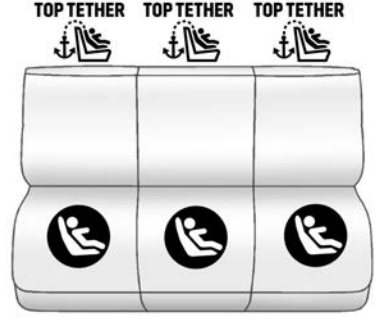


A top tether (3,4) is used to secure the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment hook (2) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in the event of a crash.

The child restraint may have a single tether (3) or a dual tether (4). Either will have a single attachment hook (2) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints with a top tether are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations

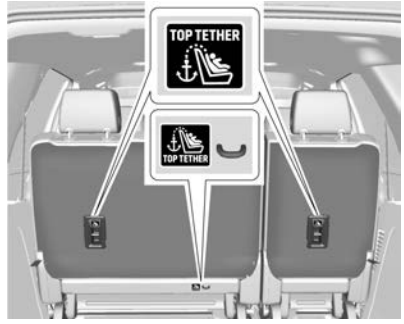


Second Row — 60/40

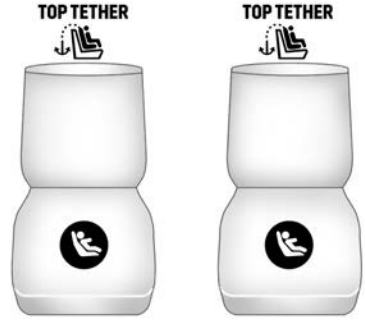
: Seating positions with two lower anchors.

TOP TETHER : Seating positions with top tether anchors.

The lower anchors are located in the crease between the seatback and seat cushion.



The top tether anchors are on the rear of the seatback for the outboard seating positions and the rear of the seat cushion for the center seating position in the second row. Be sure to use an anchor located directly behind the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

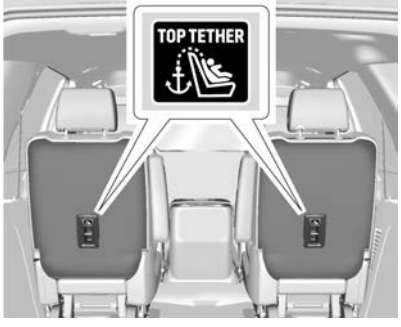


Second Row — Bucket

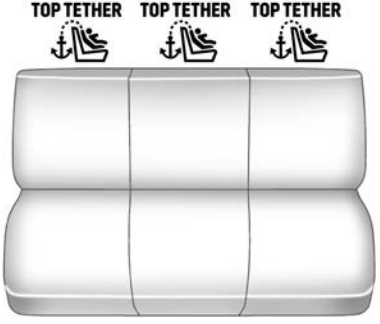
: Seating positions with two lower anchors.

TOP TETHER : Seating positions with top tether anchors.

The lower anchors are located in the crease between the seatback and seat cushion.

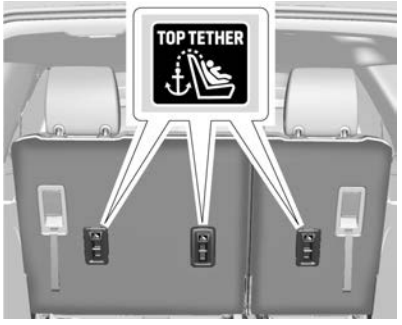


For models with bucket second row seating, the top tether anchors are on the rear of the seatback for each seating position in the second row. Be sure to use an anchor located directly behind the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.



Third Row Seat

TOP TETHER : Seating positions with top tether anchors.



For the third row seat, the top tether anchors are on the back of the seatback. Be sure to use an anchor located directly behind the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system

secured in a rear seating position. See *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *82* for additional information.

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ Warning

A child could be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly attached to the vehicle using either the LATCH anchors or the vehicle seat belt. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured.

⚠ Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck. The shoulder belt can tighten but cannot be loosened if it is locked. The shoulder belt locks when it is pulled all the way out of the retractor. It unlocks when the shoulder belt is allowed to go all the way back into the retractor, but it cannot do this if it is wrapped around a child's neck. If the shoulder belt is locked and tightened around a child's neck, the only way to loosen the belt is to cut it.

Buckle any unused seat belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, and tighten the belt behind the child restraint after the child restraint has been installed.

Caution

Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's seat belts. This may damage these parts.
If necessary, move buckled seat belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.

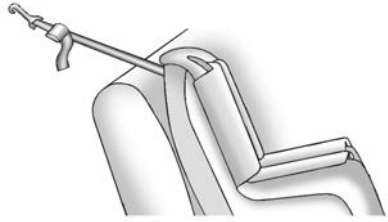
Do not fold the rear seatback when the seat is occupied. Do not fold the empty rear seat with a seat belt buckled. This could damage the seat belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the seat belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

The vehicle is equipped with a front center airbag in the inboard side of the driver seat. Even with a front

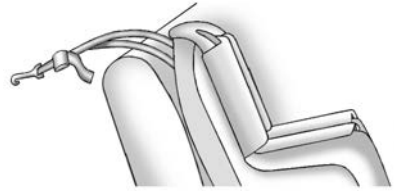
center airbag, a child restraint can be installed in any second row seating position.

If you need to secure more than one child restraint in the rear seat, see *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *82*.

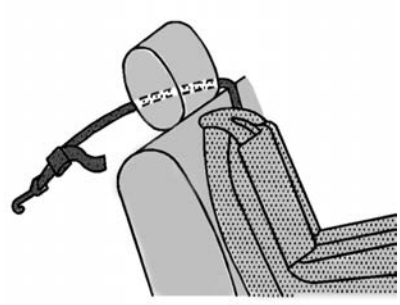
1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the seat belt and top tether when recommended by the child restraint manufacturer. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, adjust the top tether to its full length and attach it to the anchor. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Find the top tether anchor.
   2.2. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the seatback.

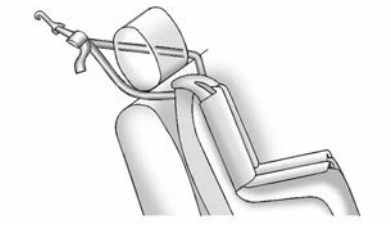


If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using has a fixed headrest or head restraint and you are using a

single tether, route the tether around the inboard side of the headrest or head restraint.



If the position you are using has a fixed or an adjustable head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the head restraint.

If the child restraint is installed next to a center seat, make sure the top tether does not interfere with the center seating position shoulder belt/retractor. If it does, find another suitable seating position to install the child restraint.

3. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the LATCH path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement, for proper installation.

Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the LATCH system in the vehicle. A damaged LATCH system may not properly secure the child restraint, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the LATCH system is working properly after a crash, see your dealer to have the system inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, new LATCH system parts may be needed.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the LATCH system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)

The vehicle is equipped with a front center airbag in the inboard side of the driver seat. Even with a front center airbag, a child restraint can be installed in any second row seating position. If you install a child restraint in a second row center seat, move the second row seat to the rearward position, whenever possible, to minimize contact with the front center airbag.

When securing a child restraint with the seat belts in a rear seat position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *83* for how and where to install the child

restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a seat belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *83* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

If the child restraint or vehicle seat position does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the seat belt to secure the child restraint. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *82*.

If the child restraint manufacturer recommends using a top tether, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor. Refer to the instructions that came with the child restraint and see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *83*.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.

   If the head restraint interferes with the proper installation of the child restraint, the head restraint may be removed. See "Head Restraint Removal and Reinstallation" under *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *83*.

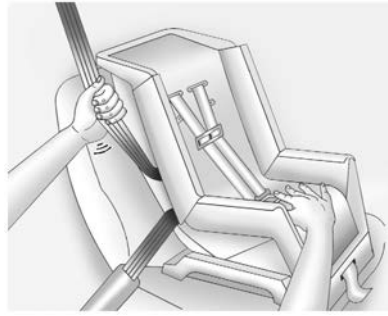
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle seat belt through or around the child restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle, away from the child restraint, so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

   The push button used to release the latch plate must be visible and not obscured by the child restraint. There must not be direct contact of the child restraint to the push button.

4. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 4 and 5.

6. For forward-facing child restraints, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor (loop). Refer to the child restraint instructions, the vehicle LATCH anchor weight limits, and instructions listed in *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *83*.

7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the seat belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle seat belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

If the head restraint was removed, reinstall it before the seating position is used. See "Head Restraint Removal and Reinstallation" under *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *83* for additional information on installing the head restraint properly.

Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Passenger Seat)

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *82*.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *71* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *121* for more information, including important safety information.

Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag inflates.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *71* for additional information.

If the child restraint uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *83* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

When using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position, follow the instructions that came with the child restraint and the following instructions:

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint. Move the seat upward or the seatback to

an upright position, if needed, to get a tight installation of the child restraint.

The push button used to release the latch plate must be visible and not obscured by the child restraint. There must not be direct contact of the child restraint to the push button.

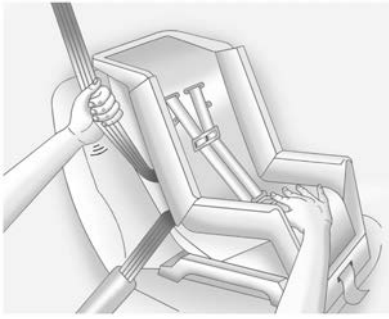
When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag, the OFF indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *121*.

2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle seat belt through or around the child restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle, away from the child restraint, so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

5. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the seat belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

If the airbag is off, the OFF indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

If a child restraint has been installed and the ON indicator is lit, see “If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint” under *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *71*.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle seat belt and let it return to the stowed position.

Storage

Storage Compartments

Storage Compartments 97
Glove Box 97
Cupholders 97
Armrest Storage 98
Rear Storage 98
Center Console Storage 99

Additional Storage Features

Cargo Tie-Downs 100
Convenience Net 101

Roof Rack System

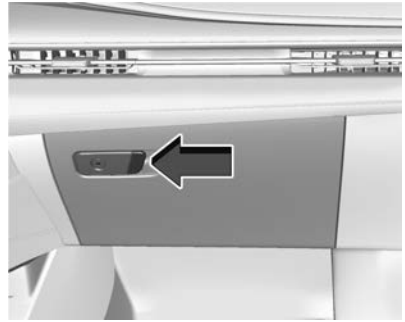
Roof Rack System 101

Storage Compartments

⚠ Warning

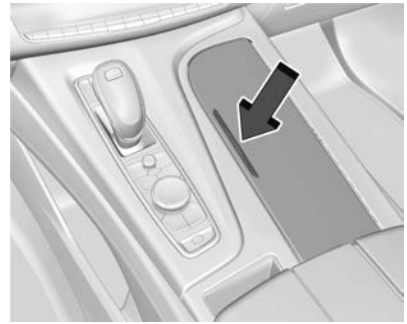
Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

Glove Box



To open, pull the handle to the left. To close, push the glove box up until it latches. Use the vehicle key to lock or unlock.

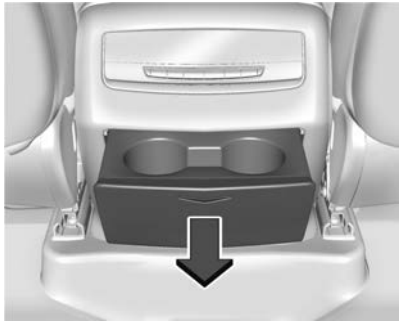
Cupholders



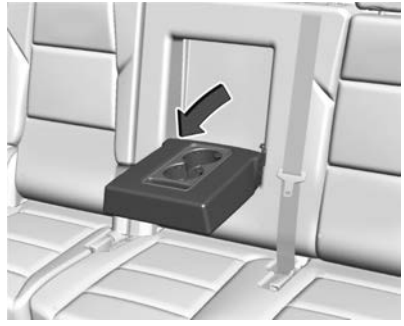
To access the cupholders, press the cover and release.

There is storage in front of the cupholders.

Rear Cupholders



If equipped with cupholders in the back center console, press the cover and release to access. There may be two USB ports, two HDMI ports, and a power outlet on the back of the center console.

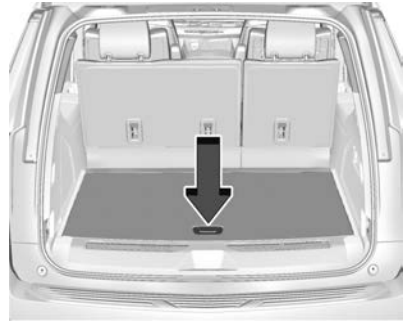


If equipped, the second row seat armrest may have cupholders. Pull the armrest down to access the cupholders.

Armrest Storage

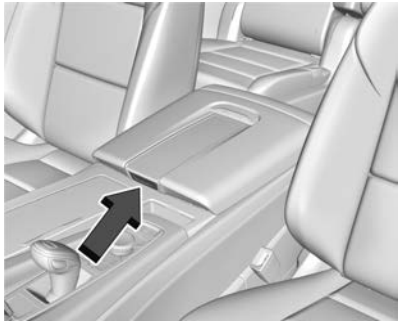
For vehicles with a rear seat armrest, pull the loop at the top of the armrest down to access the cupholders.

Rear Storage



There is storage in the floor of the rear cargo area. Lift the handle to access.

Center Console Storage



Press the button and lift to open. There is an auxiliary jack, USB ports, an accessory power outlet, a tote compartment, and a device holder inside.

On the rear of the console there are auxiliary jacks, a power outlet, and a storage area.

See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *108* and the infotainment section.

Center Console Refrigerator/Freezer

If equipped with a center console refrigerator/freezer, lift the armrest to access. A light will turn on when the armrest is up.

The refrigerator/freezer mode can only be used while the engine is running. If the vehicle is turned off and turned back on again, the last operating mode will be resumed.

⚠ Warning

Do not store glass and aluminum containers inside the bin when in freezer mode. Glass and aluminum

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

containers can break when their contents are frozen. Use caution removing broken containers to avoid personal injury.

⚠ Warning

Do not touch bin surfaces with wet or damp hands while the freezer is on. Skin could stick to the bin surface.

Caution

Do not put any objects between the front seats and the center console side walls. The air path could be blocked and cause the unit to stop working.

To use in refrigerator mode, press the button once. One light on the button will be lit. The operating temperature is 5°C (41°F).

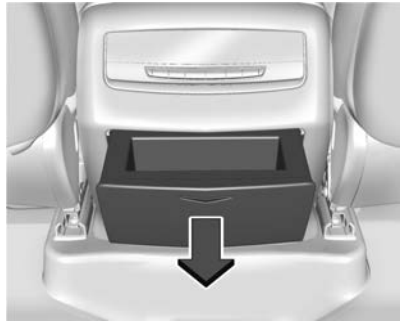
To use in freezer mode, press the button twice. Two lights on the button will be lit. The operating temperature is -5°C (23°F).

To turn off the refrigerator or freezer, press the button until its lights are off. The bin light can turn on when the refrigerator/freezer is off.

The bottom mat is removable. Clean with water and mild soap.

Clean the refrigerator/freezer bin while the vehicle and the feature are turned off. Use a damp, soft rag and wipe the bin carefully. Do not scratch or puncture the bin surfaces.

Rear Console Storage



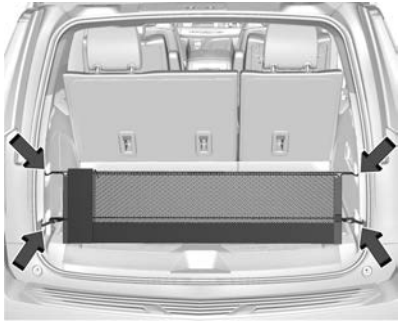
If equipped with storage in the back center console, press the cover and release to access. There may be two USB ports, two HDMI ports, and a power outlet on the back of the center console.

Additional Storage Features

Cargo Tie-Downs

There are two cargo tie-downs in the rear cargo area. These can be used to strap cargo down and keep it from moving inside the vehicle.

Convenience Net



This vehicle may have a convenience net in the rear of the vehicle. Attach it to the cargo tie-downs for storing small loads.

Do not use the net to store heavy loads.

Roof Rack System

The vehicle may be equipped with side-rails for a roof rack system. Cargo must be secured with properly installed cross rails and other accessories designed to carry cargo. These can be purchased from your dealer.

⚠ Warning

Before driving and occasionally during a trip, check that cargo is securely fastened, rests evenly between the cross rails and does not block the vehicle's lamps or windows. Never load cargo directly on the roof of the vehicle or allow cargo to hang over the rear or sides of the vehicle. Never load cargo without first properly installing cross rails and other accessories designed to carry cargo. Personal injury, death or damage to the vehicle or other property may occur.

If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, occasionally stop the vehicle to make sure the cargo remains in its place.

Cargo Weight Limits

Do not exceed the maximum cargo weight for the roof rack system, including the weight of the cross rails and any other accessories used to carry the cargo such as bike racks or roof boxes. The maximum cargo weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack system is 100 kg (220 lb) or the weight designated in the instructions that came with the cross rails or other roof rack accessories, whichever is less.

⚠ Warning

Never load the roof rack with more weight than specified in this section. Loading cargo on the roof rack will make the vehicle's center of gravity higher. To avoid losing control of the vehicle, avoid overloading, high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt maneuvers when carrying cargo on the roof rack.

The weight of any cargo carried on the roof rack system must be included in calculating the loaded weight of the vehicle. Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading the vehicle, including cargo carried on the roof rack system and passengers and

cargo carried in the vehicle. For more information on vehicle capacity and loading, see *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment 104
Steering Wheel Controls 104
Heated Steering Wheel 104
Horn 104
Windshield Wiper/Washer 105
Rear Window Wiper/Washer 107
Compass 108
Clock 108
Power Outlets 108
Wireless Charging 111

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 113
Instrument Cluster 114
Speedometer 115
Odometer 116
Trip Odometer 116
Tachometer 116
Fuel Gauge 116
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge 116
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 117
Transmission Temperature Gauge 118
Voltmeter Gauge 119
Seat Belt Reminders 119
Airbag Readiness Light 120
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 121
Charging System Light 122
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light) 122
Brake System Warning Light 124
Electric Parking Brake Light 124
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 125
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 125
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Light 125
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light ... 126
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) Disabled Light 126
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 126
Pedestrian Ahead Indicator 126
Traction Off Light 127
StabiliTrak OFF Light 127
Traction Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak Light 127
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 128
Driver Mode Control Light 128
Four Corner Air Suspension Light 129
Tire Pressure Light 130
Engine Oil Pressure Light 130
Low Fuel Warning Light 130
Security Light 131
High-Beam On Light 131
Lamps On Reminder 131
Cruise Control Light 131
Door Ajar Light 132

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC) 132
Vehicle Information 135
Head-Up Display (HUD) 136

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 138
Engine Power Messages 139
Vehicle Speed Messages 139

Vehicle Personalization

Vehicle Personalization 139

Universal Remote System

Universal Remote System 146
Universal Remote System Programming 146
Universal Remote System Operation 148

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

To adjust the power tilt and telescoping steering wheel:

Press the control to move the steering wheel up and down or forward and rearward.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Steering Wheel Controls

The infotainment system can be operated by using the steering wheel controls. See *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *161*.

Heated Steering Wheel

: If equipped, press to turn the heated steering wheel on or off. An indicator next to the button is lit when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel takes about three minutes to start heating.

Automatic Heated Steering Wheel

If equipped with remote start, the heated steering wheel may turn on during a remote start along with the heated seats when it is cold outside. The heated steering wheel indicator may come on in remote start.

If equipped with auto heated seats, the heated steering wheel will turn on when the auto heated seat is activated. The heated steering wheel indicator will display the state of the steering wheel heat.

See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *47* and *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Horn

To sound the horn, press on the steering wheel.

Windshield Wiper/Washer

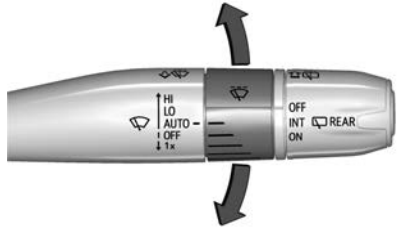
Windshield Wiper with Rainsense (AUTO Shown), If Equipped

Windshield Wiper without Rainsense (INT Shown)

With the ignition on or in ACC/ ACCESSORY, move the windshield wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

HI : Use for fast wipes.

LO : Use for slow wipes.



AUTO : If equipped with Rainsense, use this setting for intermittent wipes when Rainsense is disabled, or Rainsense wipes when Rainsense is enabled. For intermittent wipes, move the windshield wiper lever to AUTO, then turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes. If Rainsense is turned on, see “Rainsense” later in this section.

INT : If equipped with intermittent wipers only, move the windshield wiper lever to INT. Turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

OFF : Use to turn the wipers off.

1X : For a single wipe, briefly move the wiper lever down. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

: Pull the windshield wiper lever toward you to spray windshield washer fluid and activate the wipers. The wipers will continue until the lever is released or the maximum wash time is reached. When the windshield wiper lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windshield washer

has been activated. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *382* for information on filling the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ Warning

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

⚠ Warning

Before driving the vehicle, always clear snow and ice from the hood, windshield, washer nozzles, roof, and rear of the vehicle, including all lamps and windows. Reduced visibility from snow and ice buildup could lead to a crash.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades and windshield before using them. If frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *387*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor. See *Electrical System Overload* ⇨ *389*.

Night Vision Camera Washer

When it is dark enough for the night vision system to operate, activate the front windshield washer five times to clean the camera sensor.

See *Night Vision System* ⇨ *323* for information on using the night vision system.

Wiper Parking

If the ignition is turned off while the wipers are on LO, HI, or AUTO with Rainsense turned off, they will immediately stop.

If the windshield wiper lever is then moved to OFF before the driver door is opened or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windshield.

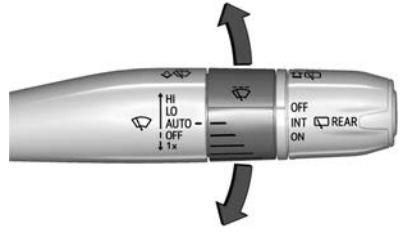
If the ignition is turned off while the wipers are performing wipes due to windshield washing or Rainsense, the wipers continue to run until they reach the base of the windshield.

Rainsense

If equipped with Rainsense and the feature is turned on, a sensor near the top center of the windshield detects the amount of water on the windshield and controls the frequency of the windshield wiper based on the current sensitivity setting.

Keep this area of the windshield clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

AUTO : Move the windshield wiper lever to AUTO. Turn the band on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity.



- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.

- Move the windshield wiper lever out of the AUTO position to deactivate Rainsense.

To turn the Rainsense feature on or off, see “Rain Sense Wipers” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

When using an automatic car wash, move the windshield wiper lever to OFF. This disables the automatic Rainsense windshield wipers.

With Rainsense, if the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the wipers will automatically stop at the base of the windshield.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

Rear Window Wiper/ Washer

The rear window wiper/washer controls are on the end of the windshield wiper lever.

Turn the controls to adjust the setting.

OFF : Turns the wiper off.

INT : Turns on the rear wiper with a delay between wipes.

ON : Turns on the rear wiper.

: Push the windshield wiper lever forward to spray washer fluid on the rear window. The wipers will clear the rear window and either stop or return to your preset speed. For more washer cycles, push and hold the lever.

The rear window wiper/washer will not operate if the liftgate is open or ajar. If the liftgate is opened while the rear wiper is on, the wiper returns to the parked position and stops.

See “Rear Camera Washer” later in this section.

Rear Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

When using an automatic car wash, move the rear wiper control to OFF to disable the rear wiper. In some vehicles, if the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the rear wiper will automatically park under the rear spoiler.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear

If the rear wiper control is off, the rear wiper will automatically operate continuously when the transmission is in R (Reverse), and the front windshield wiper is performing low or high speed wipes. If the rear wiper

control is off, the transmission is in R (Reverse), and the front windshield wiper is performing INT wipes, then the rear wiper automatically performs INT wipes.

This feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

The windshield washer reservoir is used for the windshield, rear window, and rear mirror camera, if equipped. See *Rear Camera Mirror* ⇨ *33*. Check the fluid level in the reservoir if either washer is not working. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *382*.

Rear Camera Washer

If equipped, push the windshield wiper lever forward to spray washer fluid on the rear camera lens. The lever returns to its starting position when released. See *Rear Camera Mirror* ⇨ *33*.

Activating the Rear Camera Washer also cleans the rear window.

Compass

The vehicle may have a compass display on the Instrument Cluster. The compass receives its heading and other information from the Global Positioning System (GPS) antenna, StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC), and vehicle speed information.

The compass system is designed to operate for a certain number of miles or degrees of turn before needing a signal from the GPS satellites. When the compass display shows CAL, drive the vehicle for a short distance in an open area where it can receive a GPS signal. The compass system will automatically determine when a GPS signal is restored and provide a heading again.

Clock

Set the time and date using the infotainment system. See "Time / Date" under *Settings* ⇨ *204*.

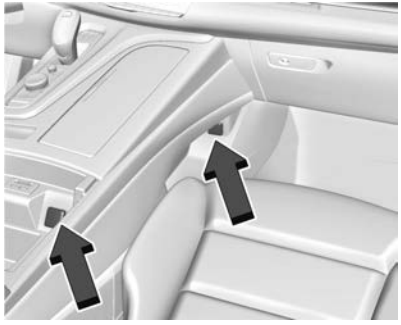
Power Outlets

Power Outlets 12-Volt Direct Current

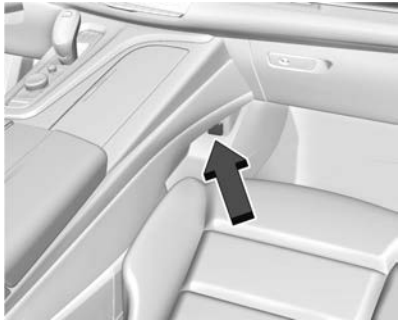
Accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle has two accessory power outlets:

- Below the center console in the map pocket
- Inside the center console (Standard Floor Console Only)



Standard Floor Console



Cooling Floor Console

Lift the cover to access and replace when not in use.

The accessory power outlets are powered as follows:

- The power outlets are powered when the vehicle is started or the ignition is in ACC/ACCESSORY, or until the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of turning off the vehicle. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *249*.

Caution

Leaving electrical equipment plugged in for an extended period of time while the vehicle is off will drain the battery. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 15 amp rating.

Certain power accessory plugs may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload vehicle or adapter fuses. If a problem is experienced, see your dealer.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *365*.

Caution

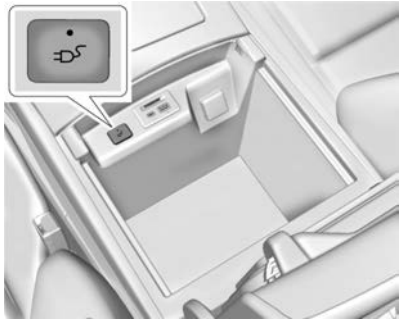
Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as cell phone charge cords.

Power Outlet 110/120 Volt Alternating Current

If equipped, the vehicle has two alternating current power outlets.

- Rear storage area
- Back of the center console

With Refrigerator/Freezer



Standard

When the ignition is on, power to the 110/120 Volt outlet is enabled after the button is pressed. A green indicator light on the button indicates when the outlet is enabled. 110 Volts is supplied to the outlet when it is enabled and electrical equipment is plugged into that outlet. One power outlet can be used with electrical equipment that uses a maximum of 400 watts.

Ensure that all connected devices do not exceed 400 watts. The power outlet can be turned off by pressing the button.

An indicator light on the outlet illuminates when the outlet is enabled and no system fault is detected. The outlet will not provide power when the ignition is off, the button is not pressed, or the plug is not fully seated into the outlet. The outlet does not operate while the engine is starting. If a USB powered streaming device is being used, it is suggested to use a USB port for power. See *USB Port* ⇨ *170*.

If uninterrupted power supply is required while driving, disable the Auto Engine Stop/Start System by pressing the Auto Stop disable switch. See *Stop/Start System* ⇨ *247*.

If equipment is connected using more than 400 watts or a system fault is detected, a protection circuit shuts off the power supply and the indicator light will flash.

Do not use a power outlet with a missing or damaged cover.

The power outlet is not designed for the following, and may not work properly if they are plugged in:

- Equipment with high initial peak wattage, such as compressor-driven refrigerators and electric power tools
- Other equipment requiring an extremely stable power supply, such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets and touch sensor lamps
- Medical equipment.

Wireless Charging

If equipped and enabled, the vehicle has wireless charging in the center console in front of the storage bin. The system operates at 145 kHz and wirelessly charges one Qi compatible smartphone. The power output of the system is capable of charging at a rate up to 3 amp (15 W), as requested by the compatible smartphone. See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *476*.

⚠ Warning

Wireless charging may affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

The vehicle must be on, in ACC/ACCESSORY, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active. The wireless charging feature may not correctly indicate charging when the vehicle is in RAP, during a Bluetooth phone call, or when phone projection (e.g. Apple CarPlay / Android Auto) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *249*.

The operating temperature is -40 °C (-40 °F) to 85 °C (185 °F) for the charging system and 0 °C (32 °F) to 35 °C (95 °F) for the phone. A charging stopped alert may be displayed on the infotainment screen, if the wireless charger or smartphone are outside of normal operating temperature. Charging will automatically resume when a normal operating temperature is reached.

⚠ Warning

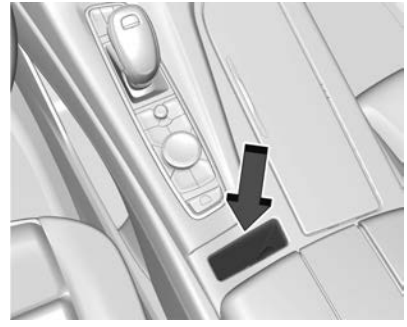
Remove all objects from the charger before charging your compatible smartphone. Objects, such as coins, keys, rings, paper clips, or cards, between the smartphone and charger may become very hot.

On the rare occasion that the charging system does not detect an object, and the object gets wedged between the smartphone and charger, remove the smartphone

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

and allow the object to cool before removing it from the charger, to prevent burns.



To charge a compatible smartphone:

1. Confirm the smartphone is capable of wireless charging.
2. Remove all objects from the charging pocket. The system may not charge if there are any objects between the smartphone and charger.
3. Place the smartphone face up against the rear of the charger.

To maximize the charge rate, ensure the smartphone is fully seated and centered in the holder with nothing under it.

A thick smartphone case may prevent the charger from working, or reduce the charging performance. See your dealer for additional information.

4. A green ⚡ will appear on the infotainment display, next to the phone icon. This indicates that the smartphone is detected.
5. If a smartphone is placed on the charger and ⚡ turns off or turns yellow, remove the smartphone and any objects from the pocket. Turn the smartphone 180 degrees and wait a few seconds before placing/aligning it on the pocket again.
6. If a smartphone is placed on the charger and ⚡ turns red, the charger and/or the smartphone is overheated. Remove the smartphone and any objects from the charger in order to cool the system.

The smartphone may become warm during charging. This is normal. In warmer temperatures, the speed of charging may be reduced.

For vehicles with wireless phone projection, the smartphone may overheat during wireless charging. The smartphone may slow down, stop charging, or shut down to protect the battery. The phone may need to be removed from its case to prevent overheating. The ⚡ may flash while the phone is cooling down enough for wireless charging to automatically resume. This is normal. Individual phone performance may vary.

Software Acknowledgements

Certain Wireless Charging Module product from LG Electronics, Inc. ("LGE") contains the open source software detailed below. Refer to the indicated open source licenses (as are included following this notice) for the terms and conditions of their use.

OSS Notice Information

To obtain the source code that is contained in this product, please visit https://opensource.lge.com. In addition to the source code, all referred license terms, warranty disclaimers and copyright notices are available for download. LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com. This offer is valid for three (3) years from the date on which you purchased the product.

Freescale-WCT library

Copyright (c) 2012-2014 Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following

disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

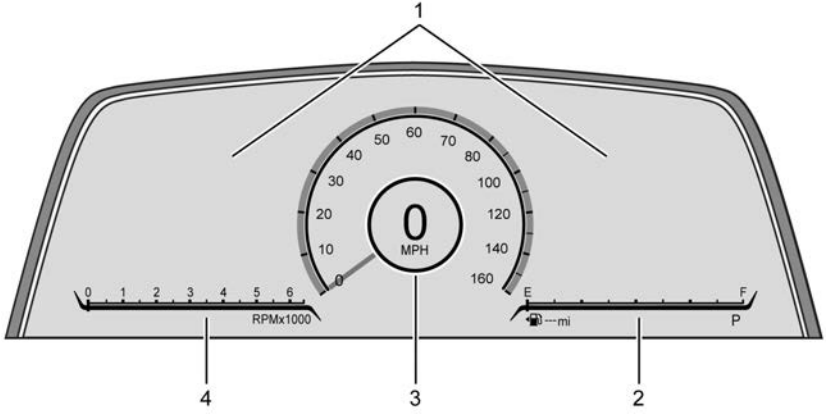
THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working. When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Instrument Cluster



English Gauge Cluster Shown, Navigation, Augmented Reality, Night Vision, and Metric Similar

1. *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *132*
2. *Fuel Gauge* ⇨ *116*
3. *Speedometer* ⇨ *115*
4. *Tachometer* ⇨ *116*

Reconfigurable Instrument Cluster

If equipped with a diesel engine, refer to the Duramax Diesel Supplement.

The cluster display layout can be changed.

There are three selectable views:

Gauge : Displays information zones to the left and right of the speedometer.

Map : Displays a navigation map.

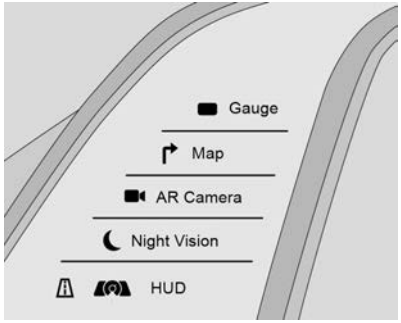
AR Camera : Displays a camera view in front of the vehicle.

Night Vision : Displays the Night Vision camera onto the instrument cluster. See *Night Vision System* ⇨ *323*.

To change the cluster configuration, touch on the touchscreen to the left of the instrument cluster. Select the desired option from the list.

The cluster layout can also be selected using the infotainment display. See *Settings* ⇨ *204*.

Touchscreen Display



There is a touchscreen to the left of the instrument cluster. Use it for the following:

Trip Information

Touch to view distance and average fuel economy for the current trip. View other trip information by swiping right or left on the touchscreen.

Touch and hold to reset the current trip.

Instrument Cluster Layout

Touch to view and select the available instrument cluster layouts.

Head-Up Display (HUD)

Touch HUD to select the height and brightness of the head-up display.

Augmented Reality Camera (AR)

While navigating touch to start Augmented Reality. This displays route guidance and upcoming turns as graphics on top of the front camera image that appears on the cluster display. If there is no active navigation, then the camera image will display without navigation overlays.

Night Vision

Touch to select the sharpness and brightness of then night vision system.

Speed Information

The following options can be turned on or off using the infotainment display. See *Settings* ⇨ *204*.

Digital Speedometer

The speedometer shows how fast the vehicle is moving in either kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph). The speedometer cannot be reset.

Speed Sign

Shows sign information, which comes from a roadway database in the onboard navigation, if equipped. The sign will show "– –" when there is no detected speed limit or the system is unavailable.

Speed Warning

The overspeeding area within the analog gauge is shown red. In digital speedometer, the digital number is shown red.

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in either kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either kilometers or miles.

Trip Odometer

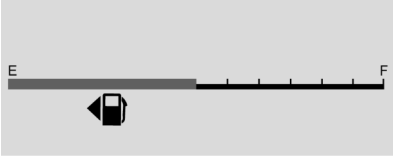
The trip odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *132*.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Fuel Gauge



When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is left in the tank.

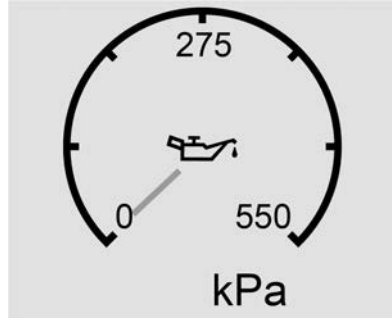
There is an arrow near the fuel gauge pointing to the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

When the indicator nears empty, the low fuel light comes on. There still is a little fuel left, but the vehicle should be refueled soon.

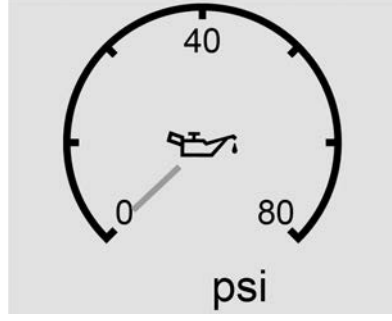
Here are three things that some owners ask about. None of these show a problem with the fuel gauge:

- It takes a little more, or less fuel to fill up than the gauge indicated. For example, the gauge may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more, or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gauge moves a little while turning a corner, speeding up or braking.
- The gauge takes a few seconds to stabilize after the ignition is turned on and goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

Engine Oil Pressure Gauge



Metric



English

The engine oil pressure gauge shows the engine oil pressure in kPa (kilopascals) or psi (pounds per square inch) when the engine is running.

This gauge displays on the infotainment display. If show in cluster is selected a digital value is shown on the instrument cluster in zone 2.

Oil pressure can vary with engine speed, outside temperature, coolant temperature, and oil viscosity.

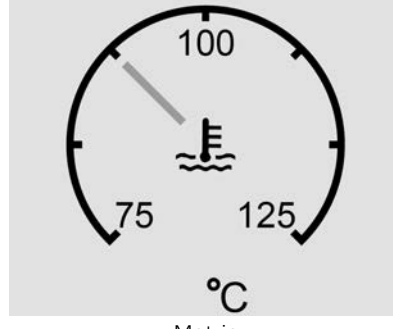
On some models, the oil pump will vary engine oil pressure according to engine needs. Oil pressure may change quickly as the engine speed or load varies. This is normal. If the oil pressure warning light or Driver Information Center (DIC) message indicates oil pressure outside the normal operating range, check the vehicle's oil as soon as possible.

See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *372*.

Caution

Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



Metric

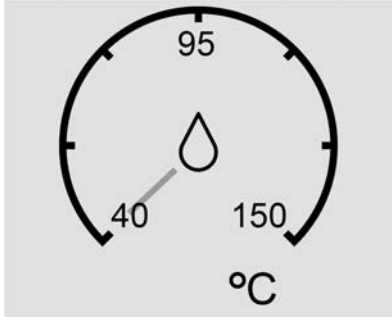
English

The engine coolant temperature gauge measures the temperature of the vehicle's engine.

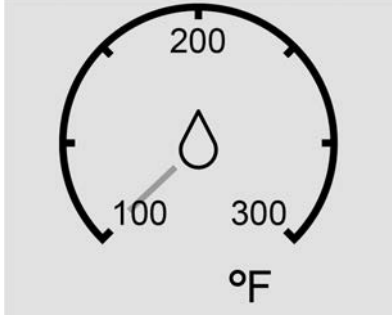
This gauge displays on the infotainment display. If show in cluster is selected a digital value is shown on the instrument cluster in zone 2.

While driving under normal operating conditions, if the needle moves into the red area, the engine is too hot. Pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

Transmission Temperature Gauge



Metric



English

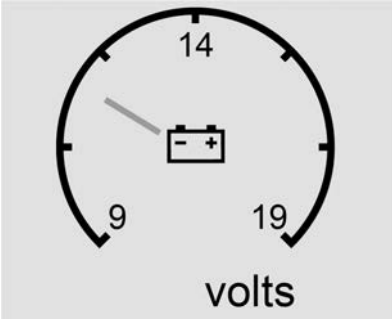
The transmission temperature gauge shows the transmission fluid temperature. If the gauge is reading in the red area and/or a message appears in the Driver Information Center (DIC), the vehicle must be stopped and the cause checked. One possible cause is a low fluid level in the transmission.

This gauge displays on the infotainment display. If show in cluster is selected a digital value is shown on the instrument cluster in zone 2.

Caution

Do not drive the vehicle while the transmission fluid is overheating, or the transmission can be damaged. This could lead to costly repairs that would not be covered by the warranty.

Voltmeter Gauge



When the ignition is on, the voltmeter gauge indicates the battery voltage.

This gauge displays on the infotainment display. If show in cluster is selected a digital value is shown on the instrument cluster in zone 2.

When the engine is running, this gauge shows the condition of the charging system. The gauge can transition from a higher to lower or a lower to higher reading. This is normal. If the vehicle is operating outside the normal operating range, the charging system light comes on. See *Charging System Light* ⇨ *122*. The voltmeter gauge may also read lower when in fuel economy mode. This is normal.

Readings outside the normal operating range can also occur when a large number of electrical accessories are operating in the vehicle and the engine is left idling for an extended period. This condition is normal since the charging system is not able to provide full power at engine idle. As engine speeds are increased, this condition should correct itself as higher engine speeds allow the charging system to create maximum power.

The vehicle can only be driven for a short time with the readings outside the normal operating range. If the vehicle must be driven, turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Readings outside the normal operating range indicate a possible problem in the electrical system. Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Seat Belt Reminders

Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver seat belt reminder light on the center stack, below the infotainment screen.

When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the driver to fasten their seat belt.

Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver seat belt is buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

Front Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light

The vehicle may have a front passenger seat belt reminder light near the passenger airbag status indicator. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *71*.

When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind passengers to fasten their seat belt.

Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle continues several times if the front passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the front passenger seat belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt reminder light and chime may come on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the reminder light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Second and Third Row Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light

The vehicle may have second and third row passenger seat belt reminder lights.

When the vehicle is started, these lights come on solid to remind rear passengers to fasten their seat belt. Then each light may stay on solid or flash, and a chime may come on if the rear passenger remains unbuckled, or becomes unbuckled, when the vehicle is moving. An X indicates the seat belt is not buckled. A check mark indicates the seat belt is buckled.

If the all rear passenger seat belts are buckled, neither the chime nor the lights come on.

For information on the front seat belt reminder lights, see "Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light" and "Front Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light" listed previously.

The rear passenger seat belt reminder light and chime may come on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the reminder light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. It is located on the center stack, below the infotainment screen. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), the passenger sensing system, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash

sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System* ⇨ *65*.

The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message may also come on.

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *71* for important safety information. The overhead console has a passenger airbag status indicator.

United States and Canada

When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, and the symbols for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, and the symbol for on or off, to let you know the status of the front outboard passenger frontal airbag.

If the word ON, and the on symbol, are lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the front outboard passenger frontal airbag is allowed to inflate.

If the word OFF, and the off symbol, are lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, if there are no lights at all, or if the airbag readiness light is on, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service right away.

⚠ Warning

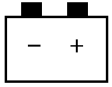
If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120* for more information, including important safety information.

Charging System Light



The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. It should go out when the engine is started.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

When this light comes on, or is flashing, the Driver Information Center (DIC) also displays a message.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner. Find a safe place to stop the vehicle.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)

If equipped with a diesel engine, see the Duramax Diesel Supplement.

This light is part of the vehicle's emission control on-board diagnostic system. It is located on the center stack, below the infotainment screen. If this light is on while the engine is running, a malfunction has been detected and the vehicle may require service. The light should come on to show that it is working when the ignition is in Service Mode. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *245*.

Malfunctions are often indicated by the system before any problem is noticeable. Being aware of the light and seeking service promptly when it comes on may prevent damage.

Caution

If the vehicle is driven continually with this light on, the emission control system may not work as well, the fuel economy may be lower, and the vehicle may not run smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

Modifications to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system, or the use of replacement tires that do not meet

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

the original tire specifications, can cause this light to come on. This could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also affect the vehicle's ability to pass an Emissions Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *368*.

If the light is flashing : A malfunction has been detected that could damage the emission control system and increase vehicle emissions. Diagnosis and service may be required.

To help prevent damage, reduce vehicle speed and avoid hard accelerations and uphill grades. If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as possible.

If the light continues to flash, find a safe place to park. Turn the vehicle off and wait at least 10 seconds before restarting the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous guidelines and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

If the light is on steady : A malfunction has been detected. Diagnosis and service may be required.

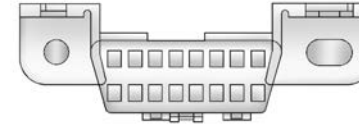
Check the following:

- If fuel has been added to the vehicle using the capless fuel funnel adapter, make sure that it has been removed. See "Filling the Tank with a Portable Gas Can" under *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *332*. The diagnostic system can detect if the adapter has been left installed in the vehicle, allowing fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the adapter removed may turn off the light.
- Poor fuel quality can cause inefficient engine operation and poor driveability, which may go away once the engine is warmed up. If this occurs, change the fuel brand. It may require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off. See *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *331*.

If the light remains on, see your dealer.

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

If the vehicle requires an Emissions Inspection/Maintenance test, the test equipment will likely connect to the vehicle's Data Link Connector (DLC).



The DLC is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. Connecting devices that are not used to perform an Emissions Inspection/ Maintenance test or to service the vehicle may affect vehicle operation. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *365*. See your dealer if assistance is needed.

The vehicle may not pass inspection if:

- The light is on when the engine is running.

- The light does not come on when the ignition is in Service Mode.
- Critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed. If this happens, the vehicle would not be ready for inspection and might require several days of routine driving before the system is ready for inspection. This can happen if the 12-volt battery has recently been replaced or run down, or if the vehicle has been recently serviced.

See your dealer if the vehicle will not pass or cannot be made ready for the test.

Brake System Warning Light

Metric

BRAKE

English

This light should come on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. It is located on the center stack, below the infotainment screen. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light comes on and stays on at start up, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.

If the light comes on while driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. The brake system has electric brake boost. Vehicle speed may be limited when the brake system warning light comes on. The brake pedal might be harder to push, or the brake pedal may go closer to the floor. It could take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *437*.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Electric Parking Brake Light

Metric

PARK

English

This light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system. A message may also display in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

Service Electric Parking Brake Light

This light should come on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. If it does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light stays on or comes on while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). Take the vehicle to a dealer as soon as possible. In addition to the parking brake, other safety functions that utilize the EPB may also be degraded. A message may also display in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *261*.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

This warning light should come on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. It is located on the center stack, below the infotainment screen. If the light does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

Engagement of the 4WD front axle lock will disable ABS and illuminate the ABS warning light. The ABS warning light will turn off when the front axle lock is disengaged.

If the light comes on while driving, safely stop as soon as it is possible and turn off the vehicle. Then turn on the vehicle again to reset the system.

If the ABS warning light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. A chime may also sound when the light stays on.

If the ABS warning light is the only light on, the vehicle has regular brakes, but ABS is not functioning.

If both the ABS warning light and the brake system warning light are on, ABS is not functioning and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See your dealer for service.

See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *124*.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Light

This light comes on when AVH is actively holding the vehicle. See *Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)* ⇨ *263*.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light

After the vehicle is started, this light turns off and stays off if LKA has not been turned on or is unavailable.

If available, this light is white if LKA is turned on but not ready to assist. This light is green if LKA is turned on and ready to assist.

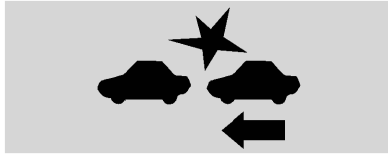
LKA may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking. The LKA light is amber when assisting.

This light flashes amber as a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, to indicate that the lane marking has been unintentionally crossed.

LKA will not assist or alert if the turn signal is active in the direction of the lane departure, or if LKA detects that you are accelerating, braking, or actively steering.

See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *329*.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) Disabled Light



This indicator will display when Automatic Emergency Braking or Front Pedestrian Braking has been turned off or is currently unavailable due to malfunction.

See *Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)* ⇨ *320*.

See *Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System* ⇨ *322*.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator

If equipped, this indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected ahead and amber when you are following a vehicle ahead much too closely.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *318*.

Pedestrian Ahead Indicator

If equipped, this indicator will display amber when a nearby pedestrian is detected in front of the vehicle.

See *Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System* ⇨ *322*.

Traction Off Light

This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

The traction off light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off. If StabiliTrak/ Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is turned off, TCS is also turned off. To turn TCS and ESC off and on, see *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *264*.

If TCS is off, wheel spin is not limited unless necessary to help protect the driveline from damage. Adjust driving accordingly.

StabiliTrak OFF Light

This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. It is located on the center stack, below the infotainment screen. If the light does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

This light comes on when the StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is turned off.
If StabiliTrak/ESC is off, the Traction Control System (TCS) is also off. To turn ESC off and on, see *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *264*.

If ESC and TCS are off, the systems do not assist in controlling the vehicle. Adjust driving accordingly.

Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak Light

This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. It is located on the center stack, below the infotainment screen.

If the light does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light is on and not flashing, the TCS and potentially the StabiliTrak/ ESC system are not fully operational and may not assist in maintaining control. Adjust driving accordingly. If the condition persists, see your dealer as soon as possible. A Driver Information Center (DIC) message may display.

The light flashes when the TCS and/or the StabiliTrak/ESC system is actively working.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *264*.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light goes off.

Caution

The engine coolant temperature warning light indicates that the vehicle has overheated. Driving with this light on can damage the engine and it may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *380*.

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on when the engine has overheated.

If this happens, pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *380*.

Driver Mode Control Light

This light comes on when Sport Mode is selected.

This light comes on when Snow Mode is selected.

This light comes on when Terrain Mode is selected.

This light comes on when Off-Road Mode is selected.

This light comes on when the Tow/ Haul Mode is selected.

This light comes on when My Mode is selected. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *266*.

Four Corner Air Suspension Light

This light comes on when the air suspension is raised to maximum ground clearance height.

This light comes on when the air suspension is raised to increased ground clearance height.

This light displays green when the vehicle is changing to a higher ride height.

This light comes on when the air suspension is lowered for easy entry and exit from the vehicle.

This light displays green when the vehicle is changing to a lower ride height.

This light comes on when the air suspension is in Service Mode or Alignment Mode.

See *Four Corner Air Suspension System* ⇨ *269*.

Tire Pressure Light

For vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It is located on the center stack, below the infotainment screen. It provides information about tire pressures and the TPMS.

When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires are significantly underinflated.

A Driver Information Center (DIC) tire pressure message may also display. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406*.

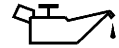
When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *410*.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

Caution

Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.



This light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light

A Low Fuel Warning Light near the fuel gauge comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on as a check to show it is working.

It also comes on when the fuel gauge indicator nears empty. The light turns off when fuel is added. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced.

Security Light

The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See *Immobilizer Operation* ⇨ *30*.

High-Beam On Light

This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use. See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *152*.

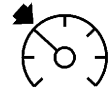
IntelliBeam Light

This light comes on when the IntelliBeam system, if equipped, is enabled. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *150*.

Lamps On Reminder

This light comes on when the exterior lamps are in use, except when only the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) are active. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *150*.

Cruise Control Light



The cruise control light is white when the cruise control is on and ready, and turns green when the cruise control is set and active.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *272*.

Adaptive Cruise Control Light

This light is white when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC, if equipped) is on and ready, and turns green when the ACC is set and active.

Curve Speed Control Light

If equipped, this light may illuminate green when ACC is actively controlling the vehicle speed and detects a sharp curve on the road ahead.

ACC automatically slows the vehicle down while navigating the curve and may increase speed out of the curve, but will not exceed the set speed.

See *Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)* ⇨ *274*.

Super Cruise Light

This light comes on to show the status of Super Cruise. See *Super Cruise* ⇨ *285*.

Door Ajar Light

This light comes on when a door is open or not securely latched. Before driving, check that all doors are properly closed.

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The DIC is displayed in the instrument cluster. It shows the status of many vehicle systems.

DIC information is broken down into three main zones:

Zone 1 : A touchscreen display to left of the instrument cluster.

Zone 2 : Displays on the instrument cluster to the left of the speedometer.

Zone 3 : Displays on the instrument cluster to the right of the speedometer.

∧ or ∨ : Use the thumbwheel to scroll to the previous or next selection.

✓ : Press the thumbwheel to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset certain displays.

DIC Information Display Options

Select which info display to view on the DIC through the Settings menu, or by selecting show in cluster in the Vehicle Information on the infotainment display. See *Settings* ⇨ *204* or *Vehicle Information* ⇨ *135*.

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for more information.

DIC Information Displays

The following is the list of all possible DIC information displays and their locations. Some of the information displays may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Zone 1

Trip 1 or Trip 2 and Average Fuel Economy : The Trip display shows the current distance traveled, in either kilometers (km) or miles (mi), since the trip odometer was last reset. To reset the current trip, touch and hold the touchscreen display when trip odometer is displayed.

The Average Fuel Economy display shows the approximate average liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km (mpg) recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy that the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change. The Average Fuel Economy can be reset along with the trip odometer by touching and holding the touchscreen display when trip odometer is displayed.

Zone 2

Time/Date : Displays current date and time information.

Auto Lane Change : Displays the status of a driver-requested lane change when Super Cruise is active. See *Super Cruise* ⇨ *285*.

Efficiency Gauge : Displays a gauge that is a guide to driving in an efficient manner.

Efficient Driving is shown by a green ball in the center of the gauge. Inefficient driving is shown by a yellow ball above the center of the gauge. Aggressive braking is shown by a yellow ball below the center of the gauge.

Average Speed : Shows the average speed of the vehicle in kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded

since the last reset of this value. The average speed can be reset by touching reset in vehicle information screen.

Timer : This display can be used as a timer. To start the timer, touch Start while this display is active. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To stop the timer, touch Stop briefly while this display is active and the timer is running. To reset the timer to zero, touch and hold Reset while this display is active.

Off Road : Displays vehicle pitch and roll information, road wheel angle, and four-wheel drive (4WD) status.

Battery Voltage : Shows the current battery voltage.

Trailer Brake : On vehicles with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, the trailer brake display appears in the DIC.

TRAILER GAIN shows the trailer gain setting. This setting can be adjusted from 0.0 to 10.0 with either a trailer connected or disconnected.

TRAILER OUTPUT shows the power output to the trailer any time a trailer with electric brakes is connected. Output is displayed as a bar graph. Dotted lines may appear in the OUTPUT display if a trailer is not connected.

Oil Life : Shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. If REMAINING OIL LIFE 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *372*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *452*.

The Oil Life display must be reset after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Do not reset the Oil Life display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset, see *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *374*.

Fuel Economy : Displays information about current and average fuel economy.

Oil Pressure : Shows the engine oil pressure in kPa (kilopascals) or psi (pounds per square inch).

Engine Hours : Shows the total number of hours the engine has run.

Coolant Temperature : Shows the temperature of the coolant in either degrees Celsius (°C) or degrees Fahrenheit (°F).

Transmission Fluid Temperature : Shows the temperature of the automatic transmission fluid in either degrees Celsius (°C) or degrees Fahrenheit (°F).

Air Filter Life : Shows an estimate of the engine air filter's remaining useful life and the state of the system. Engine Air Filter Life 95% means 95% of the current air filter life remains. Messages will display based on the engine air filter life and the state of the system. When the REPLACE AT NEXT OIL CHANGE message displays, the engine air filter should be replaced at the time of the next oil change.

When the REPLACE SOON message displays, the engine air filter should be replaced at the earliest convenience.

The Air Filter Life display must be reset after the engine air filter replacement. To reset, see *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ *376*.

Brake Pad Life : This displays an estimate of the remaining life of the front and rear brake pads. Messages will display based on brake pad wear and the state of the system. Reset the Brake Pad Life display after replacing the brake pads. See *Brake Pad Life System* ⇨ *383*.

Tire Pressure : Shows the approximate pressures of all four tires. Tire pressure is displayed in either kilopascal (kPa) or in pounds per square inch (psi). If the pressure is low, the value for that tire is shown in amber. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *409* and *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *410*.

Off : Allows for no information to be displayed in the cluster info display areas.

Zone 3

Audio Now Playing : Displays the actively playing audio.

Navigation : Displays a variety of navigation information.

Audio and Navigation : Displays both audio and navigation information together.

Off : Allows for no information to be displayed in the cluster info display areas.

Vehicle Information

The following are all possible vehicle information features.

To access the vehicle information menu, press on the Multi Function Controller (MFC) or touch from the list of home page icons displayed on the left side of the infotainment display.

The Vehicle Information App will display 3 cards per page.

The currently displayed page of cards is remembered from the last ignition cycle.

The menu may contain the following cards:

- Notifications
- Oil Life
- Tire Pressure
- Fuel Economy
- Average Speed
- Timer
- Diesel Exhaust Fluid
- Fuel Filter Life
- Off-Road
- Engine Hours
- Battery Voltage
- Oil Pressure
- Trailer Brake
- Coolant Temperature
- Transmission Fluid Temp
- Air Filter Life
- Brake Pad Life
- Traction and Stability
- Time and Date
- Efficiency Gauge

Head-Up Display (HUD)

⚠ Warning

If the HUD image is too bright or too high in your field of view, it may take you more time to see things you need to see when it is dark outside. Be sure to keep the HUD image dim and placed low in your field of view.

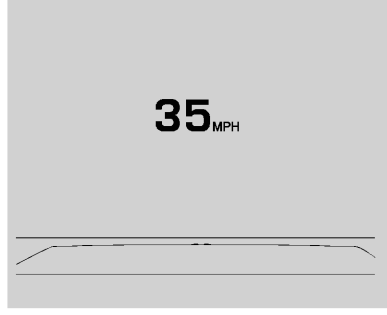
If equipped with HUD, some information about the operation of the vehicle is projected onto the windshield. The image is projected through the HUD lens on top of the instrument panel. The information appears as an image focused out toward the front of the vehicle.

Caution

If you try to use the HUD image as a parking aid, you may misjudge the distance and damage your vehicle. Do not use the HUD image as a parking aid.

The HUD information can be displayed in various languages. The speedometer reading and other numerical values can be displayed in either English or metric units.

The language selection is changed through the radio, and the units of measurement is changed through the instrument cluster. See *Settings* ⇨ *204*.

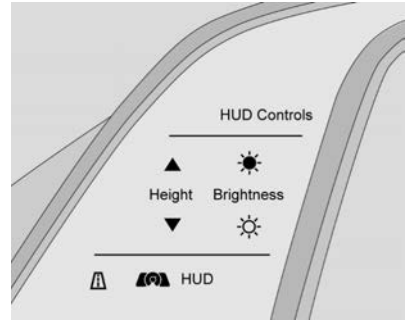


HUD Display on the Windshield

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the HUD may display some of the following vehicle information and vehicle messages or alerts:

- Speed
- Audio
- Phone
- Navigation
- Driver Assistance Features
- Vehicle Messages

Some vehicle messages or alerts displayed in the HUD may be cleared by using the steering wheel controls.



The HUD control is on a touchscreen to the left of the instrument cluster. HUD controls are also available on the infotainment screen. See *Settings* ⇨ *204*.

To adjust the HUD image:

1. Adjust the driver seat.
2. Start the engine.

3. Touch HUD on the touchscreen to the left of the instrument cluster.
4. Touch the icons above and below Height and Brightness to adjust the HUD.

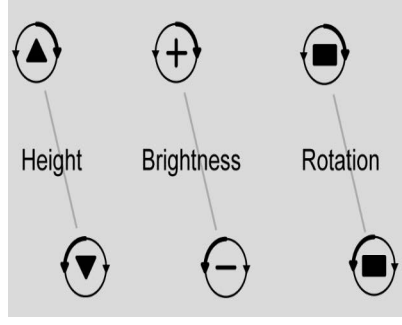
The HUD image will automatically dim and brighten to compensate for outside lighting. Adjust as needed.

The HUD image can temporarily light up depending on the angle and position of sunlight on the HUD display. This is normal.

Polarized sunglasses could make the HUD image harder to see.

Head-Up Display (HUD) Rotation Option

If equipped, this feature under the HUD Options menu of the infotainment screen allows for adjusting the angle of the HUD image. See *Settings* ⇨ *204*.

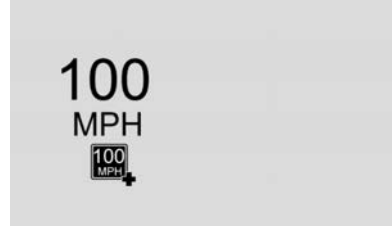


HUD Rotation: Press the icons above and below Rotation to adjust the angle of the HUD display. This feature may only be available in P (Park).

Speed Limit Style Adjustment

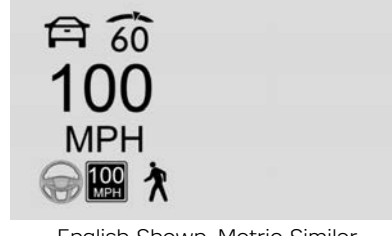
If equipped, the speed limit style can be changed to a speed limit bar or speed limit sign from the Options menu in the instrument cluster. Press the thumbwheel while Speed Limit Style is highlighted to change the speed sign style or to turn it off.

HUD Views



English Shown, Metric Similar

Speed View : This displays the speedometer reading in English or metric units, and speed limit. Some information only appears on vehicles that have these features, and when they are active.



English Shown, Metric Similar

Active Safety View : This displays the speed view along with a driver assistance graphic on the left. Driver assistance graphics show your vehicle, vehicle ahead, gap setting, and lane status information. In addition to driver assistance graphics, pedestrian advisory and trailer sway indicators will be displayed.

English Shown, Metric Similar

Navigation View : This displays the speed view along with indicators for vehicle ahead, Lane Departure Warning/Lane Keep Assist, trailer sway, and pedestrian advisory. Turn-by-turn navigation information is shown during active route. The compass heading is displayed when navigation routing is not active.

Navigation turn-by-turn Alerts shown in the instrument cluster may also be displayed in any HUD view.

Care of the HUD

Clean the inside of the windshield to remove any dirt or film that could reduce the sharpness or clarity of the HUD image.

Clean the HUD lens with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently, then dry it.

HUD Troubleshooting

Check that:

- Nothing is covering the HUD lens.
- The HUD brightness setting is not too dim or too bright.
- The HUD is adjusted to the proper height.
- Polarized sunglasses are not worn.
- The windshield and HUD lens are clean.

If the HUD image is not correct, contact your dealer.

The windshield is part of the HUD system. See *Windshield Replacement* ⇨ *388*.

Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the DIC indicate the status of the vehicle or some action that may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may appear one after another.

The messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing the thumbwheel. The messages that require immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed.

All messages should be taken seriously; clearing the message does not correct the problem.

If a SERVICE message appears, see your dealer.

Follow the instructions given in the messages. The system displays messages regarding the following topics:

- Service Messages
- Fluid Levels
- Vehicle Security
- Brakes
- Ride Control Systems

- Driver Assistance Systems
- Cruise Control
- Lighting and Bulb Replacement
- Wiper/Washer Systems
- Doors and Windows
- Seat Belts
- Airbag Systems
- Engine and Transmission
- Tire Pressure
- Battery

Engine Power Messages

REDUCED ACCELERATION DRIVE WITH CARE

This message displays when the vehicle's propulsion power is reduced. A reduction in propulsion power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no observed reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. Under certain conditions the performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, or displays repeatedly, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Under certain operating conditions, propulsion will be disabled. Try restarting after the ignition has been off for two minutes.

Vehicle Speed Messages

SPEED LIMITED TO XXX KM/H (MPH)

This message shows that the vehicle speed has been limited to the speed displayed. The limited speed is a protection for various propulsion and vehicle systems, such as lubrication, thermal, brakes, suspension, Teen Driver if equipped, or tires.

(If equipped with a diesel engine, see the Duramax Diesel supplement.) – For Diesel

Vehicle Personalization

The following are all possible vehicle personalization features. Depending on the vehicle, some may not be available.

For System and Search functions, see *Settings ⇨ 204*.

To access the vehicle personalization menu:

1. Touch the Settings icon on the Home Page of the infotainment display.
2. Touch Vehicle to display a list of available options.
3. Touch to select the desired feature setting.
4. Touch the options on the infotainment display to disable or enable a setting.

The menu may contain the following:

Valet Mode

This will lock the infotainment system and steering wheel controls. It may also limit access to vehicle storage locations, if equipped.

To enable valet mode:

1. Enter a four-digit code on the keypad.
2. Select Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
3. Re-enter the four-digit code.

Touch Lock or Unlock to lock or unlock the system. Touch Back to go back to the previous menu.

Teen Driver

See *Teen Driver* ⇨ *208*.

Rear Seat Reminder

This allows for a chime and a message when the rear door has been opened before or during operation of the vehicle.

Touch Off or On.

Buckle to Drive

This feature can prevent shifting out of Park when the driver, and if applicable the front passenger, seat belt is not buckled. See *Buckle To Drive* ⇨ *58*.

Touch Off or On.

The vehicle may need to be restarted to activate this feature.

Super Cruise Lane Change

When on, the vehicle can change lanes while Super Cruise is active. The vehicle will only steer to change lanes when traffic allows .

Touch Off, Turn Signal Activated, or Automatic.

Driver Mode Customization

Touch and the following may display:

My Mode

- Engine Sound
- Steering
- Suspension

For information on the range of settings, see “Driver Mode Customization” in *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *266*.

Visualization

This setting shows handling and performance settings on the infotainment display when changing drive modes.

Touch Off or On.

Climate

Touch and the following may display:

- Auto Fan Speed
- Auto Cooled Seats
- Auto Heated Seats
- Rear Climate On Startup
- Auto Defog
- Auto Rear Defog
- Auto Air Distribution

Auto Fan Speed

This setting controls the amount of airflow when the climate control is set to Auto.

Touch Low, Medium, or High.

Auto Cooled Seats

This feature will automatically turn on seat cooling at vehicle start up when the cabin temperature is significantly warmer than desired. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *47*.

Touch Off or On.

Auto Heated Seats

This feature will automatically turn on seat heating at vehicle start up when the cabin temperature is significantly cooler than desired. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *47*.

If equipped with Auto Heated Steering Wheel, this feature will turn on when the Auto Heated Seats turn on.

Touch Off or On.

Rear Climate on Startup

This setting controls the rear climate system behavior at vehicle startup. Mimic Front will sync the rear settings with the front driver climate settings.

Touch Off or Mimic Front.

Auto Defog

This setting automatically directs air to the windshield to assist in defogging, based on temperature and humidity conditions.

Touch Off or On.

Auto Rear Defog

This setting automatically turns on the rear window defogger on based on temperature and humidity conditions.

Touch Off or On.

Auto Air Distribution

This setting controls the way air flows in the vehicle when using Auto Climate Control.

Touch Direct Airflow, Normal Airflow, or Diffuse Airflow.

Collision/Detection Systems

Touch and the following may display:

- Alert Type
- Forward Collision System
- Front Pedestrian Detection
- Intersection Stop Alert
- Adaptive Cruise Go Notifier
- Lane Change Alert
- Seat Belt Tightening
- Park Assist
- Park Assist Towbar
- Rear Camera Park Assist Symbols
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert
- Super Cruise Lane Change
- Rear Pedestrian Detection

Alert Type

This feature sets the type of alert from the driver assistance systems to help avoid crashes.

Touch Beeps or Safety Alert Seat.

Forward Collision System

This setting can alert of a potential crash with a detected vehicle ahead and can apply brakes to help reduce a collision's severity.

Touch Off, Alert, or Alert and Brake.

Front Pedestrian Detection

This feature may help avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes with nearby pedestrians. See *Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System* ⇨ *322*.

Touch Off, Alert, or Alert and Brake.

Intersection Stop Alert

This feature alerts the driver when the vehicle is about to go through a red light or when the vehicle enters an intersection and detects a potential crash with a vehicle crossing ahead.

Touch Off or Alert.

Adaptive Cruise Go Notifier

This setting determines if an alert will appear when Adaptive Cruise Control brings the vehicle to a complete stop and the vehicle ahead of you starts moving again. See *Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)* ⇨ *274*.

Touch Off or On.

Lane Change Alert

This setting specifies if an alert will display on the outside mirror to help you avoid crashing into a vehicle in

your blind spot, or rapidly approaching your blind spot, during a lane change maneuver. See *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *326*.

Touch Off or On.

Seat Belt Tightening

This setting automatically adjusts your seat belts to a snug fit when buckled. The seat belts tighten when you first buckle up and during rough driving or road conditions.

Touch Off or On.

Park Assist

This allows the feature to be turned on or off. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *302*.

Touch Off, On, or Alert and Brake.

Park Assist Towbar

This setting specifies if Park Assist will work properly when a small item, such as a hitch ball, is attached to the vehicle hitch.

Touch Off - Not Attached or On - Attached .

Rear Camera Park Assist Symbols

This setting enables the Rear Camera Park Assist Symbols. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *302*.

Touch Off or On.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert

This allows the Rear Cross Traffic Alert feature to be turned on or off. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *302*.

Touch Off or On.

Rear Pedestrian Detection

This setting specifies if alerts will display when the vehicle detects pedestrians behind when in R (Reverse). See *Rear Pedestrian Alert* ⇨ *317*.

Touch Off, Alert, or Alert and Brake.

Comfort and Convenience

Touch and the following may display:

- Chime Volume
- Power Liftgate
- Hands Free Liftgate/Trunk Control
- Reverse Tilt Mirror
- Remote Mirror Folding
- Rain Sense Wipers
- Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear
- Extended Hill Start Assist

Chime Volume

This sets the chime volume level.

Touch the controls on the infotainment display to adjust the volume.

Power Liftgate

This allows the driver to decide what happens when pressing the Power Liftgate switch. .

Touch Open Fully, Open to Custom Height, or Off.

Hands Free Liftgate/Trunk Control

This allows the liftgate to be operated hands free. See *Liftgate* ⇨ *19*.

Touch Off, Open and Close, or Open Only.

Reverse Tilt Mirror

When on, the driver, passenger, or both driver and passenger outside mirrors will tilt downward when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse) to improve visibility of the ground near

the rear wheels. They may move from their tilted position when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse) or turned off. See *Reverse Tilt Mirrors* ⇨ *33*.

Touch Off, On - Driver and Passenger, On - Driver, or On - Passenger.

Remote Mirror Folding

This allows the outside mirrors to be folded in when the remote key 🔒 button is pressed and held. Pressing 🔓 unfolds the mirrors. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ *31*.

Touch Off or On.

Rain Sense Wipers

This setting automatically turns on the windshield wipers when moisture is detected and the wiper switch is in intermittent mode.

Touch Disabled or Enabled.

Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear

This setting automatically turns on the rear window wiper when the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse) and moisture is detected.

Touch Off or On.

Extended Hill Start Assist

This setting prevents the vehicle from rolling backward on a steep hill if the brake pedal is not depressed.

Touch Extended Hold or Standard Hold.

Lighting

Touch and the following may display:

- Ambient Lighting
- Vehicle Locator Lights
- Exit Lighting
- Left or Right Hand Traffic
- Advanced Forward Lighting
- Daytime Tail Lights
- Automatic High Beam Assist
- Surround View Lighting

Ambient Lighting

This setting provides the ability to customize the color and intensity of the interior accent lighting.

Touch Off or On.

Vehicle Locator Lights

This setting briefly turns on the exterior lights when 🔓 is pressed on the remote key.

Touch Off or On.

Exit Lighting

This setting specifies how long the headlamps stay on after the vehicle is turned off and exited.

Touch Off, 30 Seconds, 60 Seconds, or 120 Seconds.

Left or Right Hand Traffic

This setting specifies the behavior of the Advanced Forward Lighting system based on which side of the road the vehicle drives on.

Touch Left Hand Traffic or Right Hand Traffic.

Advanced Forward Lighting

This setting automatically adjusts headlights at corners and curves to provide greater road illumination.

Touch Off, Curve Lighting, or Intelligent Low Beam Lighting.

Daytime Tail Lights

This setting turns on the tail lights during daytime driving to improve the visibility of the vehicle to other drivers.

Touch Off or On.

Automatic High Beam Assist

This setting specifies how the high beams adjust based on vehicle environment .

Touch IntelliBeam or Adaptive Headlight System .

Surround View Lighting

This setting turns on vehicle side lights to improve image quality when using the Surround View camera system.

Touch Off or On.

Power Door Locks

Touch and the following may display:

- Auto Door Unlock
- Delayed Door Lock

Auto Door Unlock

This setting allows selection of which doors will automatically unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

Touch Off, All Doors, or Driver Door.

Delayed Door Lock

This setting will lock the vehicle a short time after all the doors are closed.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Lock, Unlock, and Start

Touch and the following may display:

- Remote Unlock Light Feedback
- Remote Lock Feedback
- Remote Door Unlock
- Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors
- Remote Start Auto Cool Seats
- Remote Start Auto Heat Seats
- Remote Window Operation
- Passive Door Unlock
- Passive Door Lock
- Remote Left in Vehicle Alert
- Remote Removed From Vehicle Alert

Remote Unlock Light Feedback

This setting will flash the exterior lamps when unlocking the vehicle with the remote key.

Touch Off or Flash Lights.

Remote Lock Feedback

This setting provides what type of feedback is given when locking the vehicle with the remote key.

Touch Off, Lights and Horn, Lights Only, or Horn Only.

Remote Door Unlock

This setting allows selection of which doors will unlock when pressing 🔓 on the remote key.

Touch All Doors or Driver Door.

Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors

This setting secures the vehicle if doors are not opened within 30 seconds of using the remote key to unlock doors.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Start Auto Cool Seats

This setting will automatically turn on the cooled seats when using remote start on warm days. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *47* and *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *13*.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Start Auto Heat Seats

This setting will automatically turn on the heated seats when using remote start on cold days. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *47* and *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *13*.

If equipped with Auto Heated Steering Wheel, this feature will turn on when the Remote Start Auto Heated Seats turn on.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Window Operation

This setting enables remote operation of the windows with the remote key. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.

Touch Off or On.

Passive Door Unlock

This setting specifies which doors will unlock when using the button on the driver door handle to unlock the vehicle.

Touch Off, All Doors, or Driver Door Only.

Passive Door Lock

This setting specifies if the vehicle will automatically lock or lock and provide an alert after all the doors are closed while walking away from the vehicle with the remote key. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.

Touch Off, On with Horn Chirp, or On.

Remote Left in Vehicle Alert

This setting sounds an alert when the remote key is left in the vehicle that is not running.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Removed From Vehicle Alert

This setting beeps the horn three times if exiting a running vehicle with the remote key.

Touch Off or On.

Ride Height

Touch and the following may display:

- Automatic Entry/Egress

Automatic Entry/Egress

This feature specifies if the vehicle will automatically lower to make it easier to enter or exit the vehicle.

Touch Off or On.

Running Boards

Touch and the following may display:

- Automatic Running Boards
- Deploy Running Boards

Automatic Running Boards

This feature specifies the position and use of the running boards.

Touch Off or On.

Deploy Running Boards

This feature moves the running boards to a deployed position so they can be used with the doors closed.

Touch Off or Deploy.

Seating Position

Touch and the following may display:

- Seat Entry Memory
- Seat Exit Memory

Seat Entry Memory

This feature automatically recalls the previously stored 1 or 2 button positions when the ignition is changed from off to on or ACC/ACCESSORY. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *45*.

Touch Off or On.

Seat Exit Memory

This feature automatically recalls the previously stored exit button position when the ignition is changed from on or ACC/ACCESSORY to off and the driver door is open. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *45*.

Touch Off or On.

Suspension

Touch and the following may display:

- Service Mode
- Alignment Mode

Service Mode

This feature disables the air suspension system and is used to prevent unintended raising or lowering of the suspension.

Touch Off or On.

Alignment Mode

This feature will optimize the vehicle height to provide the most accurate wheel alignment.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Key Relearn

This sets up a new or forgotten key for use in the vehicle. Place the key in the transmitter pocket. Make sure vehicle is parked and touch Start.

Universal Remote System

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *476*.

Universal Remote System Programming

If equipped, these buttons are in the overhead console.

This system can replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices. These instructions refer to a garage door opener, but can be used for other devices.

Do not use the Universal Remote system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and

reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Keep the original hand-held transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future programming. Erase the programming when vehicle ownership is terminated. See “Erasing Universal Remote System Buttons” later in this section.

To program a garage door opener, park outside directly in line with and facing the garage door opener receiver. Clear all people and objects near the garage door.

Make sure the hand-held transmitter has a new battery for quick and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

Programming the Universal Remote System

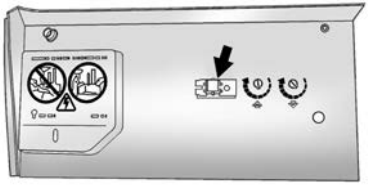
The Universal Remote system is compatible with radio-frequency devices operating between 433-434 MHz.

Programming involves time-sensitive actions and may time out, requiring the procedure to be repeated. Read these instructions completely before programming the Universal Remote system. It may help to have another person assist with the programming process.

1. Hold the end of the hand-held transmitter about 3 to 8 cm (1 to 3 in) away from the Universal Remote system buttons with the indicator light in view. The hand-held transmitter was supplied by the manufacturer of the garage door opener receiver.
2. Press and release one of the three Universal Remote system buttons to be programmed. Press and hold the hand-held transmitter button. Do not release the hand-held transmitter button until the indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash or continuous light. Then release the hand-held transmitter button.

   Some garage door openers may require substitution of Step 2 with the procedure under “Radio Signals for Some Gate Operators” later in this section.
3. Press and hold the newly programmed Universal Remote system button for five seconds while watching the indicator light and garage door activation.
   - If the indicator light stays on continuously or the garage door moves when the button is pressed, then programming is complete. There is no need to complete Steps 4–6.
   - If the indicator light does not come on or the garage door does not move, a second button press may be required. For a second time, press and hold the newly programmed button for five seconds. If the indicator light stays on continuously or the garage door moves when the button is pressed, then programming is complete. There is no need to complete Steps 4–6.

- If the garage door does not move, continue with programming Steps 4–6.



Learn or Smart Button

4. After completing Steps 1–3, locate the Learn or Smart button inside garage on the garage door opener receiver. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.
5. Press and release the Learn or Smart button. Step 6 must be completed within 30 seconds of pressing this button.
6. Return to the vehicle and firmly press and hold the trained Universal Remote system button for two seconds and release. Repeat the “press/hold/release” sequence up to three times to complete the training process.

The Universal Remote system should now activate the garage door. Repeat the process for programming the remaining two buttons.

For questions or programming help, see www.homelink.com/gm or call 1-800-355-3515. For calls placed outside the U.S., Canada, or Puerto Rico, international rates will apply and may differ based on landline or mobile phone.

Radio Signals for Some Gate Operators

Some gate operators and radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time out or quit after several seconds of transmission. This may not be long enough for the Universal Remote system to pick up the signal during programming.

If the programming did not work, replace Step 2 under “Programming the Universal Remote System” with the following:

Press and hold the Universal Remote system button while pressing and releasing the hand-held transmitter button every two seconds until the signal has been successfully accepted by the Universal Remote system. The Universal Remote system indicator light will flash slowly at first and then change to a rapid flash or continuous solid-light. Proceed with Step 3 under “Programming the Universal Remote System” to complete.

Universal Remote System Operation

Using the Universal Remote System

Press and hold the appropriate Universal Remote system button for at least one-half second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

Erasing Universal Remote System Buttons

Erase all programmed buttons when vehicle ownership is terminated.

To erase:

1. Press and hold the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. This should take about 10 seconds.

2. Release both buttons.

Reprogramming a Single Universal Remote System Button

To reprogram any of the system buttons:

1. Press and hold any one of the buttons. Do not release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, proceed with Step 1 under “Programming the Universal Remote System.”

Lighting

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls 150
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder ... 152
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 152
Flash-to-Pass 152
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 153
Automatic Headlamp System ... 153
Headlamp Leveling Control 154
Hazard Warning Flashers 154
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 154
Cornering Lamps 155

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control 155
Interior Lamps 155
Dome Lamps 156
Reading Lamps 156

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting 156
Exit Lighting 157
Battery Load Management 157
Battery Power Protection 157
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 158

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls

The exterior lamp control is on the turn signal lever.

Turn the control to the following positions:

⏻ **:** Turns the exterior lamps off and deactivates the AUTO mode. Turn to ⏻ again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

In Canada, the headlamps will automatically reactivate when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

AUTO : Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

: Turns on the parking lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

: Turns on the headlamps together with the parking lamps and instrument panel lights.

IntelliBeam System

If equipped, this system turns the vehicle's high-beam headlamps on and off according to surrounding traffic conditions.

The system turns the high-beam headlamps on when it is dark enough and there is no other traffic present.

This light comes on in the instrument cluster when the IntelliBeam system is enabled.

Turning On and Enabling IntelliBeam

To enable the IntelliBeam system, press on the turn signal lever when it is dark outside and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO or .

Driving with IntelliBeam

The system only activates the high beams when driving over 40 km/h (25 mph).

The blue high-beam on light appears on the instrument cluster when the high beams are on.

There is a sensor near the top center of the windshield that automatically controls the system. Keep this area of the windshield clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

The high-beam headlamps remain on, under the automatic control, until one of the following situations occurs:

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps.
- The system detects a preceding vehicle's taillamps.
- The outside light is bright enough that high-beam headlamps are not required.
- The vehicle's speed drops below 20 km/h (12 mph).
- The IntelliBeam system is disabled by the button on the turn signal lever. If this happens, press on the turn signal lever when the exterior lamp control is in the AUTO or position to reactivate the IntelliBeam system. The instrument cluster light will come on to indicate the IntelliBeam system is reactivated.

The high beams may not turn off automatically if the system cannot detect another vehicle's lamps because of any of the following:

- The other vehicle's lamps are missing, damaged, obstructed from view, or otherwise undetected.
- The other vehicle's lamps are covered with dirt, snow, and/or road spray.
- The other vehicle's lamps cannot be detected due to dense exhaust, smoke, fog, snow, road spray, mist, or other airborne obstructions.
- The vehicle's windshield is dirty, cracked, or obstructed by something that blocks the view of the light sensor.
- The vehicle is loaded such that the front end points upward, causing the light sensor to aim high and not detect headlamps and taillamps.
- The vehicle is being driven on winding or hilly roads.

The automatic high-beam headlamps may need to be disabled if any of the above conditions exist.

Exterior Lamps Off Reminder

If a door is open, a reminder chime sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are manually turned on and the ignition is off. To turn off the chime, turn the exterior lamp control to off or AUTO and then back on, or close and re-open the door. In the AUTO mode, the headlamps turn off once the ignition is off or remain on until the headlamp delay ends (if enabled in the DIC). See “Exit Lighting” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

Push the turn signal lever away from you and release to turn the high beams on.

To return to low beams, push the lever again or pull it toward you and release.

When the high-beam headlamps are on, this indicator light on the instrument cluster will also be on.

Flash-to-Pass

This feature lets you use the high-beam headlamps to signal a driver in front of you that you want to pass. It works even if the headlamps are in the automatic position.

To use it, pull the turn signal lever toward you, then release it.

The high beam headlamps will stay on as long as you hold the lever toward you. The high-beam indicator on the instrument cluster will come on. Release the lever to return to normal operation.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL can make it easier for others to see the front of the vehicle during the day. Fully functional DRL are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system comes on when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO.
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.

When the DRL system is on, only the DRL are on. The taillamps, sidemarker lamps, instrument panel lights, and other lamps will not be on.

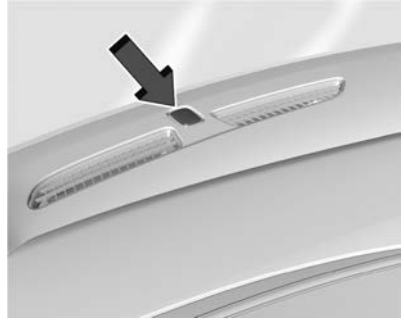
When it begins to get dark, the automatic headlamp system switches from DRL to the headlamps.

To turn off the DRL, turn the exterior lamp control to ⏻ and then release. For vehicles first sold in Canada, off will only work when the vehicle is parked.

Automatic Headlamp System

When it is dark enough outside, the automatic headlamp system turns on the headlamps at the normal brightness, along with the taillamps, sidemarker, parking lamps, and the instrument panel lights. The radio lights will also be dim.

To turn off the automatic headlamp system, turn the exterior lamp control to ⏻ and then release it.



The vehicle has a light sensor on the top of the instrument panel that controls the automatic headlamp system. Do not cover the sensor, otherwise the headlamps may come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage, heavy overcast weather, or a tunnel. This is normal.

There is a delay in the transition between the daytime and nighttime operation of the automatic headlamp system so that driving under bridges or bright overhead street lights does not affect the system. The automatic headlamp system is only affected when the light sensor detects a change in lighting lasting longer than the delay.

If the vehicle is started in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system will come on immediately. Once the vehicle leaves the garage, there is a slight delay for the automatic headlamp system to change if it is bright enough outside. During that delay, the instrument cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness

control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *155*.

To idle the vehicle with the automatic headlamp system off, turn the control to the off position.

The headlamps will also stay on after you exit the vehicle.

The regular headlamp system can be turned on when needed.

Lights On with Wipers

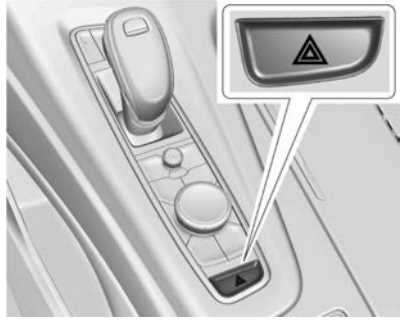
If the windshield wipers are activated in daylight with the engine on, and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO, the headlamps, parking lamps, and other exterior lamps come on. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. When the wipers are not operating, these lamps turn off. Move the exterior lamp control to ⏻ or ≡DC to disable this feature.

Headlamp Leveling Control

Automatic Headlamp Leveling Control

If equipped, the inclination of the headlamps are adjusted automatically based on vehicle load.

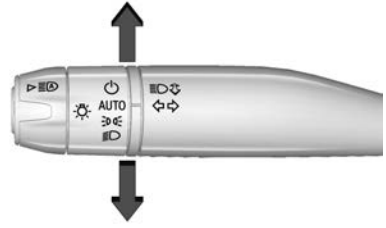
Hazard Warning Flashers



⚠ **:** Press to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press again to turn the flashers off.

When the hazard warning flashers are on, the vehicle's turn signals will not work.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



An arrow on the instrument cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Move the turn signal lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

Raise or lower the lever for less than one second until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. This causes the turn signals to automatically flash three times. It will flash six times if Tow/Haul Mode is active. Holding the turn signal lever for more than one second will cause the turn signals to flash until the lever is released.

The lever returns to its starting position whenever it is released.

If after signaling a turn or a lane change the arrows flash rapidly or do not come on, a signal bulb could be burned out.

Replace any burned out bulbs. If a bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers* ⇨ *391*.

Turn Signal On Chime

If the turn signal is left on for more than 1.2 km (0.75 mi), a chime sounds at each flash of the turn signal. The message TURN SIGNAL ON will also appear in the Driver Information Center (DIC). To turn the chime and message off, move the turn signal lever to the off position.

Cornering Lamps

If equipped with cornering lamps, they automatically come on when all of the following occur:

- The low-beam headlamps are on.
- The turn signals are activated or the steering wheel is at a turning angle.
- The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h (25 mph) .

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

This feature adjusts the brightness of all illuminated controls.

The display brightness automatically adjusts based on outdoor lighting.

: Move the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the lights.

The thumbwheel is functional at night, or when the headlamps or parking lamps are on.

Interior Lamps

Interior Ambient Lighting

If equipped, this feature allows the color of the interior lighting in the vehicle to be chosen.

To access, press on the infotainment controls, then touch AMBIENT LIGHTING to display the settings screen.

Touch to select from the following:

OFF : Turns the feature off.

ON : Turns the feature on. Ambient lighting provides the ability to customize the color and intensity of the interior accent lighting. Chose the color on the display screen to make change to interior lighting color.

DEMO MODE : When the shift lever is in P (Park), touch to turn the feature on in colors chosen by the vehicle. When the shift lever is not in P (Park) , the interior color will default to the last active color selected.

LINK TO DRIVE MODE : The light color is matched to the color being used for the drive mode.

Dome Lamps

There are dome lamps in the overhead console and the headliner.

To change the dome lamp settings, press the following:

OFF : Press to turn off the dome lamps when any door is opened, on the RKE tansmitter is pressed, or when the ignition is switched off. An indicator light on the button will turn on when the dome lamp override is activated. Press OFF again to deactivate this feature and the indicator light will turn off. The dome lamps will come on when any door is opened, on the RKE transmitter is pressed, or when the ignition is switched off.

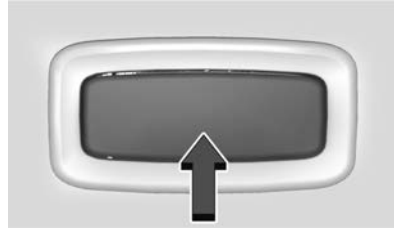
Press and hold any of the overhead console lens to turn all dome lamps on or off manually.

Reading Lamps

There are reading lamps in the overhead console and the headliner, if equipped.

These lamps come on automatically when any door is opened, on the RKE transmitter is pressed, or when the ignition is switched off.

To operate, the ignition must be on or in ACC/ACCESSORY or using Retained Accessory Power (RAP).



Press the lens on each reading lamp to turn it on and off.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

The interior lamps turn on when pressing on the remote key or opening any doors, and the dome lamp control is in the DOOR position.

Some exterior lamps also turn on when pressing on the remote key or opening any doors. Low-Beam lamps will only turn on briefly at night, or in areas with limited lighting.

All lamps will gradually fade out after about 30 seconds.

Entry lighting can be disabled manually by closing all doors, pressing 🔒 on the remote key, or starting the vehicle.

This feature can be changed. See “Vehicle Locator Lights” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Exit Lighting

Some exterior lamps and interior lamps turn on when the driver door is opened after the ignition is turned off.

The interior lights turn on when the ignition is turned off.

The exterior and interior lamps remain on for a set amount of time, then automatically turn off.

The exterior lamps turn off immediately by turning the exterior lamp control off.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Battery Load Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM), which estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly bring the charge back up. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. The voltmeter gauge or the voltage display on the Driver Information Center (DIC), if equipped, may show the voltage moving up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all the power that is needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following are on, such as: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power, whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a DIC message might be displayed and it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible.

Battery Power Protection

This feature helps prevent the battery from being drained, if the interior courtesy lamps or reading lamps are accidentally left on. If any of these lamps are left on, they automatically turn off after 10 minutes, if the

ignition is off. The lamps will not come back on again until one of the following occurs:

- The ignition is turned on.
- The doors are closed and then re-opened.

Exterior Lighting Battery Saver

The exterior lamps turn off about 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off, if the parking lamps or headlamps have been manually left on. This protects against draining the battery. To restart the 10-minute timer, turn the exterior lamp control to the ⏻ position and then back to the 🌡00 or 🌡D position.

To keep the lamps on for more than 10 minutes, the ignition must be on or in ACC/ACCESSORY.

Infotainment System

Introduction
Introduction 159
Overview 160
Steering Wheel Controls 161
Using the System 162
Software Updates 165

Radio
AM-FM Radio 165
HD Radio Technology 167
Radio Data System (RDS) 168
Satellite Radio 168
Radio Reception 169
Multi-Band Antenna 170

Audio Players
Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices 170
USB Port 170
Bluetooth Audio 173

Rear Seat Infotainment
Rear Seat Infotainment (RSI) System 174

Navigation
Using the Navigation System 180
Maps 184
Navigation Symbols 184
Destination 184
Global Positioning System (GPS) 189
Vehicle Positioning 190
Problems with Route Guidance 190
If the System Needs Service 191
Map Data Updates 191
Database Coverage Explanations 191

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition 191

Phone
Bluetooth (Overview) 197
Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone) 198
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 202

Settings
Settings 204
Teen Driver 208

Trademarks and License Agreements
Trademarks and License Agreements 211

Introduction

Read the following pages to become familiar with the features.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some features when driving. These features may gray out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the instrument cluster and steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation, center stack controls, steering wheel controls, and infotainment display.

- Set up the audio by presetting favorite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single control or by using a single voice command.

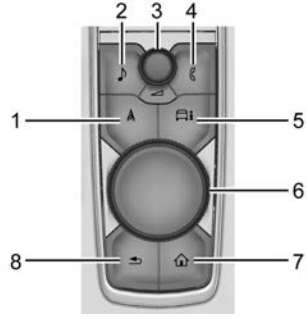
See *Distracted Driving* ⇨ *230*.

Overview

Infotainment System

The infotainment system is controlled by using the infotainment display, controls on the center console, steering wheel controls, and voice recognition.

Infotainment Controls on the Multifunction Controler (MFC)



1. (Navigation)
   - Press to access the navigation screen.
   - Press and hold to access the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto Map View, if connected, regardless of active route guidance.
2. (Radio/Audio)
   - Press to open the active audio source page.
   - Press and hold to access the Apple CarPlay or Android Now Playing View, if connected. If the current audio source is the radio, the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto Now Playing View with the audio source plays the radio.
3. (Power/Volume) Knob
   - Press to turn the power on.
   - Press and hold when the system is on to turn the power off and display the time.
   - Press to mute/unmute the system when on.
   - Turn to decrease or increase the volume.
4. (Phone)
   - Press to access the phone menu.
   - Press and hold to access the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto Phone View, if connected.
5. (Vehicle Information)
   - Press to access the vehicle information.

6. Primary Knob
   - Turn to highlight a feature. Press to activate the highlighted feature.
   - Move right/left or up/down to change the highlighted area on the display screen.
7. (Home Page)
   - Press to access the Home Page. See “Home Page” later in this section.
   - Press and hold to access the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto Phone Home screen, if connected.
8. (Back)
   - Press to return to the previous display in a menu.

Home Page

The Home Page is where vehicle application icons or cards are accessed. Some applications are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

Swipe left or right across the display or use the MFC to move the home page. Move the knob right/left to change the page or touch on one of the page count indicators at the bottom of the screen to jump to a specific page.

Managing Home Page Icons/Cards

1. Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons/cards to enter edit mode. Edit mode is not available when the vehicle is moving.
2. Continue holding the icon/card and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the display toward the desired page. Cards must stay on the first page.
5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.
6. Application cards on the first page can be replaced, moved or deleted based on user preference while in edit mode.
7. Touch Done to save changes or Cancel to not save and exit edit mode.

There will always be 10 icons per page except on the last page. If an icon is moved from the first page to the second, then that icon from the second page will replace the one removed from the first.

Steering Wheel Controls

If equipped, some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

: Press to start voice recognition. Press and hold to activate a connected phones voice recognition. See *Voice Recognition* ⇨ *191*.

: Press to use Conversation Enhancement. See “Conversation Enhancement” in *Settings* ⇨ *204*.

: Press to tune to the next strong station when listening to the radio, play the next song/track when listening to a media source when supported, or play the next favorite station/channel when favorites is the source.

: Press to tune to the previous strong station when listening to the radio, play the previous song/track when listening to a media source when supported, or play the previous favorite station/channel when favorites is the source.

: Press to open the audio source list.

Thumbwheel : Press the thumbwheel to access the Now Playing song list or select a list item. Scroll up or down to move to a list item.

: Press to answer or end a call when in a call. Press to access the recent call list when not in a call.

: Press to mute or unmute the volume.

: Press to decrease the volume or press and hold to continually decrease the volume.

: Press to increase the volume or press and hold to continually increase the volume.

Using the System

Audio

Touch the Audio icon on the infotainment display or on the Multifunction Controler (MFC) to display the active audio source page. Examples of available sources may include AM, FM, SXM (if equipped), USB, and Bluetooth.

Navigation

Touch the Nav icon on the infotainment display or on the MFC to display the navigation map. See *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *180*.

Phone

Touch the Phone icon on the infotainment display or on the MFC to display the Phone menu. See *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *197* or *Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone)* ⇨ *198*.

Vehicle Information

Touch on the infotainment display or press on the MFC. See *Vehicle Information* ⇨ *135*.

Apple CarPlay

Touch the Apple CarPlay icon to activate Apple CarPlay (if equipped) after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *202*.

Android Auto

Touch the Android Auto icon to activate Android Auto (if equipped) after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *202*.

Users

Touch the Users icon to sign in or create a new user profile, and follow the on-screen instructions.

Only four user profiles can be active at one time in the vehicle. It may be necessary to remove a profile from the menu before creating or signing into an existing profile. The removed profile can be logged into at a later time.

Settings

Touch the Settings icon to display the Settings menu. See *Settings* ⇨ *204*.

Apps

If equipped, in-vehicle apps are available for download. Touch the Apps icon on the Home Page to begin.

Downloading and using in-vehicle apps requires Internet connectivity which can be accessed with a data plan through the vehicle's built-in 4G LTE Wi-Fi hotspot, if equipped, or a compatible mobile device hotspot. On most mobile devices, activation of the Wi-Fi hotspot is in the device's Settings menu under Mobile Network Sharing, Personal Hotspot, Mobile Hotspot, or similar.

Availability of apps and connectivity varies by vehicle, conditions, and location. Data plan rates apply. Features are subject to change. For more information, see www.my.cadillac.com/learn for US/Canada and see my.cadillac.com.mx. for Mexico.

OnStar Services

If equipped, touch the OnStar Services icon to display the OnStar Services and Account pages. See *OnStar Overview* ⇨ *480*.

Camera

Touch the Camera icon to access the camera application. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *302*.

Rear Media

If equipped, touch the Rear Media icon to access the Rear Seat Infotainment application. See *Rear Seat Infotainment (RSI) System* ⇨ *174*.

Shortcut Menu

The shortcut menu is along the left edge of the display. It shows up to five applications.

Proximity Sensing

The infotainment system uses proximity sensing. When a hand approaches the screen, the view changes from the Multi Function Controller (MFC) view to the touch view.

Infotainment Gestures

Use the following finger gestures to control the infotainment system.

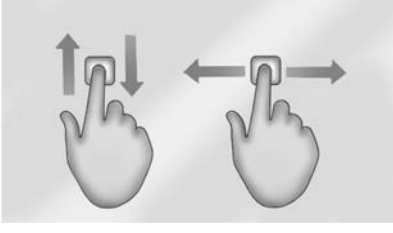
Touch/Tap

Touch/tap is used to select an icon or option, activate an application, or change the location inside a map.

Touch and Hold

Touch and hold can be used to move or delete an application.

Drag



Drag is used to move applications on the Home Page, or to pan the map. To drag the item, it must be held and moved along the display to the new location. This can be done up, down, right, or left. This feature is only available when vehicle is parked and not in motion.

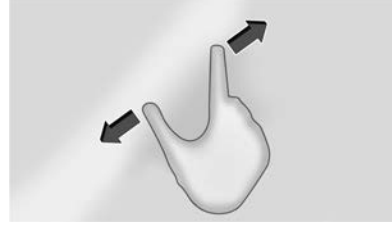
Nudge

Nudge is used to move items a short distance on a list or a map. To nudge, hold and move the selected item up or down to a new location.

Fling or Swipe

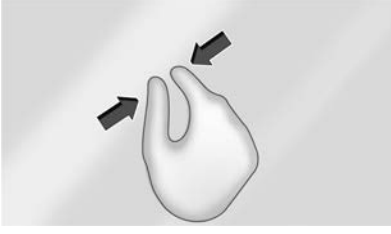
Fling or swipe is used to scroll through a list, pan the map, or change page views. Do this by placing a finger on the display then moving it rapidly up and down or right and left.

Spread



Spread is used to zoom in on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb together on the display, then move them apart.

Pinch



Pinch is used to zoom out on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb apart on the display, then move them together.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfiber cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfiber cloth, remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfiber cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfiber cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Software Updates

Over-the-Air Software Updates

If equipped, see “Updates” under *Settings* ⇨ *204* for details on software updates.

Radio

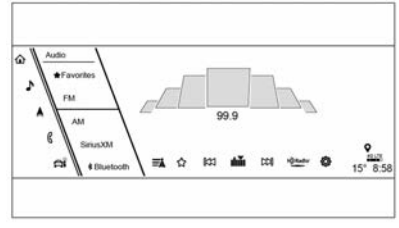
AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

From the Home Page, touch the Audio icon to display the active audio source page. Choose from the list at the left side of the display. Examples of available sources may include AM, FM, SiriusXM (if equipped) and Bluetooth.

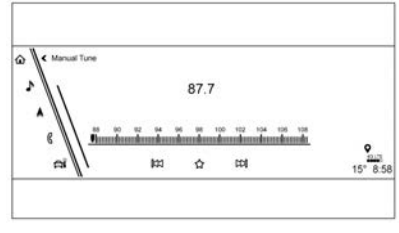
Finding a Station

Seeking a Station



From the AM or FM active source page, touch ⏮ or ⏭ to seek for the previous or next strong station. Touch ☆ to save the station as a favorite.

Manual Tune



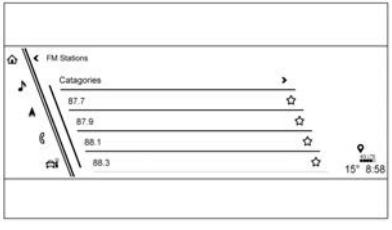
Touch to display the Manual Tune screen.

Manual tuning can be done by:

- Touch ⏮ or ⏭.
- Turn the Primary Knob on the infotainment controls.
- Place a finger on the infotainment display and swipe right or left.

Touch ☆ to save the tuned station as a favorite.

Stations



Touch ☰A to list all available stations or select Categories at the top of the list to access the categories list. The list contains categories associated with the AM or FM stations. Touch a category name to display a list of stations for that category. Touching a station from the list will tune the radio to that station.

Touch ☆ to save the selected station as a favorite.

Audio Settings

From the AM or FM audio source main page, touch ⚙ to display the following:

- Front Passenger Volume
- Sound
- Adaptive Volume
- HD Radio
- RDS
- Manage Phones
- Metadata Corrector
- Reset Music Index

Front Passenger Volume

This setting allows the front seat passengers to adjust the audio volume of their headrest speakers independently from the cabin volume.

Sound

Select and the following may display:

Equalizer : Touch to adjust Bass, Midrange, and Treble, using the options on the infotainment display.

Fade/Balance : Touch to adjust by using the controls on the infotainment display.

Sound Mode : Touch to select Front or Rear and to adjust Surround or Surround 3D.

Adaptive Volume

This feature will automatically adjust the audio volume based on vehicle speed and road noise.

Touch Off or On.

HD Radio

Enhances AM and FM radio with digital channels for better sound quality and information.

Touch Off or On.

RDS

Radio Data System (RDS) displays information about the currently playing radio content such as song or program name.

Touch Off or On.

Manage Phones

Select to manage the vehicle Bluetooth phone connections and phone pairing.

Metadata Corrector

This feature, when on, will add and correct information associated with the media files on connected devices.

Touch Off or On.

Reset Music Index

Select to clear the metadata from the connected USB devices.

Favorites

From the active audio source page, choose ★ Favorites from the list at the left side to display a list of audio favorites.

Favorites are stored by touching ☆. This will highlight indicating that it is now saved as a favorite.

HD Radio Technology

If equipped, HD Radio is a free service with features such as digital quality sound, more stations available on a single frequency such as HD2 and HD3, and display information such as artist and song title.

From the Now Playing display, touch the HD Radio icon to turn HD on or off.

Station Access

To access HD Radio stations:

1. Tune the radio to the station. If HD Radio is turned on and the station is broadcasting in HD Radio, the radio will automatically tune to the HD version of the current channel (HD1) after several seconds. The radio will also display icons representing additional channels (HD2, ...HD8), that may be available. When the radio successfully tunes to a HD station, the HD logo will display and digital audio will play.
2. Touch the display arrows or swipe the coverflow left/right to tune to the previous or next HD Radio station.

There may be a delay before the station starts playing.

The HD Radio station number is indicated next to the HD logo.

HD Radio stations can be saved as favorites.

For a list of all stations, see www.hdradio.com.

HD Radio Troubleshooting

Digital Audio Delay : Wait for the signal to process. This can take several seconds.

Volume Change, Audio Skip, Echo, Digital Audio Lost : Station signal strength may be weak, the station is out of range, or the station may be out of alignment. Verify proper reception on another station.

If the HD Radio signal weakens while listening to HD1, the radio will automatically switch to the analog version of the radio station.

If the HD Radio signal loses reception while listening to stations HD2 to HD8, the radio mutes until the signal can be recovered or until the station is changed.

HD Radio can be disabled if driving in a weak signal area. Touch HD Radio On/Off to toggle HD Radio reception on and off.

Radio Data System (RDS)

If equipped, RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information. With RDS, the radio can:

- Group stations by Category (i.e., Program Type) such as Rock, Jazz, Classical, etc.
- Display messages from radio stations.

This system relies on receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. It is possible that a radio station could broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

When information is broadcast from a RDS station, the station name or call letters display on the audio screen. Radio text supporting the currently playing broadcast may also appear.

Satellite Radio

SiriusXM Radio Service

If equipped, vehicles with a valid SiriusXM radio subscription can receive SiriusXM programming.

SiriusXM radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast to coast, in digital-quality sound. In the U.S., see www.siriusxm.com or call 1-888-601-6296. In Canada, see www.siriusxm.ca or call 1-877-438-9677.

When SiriusXM is active, the channel name, number, song title, and artist appear on the display.

SiriusXM with 360L

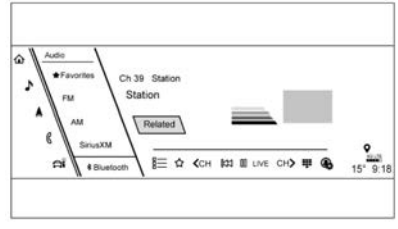
SiriusXM with 360L interface has enhanced in-vehicle listening experience for subscribers. The experience now offers more categories and system learned recommendations toward discovering more personalized content.

To use the full SiriusXM 360L program, including streaming content and listening recommendations, OnStar Connected Access is required. Connected vehicle services vary by model and require a complete working electrical system, cell reception, and GPS signal. An active connected plan is required.

Reference the SiriusXM user guide for use and subscription information.

Finding a Channel

Seeking a Channel



From the SiriusXM active source page, touch < CH or CH> to seek for the previous or next channel. Touch ☆ to save the channel as a favorite.

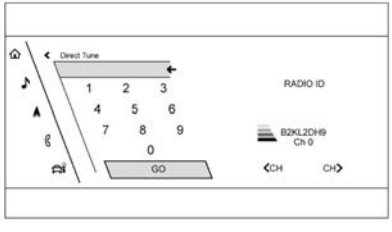
Browsing Categories

Touch ☰ to show the following categories:

- For You
- Music
- Sports
- News
- Talk

Touching a category will show the channels associated with that category.

Direct Tune



Access Direct Tune by touching ⠿ to bring up the keypad. Navigate through all channels using < CH or CH> on the Direct Tune display. Directly enter a channel using the keypad and touch GO. When a new channel is entered, the information about that channel displays on the right side. This information will update with each new channel. Touch ☆ to save the channel as a favorite.

Favorites

From the active audio source page, choose ★ Favorites from the list at the left side to display a list of audio favorites.

Favorites are stored by touching ☆. This will highlight indicating that it is now saved as a favorite.

User Settings

From the SiriusXM source main page, touch ⚙ to display the following:

- Audio Settings
- Listener Options
- Account Information

Audio Settings

Touch ⚙ to display the Audio Settings menu. See “Audio Settings” in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *165*.

Listener Options

Select and the following may display:

SiriusXM Favorites : Touch to show XM favorite channels.

History : Touch to show history of channels.

Listener Settings : Touch to hide explicit language channels and content, start songs at the beginning when tuning a music channel, or reset the listening history.

Account Information

Select to show the XM account information.

Radio Reception

Unplug electronic devices from the accessory power outlets if there is interference or static in the radio.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur,

especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

SiriusXM Satellite Radio Service

If equipped, SiriusXM Satellite Radio Service provides digital radio reception. Tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or tunnels may cause loss of the SiriusXM signal for a period of time. Some cellular services may interfere with SXM reception causing loss of signal.

Mobile Device Usage

Mobile device usage, such as making or receiving calls, charging, or just having the mobile device on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the mobile device or turn it off if this happens.

Multi-Band Antenna

The roof antenna may be used for radio, navigation, and OnStar, depending on the equipped options. Keep clear of obstructions for clear reception. If the vehicle has a sunroof, and it is open, reception can also be affected.

Audio Players

Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices

When using media devices such as SD cards, USB devices, and mobile devices, consider the source. Untrusted media devices could contain files that affect system operation or performance. Avoid use if the content or origin cannot be trusted.

USB Port

Audio stored on a USB device may be listened to.

The vehicle may be equipped with two USB ports in the center console under the armrest and another two on the center stack. These ports are for data and charging. There may also be two USB ports at the rear of the center console and a USB port on each side of the third row seats for charging only.

Caution

To avoid vehicle damage, unplug all accessories and disconnect all accessory cables from the vehicle when not in use. Accessory cables left plugged into the vehicle, unconnected to a device, could be damaged or cause an electrical short if the unconnected end comes

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

in contact with liquids or another power source such as the accessory power outlet.

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage device can be connected to the USB port.

Audio extensions supported by the USB may include:

- MP3
- AAC
- OGG
- 3GP

Gracenote

When plugging in a USB device, Gracenote service builds voice tags for music. Voice tags allow artists, albums with hard to pronounce names, and nicknames to be used to play music through voice recognition, if equipped.

While indexing, infotainment features may be available.

My Media Library

MyMedia is only available when more than one indexed device is connected. It allows access to content from all indexed media sources. MyMedia will show as an available source in the Source page.

USB MP3 Player and USB Devices

The USB MP3 players and USB devices connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).

To play a USB device:

1. Connect the USB.
2. Touch Audio from the Home Page.
3. Touch the More option and then touch the USB device.

Use the following when playing an active USB source:

▷ **:** Touch to play the current media source.

II : Touch to pause playback of the current media source.

⏮ **:**

- Touch to seek the beginning of the current or previous track.
- Touch and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏭ **:**

- Touch to seek the next track.
- Touch and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

Shuffle : Touch the shuffle icon to play music in random order.

USB Sound Menu

See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” under *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *165*.

USB Browse Menu

When a list of songs, albums, artists, or other types of media displays, the up and down arrows and A-Z appear on the left side. Select A-Z to view a display that will show all letters of the alphabet and select the letter to go to.

Touch the up and down arrows to move the list up and down.

Touch Browse and the following may display:

Playlists:

1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
2. Touch a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Supported playlist extensions are m3u and pls.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
2. Touch an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch All Songs or touch an album and then touch a song from the list.

Songs:

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. To begin playback, touch a song from the list.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Touch the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Touch a genre to view a list of artists.
3. Touch an artist to view albums by that artist.
4. Touch an album to view songs on the album.
5. Touch a song to start playback.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the USB.
2. Touch a Composer to view a list of albums by that composer.
3. Touch an album or All Songs to view a list of songs.
4. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Folders:

1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.
2. Touch a folder to view a list of all files.
3. Touch a file from the list to begin playback.

Podcasts : Touch to view the podcasts on the connected Apple device and get a list of podcast episodes.

Audiobooks:

1. Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the Apple device.
2. Touch an audiobook to get a list of chapters.
3. Touch the chapter from the list to begin playback.

File System and Naming

File systems supported by the USB may include:

- FAT32
- NTFS
- HFS+

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if

present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Supported Apple Devices

To view supported devices, see my.cadillac.com/learn.

Media Playback and Mute

USB playback will be paused if the system is muted. If the steering wheel mute control is pressed again, playback will resume.

If the source is changed while in mute, playback resumes and audio will unmute.

Bluetooth Audio

Music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. See *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *197* or *Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone)* ⇨ *198* for help pairing a device.

Volume and song selection may be controlled by using the infotainment controls or the mobile device.
If Bluetooth is selected and no volume is present, check the volume setting on both your mobile device and the infotainment system.

Music can be launched by touching Bluetooth from the recent sources list on the left of the display or by touching the More option and then touching the Bluetooth device.

To play music via Bluetooth:

1. Power on the device, and pair to connect the device.
2. Once paired, touch Audio from the Home Page, then touch Bluetooth from the recent sources list on the left of the display.

Bluetooth Sound Menu

See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” under *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *165*.

Manage Bluetooth Devices

From the Home Page:

1. Touch Audio.
2. Touch Bluetooth.
3. Touch Devices to add or delete devices.

When touching Bluetooth, the radio may not be able to launch the audio player on the connected device to start playing. When the vehicle is not moving, use the mobile device to begin playback.

All devices launch audio differently. When selecting Bluetooth as a source, the radio may show as paused on the display. Press play on the device or touch ▷ on the display to begin playback.

Browse functionality will be provided where supported by the Bluetooth device. This media content will not be part of the MyMedia source mode.

Some smartphones support sending Bluetooth music information to display on the radio. When the radio receives this information, it will check to see if any is available and display it. For more information about supported Bluetooth features, see my.cadillac.com/learn.

Rear Seat Infotainment

Rear Seat Infotainment (RSI) System

If equipped, the system includes two HDMI ports, two Bluetooth headphones, and video touchscreen displays in back of the driver and passenger seats.

The RSI system may not operate properly until the temperature is above -20 °C (-4 °F) and below 55 °C (131 °F).

System Operation

To use:

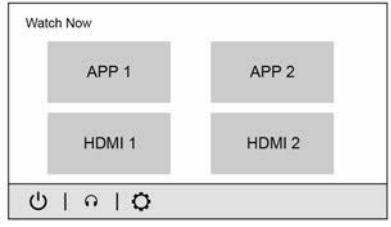
1. Double-tap anywhere on either screen to power on and view the Home screen.
2. Touch ⏻ on the status bar to turn the screen off.

The screens can be turned on and off through each individual touchscreen, independently from the other, and through front seat control.

Playback of any media playing through that specific screen is paused when the screen is turned off.

Screens can be locked via the front seat control.

Sources



- HDMI 1
- HDMI 2
- Apps (if equipped)

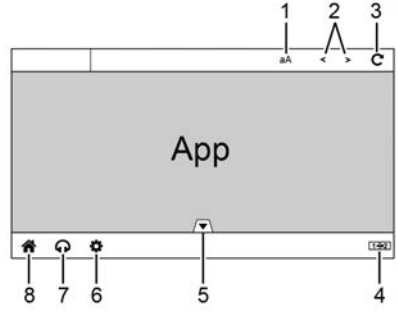
Status Bar:

- ⏻: Touch to turn off the screen. Double-tap anywhere on the screen to turn the screen on again.
- 🎧: Touch to go to Bluetooth Headphone Setup menu. See “Settings” later in this section.
- ⚙: Touch to go to the Settings menu.

HDMI Input

An HDMI cable is required to connect an HDMI device to the RSI hub. The RSI HDMI inputs allow connection to video games, disc players, cameras, smartphones, tablets, streaming devices, and A/V dongles that have HDMI (version 1.4a) outputs.

App View



1. Touch to adjust the zoom level.
2. Touch to navigate page history back or forward.
3. Touch to reload the page.
4. Touch to share screen with the other rear screen.

5. Touch or swipe down to close the overlay. Touching anywhere on the screen or waiting about three seconds will also slide the overlay down.
6. Touch to open the settings menu.
7. Touch to pair or connect the Bluetooth headphones, adjust the headphone volume or have the audio play through the vehicle's interior speakers.
8. Touch to open the Home Screen.

Touch, swipe, or drag input to navigate within an app.

Touching an ad will open it in a second tab. To close the second tab, touch the first tab, or touch the ✕.

Rear Screen Settings

From the rear screen home page, touch ⚙ to access the settings menu.

The menu may contain the following:

Screen Brightness

Select Screen Brightness. Move the bar left or right to adjust the display brightness. Each screen may be uniquely adjusted.

Customer Owned Bluetooth Headphones

The RSI system supports Bluetooth headphones. Up to four Bluetooth headphones can be paired to each REAR SCREEN. This screen provides a list of all Bluetooth headphones that have been paired to the RSI system, as well as control over their use and settings. New Bluetooth headphones can be connected, or the Bluetooth headphone settings can be changed from or on this screen.

To pair Bluetooth headphones to one of the rear screens:

1. Select Bluetooth Headphones or touch 🎧 from the desired Rear Screen Home Page.
2. Select Connect Headphones.
3. Make sure the Bluetooth headphones are in pairing mode. Once recognized by the system, the Bluetooth headphones are displayed on the list of Available Headphones.
4. Select the Bluetooth headphones from the list. The headphones may need to be unpaired from your phone before pairing to the RSI.
5. Once a headphone is paired, touch options for that headphone to access the menu where the headphone can be renamed, connected, disconnected, or to forget.

Provided Bluetooth Headphones

⚠ Warning

The headphones have a built-in rechargeable lithium ion battery pack that presents a serious fire hazard if damaged, defective, or improperly used.

To avoid battery leakage and/or a potential fire:

- Do not attempt to burn, crush, or cut the battery
- Do not expose the battery to environments with extremely low air pressures or temperatures above 60C (140F)

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not charge the battery at temperatures above 45C (113F)
- Do not charge the battery if the headphones are defective or damaged

Caution

Do not store the headphones in heat or direct sunlight. This could damage the headphones and repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Storage in extreme cold can weaken the batteries. Keep the headphones stored in a cool, dry place.

Batteries in this product should not be disposed of with household waste. Batteries should be recycled at an appropriate facility. Contact local authorities for details on recycling.

1. CH-Channel Select
2. Power
3. Volume
4. USB-C Charging Port

The RSI includes two new Bluetooth wireless headphones. The headphones are used to listen to various multimedia. The wireless headphones have a power button, channel select button, and a volume control button.

To use the included Bluetooth Wireless Headphones:

- Press the POWER button for one second to turn the headphones on. The power indicator will illuminate.
- While the headphones are powered off, press and hold the power button for two seconds to enter pairing mode. The headphone name will display as “GM RSI BT HP.” See “Pairing to RSI Screen” below for pairing instructions with RSI screen.
- To power off, press and hold the power button for two seconds while the power is on.

Paring to RSI Screen

Only two headphones can be active per RSI Screen.

To pair a Bluetooth headphone to one of the rear screens:

1. Touch the Headphone icon from the desired Rear Screen Home Page.
2. Select Add New Headphones.
3. Make sure the Bluetooth headphone is in pairing mode.

4. Once recognized by the system, the Bluetooth headphone is displayed on the list of Available Headphones.
5. Select the Bluetooth headphone from the list. Once connected, touch OK at the Pairing Successful pop-up.
6. Touch OK.

Voice Over

If equipped, the RSI system has a Voice Over feature to benefit the visually and hearing impaired.

When activated, Voice Over provides audible feedback to the user about which area on the screen they are touching, identifying active buttons, as well as providing information feedback of screen identification, current status, list content, metadata, and pop-up information. It allows for the user to activate features through a double tap anywhere on the screen which relates to the last single touched and audibly announced actionable button.

To turn Voice Over on or off, touch ⚙, touch the toggle, and then press OK to confirm. Voice Over turns off every time the vehicle is turned off.

Reset Entertainment Studio

Select to reset the Apps and log out users.

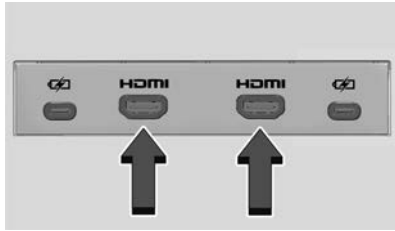
Open Source License

Select to show the license information.

Rear Consumer Ports (RCP)

If equipped with RSI, the RCP are in the rear of the center console. These include two HDMI ports and two USB-C charge only ports.

HDMI



The HDMI input allows an HDMI A/V cable to be connected from an auxiliary device such as a camcorder, video game system, or Apple device. A cable from Apple is required for Apple devices.

Touch the HDMI port that the external device was connected to on the home screen.

For certain HDMI devices that support USB charging, the USB ports can be used as a power source.

Content from these HDMI ports are NOT accessible through the infotainment display.

To use the HDMI input of the RSI system:

1. Connect the auxiliary device with an HDMI cable.
2. Power on both the auxiliary device and the RSI video screen.
3. Touch ⌂ (Home) on the desired display and select HDMI as the source.

HDMI

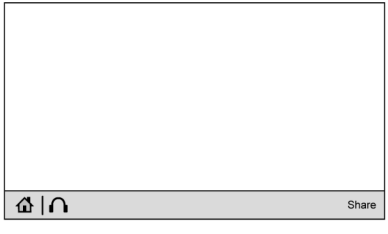
HDMI Connection

The RCP provides two HDMI ports to mirror video devices.

Connect the external device to watch the device content through the RSI screen.

Touch the HDMI port that was connected to the external device on the home screen.

HDMI Playing View



HDMI playing view shows the video content and includes:

- (Home): Touch to return to the RSI Home selection screen.
- (Headphones): Touch to access the Bluetooth Headphone Setup menu. See “Settings” later in this section.
- Share: Touch to share the screen with the other rear screen. The screen can be shared through the connected device.

Entertainment Studio App from the Home Screen

The Entertainment Studio App allows a front user to control the Rear Seat Video Screen sources. To access, touch the Entertainment Studio App icon from the Home Page.

The Rear Screens may be powered on or off from the Entertainment Studio App. Touch Screen 1 or Screen 2 to select a screen. Touch summary to view both Rear Screens together. Touching the Power icon next to the highlighted screen icon turns that screen on or off.

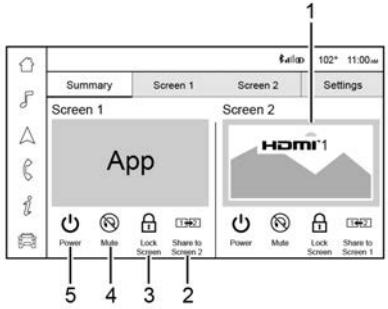
The audio for the rear users can be muted by the front user by pressing the mute icon associated with the left or right rear screen on the Rear Video App screen, or both rear screens by pressing the MUTE ALL button.

The current source from the desired Rear Screen can also be shown on the other Rear Screen by pressing the Share button on the lower right side of the RSI Video App screens.

Source Selecting from the Entertainment Studio App

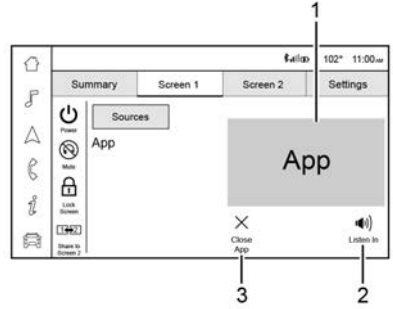
Sources may be selected for the highlighted Rear Screen. Select Sources from the Entertainment Studio App screen, then select from the list of available sources shown on the RSI Sources screen.

Summary View



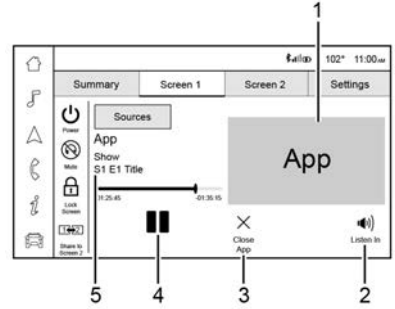
1. Current source for rear screens.
2. Touch to share screen to the other rear screen.
3. Touch to lock rear screen from touch inputs.
4. Touch to mute the rear screen audio.
5. Touch to power rear screen on or off.

Screen Detail View without Content Playing



1. Shows source name.
2. Touch to have the audio play through the vehicle's interior speakers.
3. Touch to close an app on the rear screen.

Screen Detail View with Content Playing



1. Art shown for current content playing.
2. Touch to have the audio play through the vehicle's interior speakers.
3. Touch to close an app on the rear screen.
4. Touch to play or pause the currently playing content.
5. Name and info of currently playing content.

Entertainment Studio Settings

From the Entertainment Studio page, touch Settings to access the settings menu.

The menu may contain the following:

Remember Screen Power Status

Select to have rear screens automatically power on when the vehicle is started.

Rear Screen Voice-Over

Select to have Video Voice Over for the individual rear screens.

Allowed Applications

Select to choose which applications are visible.

Account

Select to show the vehicle data plan.

Reset Entertainment Studio

Select to reset the applications.

Entertainment Studio Terms of Use

Select to view the terms of use.

Privacy Statement

Select to view the Privacy statement.

RSI Troubleshooting

No power : The ignition might not be on or in ACC/ACCESSORY.

There is no sound from the headphones with the indicator light on : Make sure the headphones have sufficient charge. Plug the headphones to a USB-C port to charge.

Check to see if headphones are paired to the screens. Make sure that you are listening in to the correct screen by pressing the channel select button.

If the steps above do not work, then unpair the headphones from the RSI screens, turn the headphones off, turn them back on and attempt to pair them. See pairing procedures for the Bluetooth headphone previously in this section.

Video Distortion

Video distortion can occur when operating cellular phones, scanners, CB radios, Global Positioning Systems (GPS), two-way radios, mobile faxes, or walkie talkies.

It might be necessary to turn off the video player when operating one of these devices in or near the vehicle.

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

If equipped, launch the Nav application by touching the Nav icon on the Home Page or on the shortcut tray near the left side of the infotainment display.

When the Nav application is launched for the first time, a product walkthrough is available. Use of the feature requires the Terms and Conditions and the Privacy statement to be confirmed. If available and signed into a profile, it is also suggested to enable and confirm Personalized Navigation.

Personalized Navigation (If Equipped)

If Personalized Navigation is available and confirmed, this feature learns preferences by remembering where

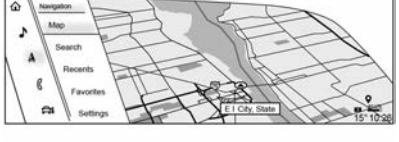
the vehicle has been. It uses the locations and navigation history to personalize routes and results.

Personalized Navigation may learn elements such as:

- Personalized routes based on preferred streets.
- Search results that provide best matches at the top of the list.
- Predictive traffic.
- Local map content updating.

Personalized Navigation can also be enabled or disabled at a later time. Select Settings, then Navigation Privacy, and then change setting for Collect Data with Profile Information. See *Settings* ⇨ *204*.

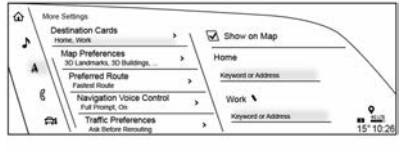
Navigation Map View



After opening the Nav application for the first time, the application will always open in full map view displaying the vehicle's current location. The Search option will appear along the left side of the navigation map view.

Destination Cards

From the Nav application, set up Home and Work addresses to enable one-touch navigation. To set up Home and Work addresses, select Settings, then More Settings, and then Destination Cards. Show on Map should be on by default. Select and enter Home and/or Work address and save.



To stop showing Destination Cards on the map view, switch Show on Map to Off.

Touch the drive To Home or drive To Work pop-up to start either route.

Map and Navigation Settings

Touch Settings to display options. The following may display:

- Map Orientation
  - 3D Heading Up
  - 2D Heading Up
  - 2D North Up
- Show on Map
  - Fuel
  - Food
  - Restaurants
  - Fast Food
  - Coffee
  - ATMs
  - Lodging
  - Parking
  - Grocery Stores
- Avoid on Route
  - Highways
  - Toll Roads
  - Unpaved Roads
  - Ferries
  - Tunnels

  - Carpool Lanes
  - Country Borders
- Rear Seat Requests
  - Accept
  - Always Ignore

To access the following, touch Settings and then More Settings:

- Destination Cards
- Map Preferences
- Preferred Landmarks
- Navigation Voice Control
- Traffic Preferences
- Alert Preferences
- Manage History
- Navigation Privacy: See "Personalized Navigation (If Equipped)" previously in this section.
- About

To exit a list, touch < in the upper left corner to go back to the main map view

Make sure to set up preferences before setting a destination and starting active guidance.

Map Preferences

Touch to choose between basic map feature configurations:

Map Colors

- Day (Light)
- Night (Dark)
- Auto – Touch to automatically change modes based on lighting conditions.

3D Landmark (Default is On) : Touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will display all 3D Landmarks on the map depending on the zoom level.

3D Buildings (Default is Off) : Touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will display all of the possible 3D building shapes on the map depending on the zoom level.

Show Terrain in 3D (Default is Off) : If equipped, touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will display terrain information on the map in 3D view.

Auto-Zoom (Default is On) : Touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will automatically adjust the zoom level when the vehicle is approaching a turn. After the turn is completed, the system automatically brings the zoom back to the originally set level. If the vehicle is approaching a turn with the next turn occurring shortly after, the Auto-Zoom will remain on until both turns are completed.

Preferred Route

To access, touch Settings, then More Settings, and then Preferred Route.

Choose from two different route options: Fastest or Eco-Friendly.

- Fastest would be the route with the shortest drive time.
- Eco-Friendly would be the most fuel-efficient route.

Avoid on Route

To access, touch Settings, and then Avoid on Route.

Choose any of the road features to avoid while on route:

- Highways
- Unpaved Roads
- Ferries

- Carpool Lanes
- Toll Roads
- Tunnels
- Country Borders

Navigation Voice Control

Touch to access the voice control setting display.

- Navigation Volume – To adjust the volume level, use the sliding bar on the Navigation screen. If the voice guidance prompt is being heard, volume can also be adjusted using the knob on the center stack or the volume switch on the steering wheel.
- Directional Navigation Prompts – Allows prompts to play on the left or right side of the vehicle depending on the direction of the upcoming turn. This can be turned on or off.
- Navigation Voice Prompt Level during a Call. Options available are:
  - Full Prompt (Selected by default)
  - Tone Only
  - None

Traffic Preferences (If Equipped)

While in Map View, select Settings, then More Settings, and then Traffic Preferences. When Show Traffic on Map is turned on, the feature provides an overview of the traffic flow using different coded colors. The following options are available for rerouting:

- Show Traffic Flow on Map – Toggles whether or not the flow of traffic is shown on the map.
- Auto Reroute – The system will automatically reroute if the system detects there is a traffic issue ahead.
- Ask Before Rerouting (Default) – If the system detects there is a traffic issue ahead, it will display a pop-up with details about the issue. Choose to reroute or cancel the alert.
- Never Check – The system will not check for a better route until one of the above options is selected.

Alert Preferences

Set alerts on or off during both inactive and active guidance views. The following alerts may be available:

- Road Safety Alerts – Touch to display upcoming School Zones.
- Traffic Camera Alerts

Manage History

Touch Manage History to access the History options:

- Clear Recent Destinations – Touch ⊗ to clear the recent destinations.
- Clear Search History – Touch ⊗ to clear the search history.

Navigation Privacy

Touch to change the navigation privacy settings. The Navigation Privacy settings are:

- Collect Data with Profile Information – Turn this on to enable Personalized Navigation. See “Personalized Navigation” earlier in this section.
- Collect Anonymized Data – Turn this on to enable improvement in Nav product quality.

About

Touch to display software information, such as:

- Telenav Terms and Conditions
- Telenav Privacy Statement
- Navigation Version

Maps

The Nav application requires a map database to run. It is stored on an SD card that is connected to the infotainment system. If the map database is not available, a missing SD card error message will be displayed.

SD Card Error Messages

The SD card only works for one unique vehicle. The SD card must pass authentication verification to be used for that specific vehicle. Potential error scenarios and messages include:

- The SD card has initialized for the first time: “Once initialized, this SD card can only be used for navigation in this vehicle.”
- The SD card is not working properly: “SD card is not functioning properly. (Error Code).”
- The SD card is not paired with the existing system: “This SD card is not valid for navigation in this vehicle. See Owner’s Manual for more detail or visit your dealer.”
- The SD card has been removed from the slot: “SD card has been removed. (Error Code).”

Selecting "Confirm" after initialization message will start initializing. For the other messages, touch OK to return to the Home Page.

Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that may appear in the Nav application.

This indicates the vehicle’s current location and direction on the map.

The destination pin marks the location of the final destination. Touch the pin to view the destination address or to add it or remove it from the Favorites list. Hide the information by touching the pin one more time. It will automatically time out if no action is taken.

If equipped, smart Points of Interest (POIs) are places of interest for parking and gas stations.

Destination

Search

Touch Search on the infotainment display to open the search display. It has a search field entry box, quick category icon shortcuts, and keyboard.

Auto Complete

Enter a partial location in the field entry box on the search display. Auto complete will attempt to complete the destination based on what is being entered. Touch the suggested item to search.

Search While in Motion with No Front Seat Passenger Present

The search display will not allow changes or text input with the keyboard when the vehicle is in motion. As a result, a display showing three rows of the most commonly used categories appears.

Search While in Motion with Front Seat Passenger Present

If the system detects that the front seat passenger is present with both driver and passenger seat belts buckled, touching the search icon will display an alert message that allows the passenger to search for a destination.

Receiving Destination Directions from Different Sources

Destinations can be received or transferred from different sources to the Nav application for route guidance. If equipped, some of these sources may include:

- Navigation from search results.
- OnStar Advisor destination download.
- An address from the Contacts list.
- An application on the smartphone that can send destinations to the vehicle.
- An application downloaded to the vehicle that can send destinations to the navigation system.

Waypoints

Add up to five waypoints, which are additional destinations, along the route. To add an additional stop or waypoint:

1. From active guidance, touch Add a Stop.
2. Search for the destination using One-Box, Voice search, or the Quick Category icons.
3. Choose search results Along Route, Nearby, or Near Destination.
4. Choose the desired waypoint and touch Add to Trip.

Route options are not available for waypoints.

Arriving at a Waypoint

When approaching a waypoint, the system will display a Destination Arrival view. To continue on to the next destination touch the Done message on the infotainment display.

Editing a Waypoint

When waypoints are added during active guidance, the system allows a stop to be deleted or the order to be changed.

To edit a waypoint, touch Destinations. The following options will be available:

- Modify destination order by touching the arrow buttons on the waypoint destinations list.
- Delete a waypoint by touching the trash can icon. The icon can be selected again to re-add the waypoint in case it was accidentally selected. Touch X on the top right corner so the system can recalculate the route.

If there is only one address in the destinations list, the system will disable the move and delete functions. The system will not allow the final destination to be deleted.

Map Information

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for map information. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Places of Interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, gas stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments.

If the vehicle does not have an applicable service plan, the map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after production. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

Zoom Control

To zoom in or out, perform one of the following:

- Rotate the Multifunction Controller (MFC) to zoom in or out on the map.
- Double tap with one finger to zoom in or single tap with two fingers to zoom out on the map.
- Use the index finger and thumb to zoom out by pinching and then zoom in by spreading those two fingers on the map.

Map Gestures and Map Scale

Use the following gestures on the infotainment display to adjust the map scale and display options.

- Pinch to zoom in or out.
- Pan the map.
- Use two fingers to tilt down and change from 2D to 3D. Tilt up to change back to 2D.
- Rotate the map.

The MFC can also shift up, down, left, or right to pan the map.

See *Using the System* ⇨ *162*.

Mute

When in active guidance, the audio prompts while using navigation can be muted. Touch Mute in the Active Menu. A slash will appear on the speaker to indicate voice guidance is muted.

Active Guidance View

When a destination is chosen and a navigation session is active, the navigation system enters into an Active Guidance View (AGV).

Lane Guidance

The map will display the lane information for the upcoming maneuver if it is available.

Junction View

When a vehicle is on the highway and approaching the exit, an image displays the lane that the vehicle must stay in to complete the next maneuver.

Quick-Turn View

When the vehicle is approaching a turn with the next turn following in quick succession, a quick-turn list appears below the primary turn indicator. An audio prompt will announce the quick turn.

Auto-Zoom

When approaching a maneuver, the map will automatically zoom in to show both the vehicle icon and the upcoming maneuver to give a better view of the maneuver. Once the maneuver is complete, the system will zoom back to the previous zoom level. Touch Settings, then More Settings, and then touch Map Preferences to access Auto-Zoom. This feature can be enabled or disabled.

Directions

Touch Turn List to display Directions.

Directions displays the turns and directions from the current location to the final destination.

Highway Exits List

Touch to open the Exit list. This icon displays next to the current street name near the bottom of the display. The icon only appears when on a highway with defined exits.

While traveling on roads with designated exits, an Exit list may be available. The Exit list displays the exit number, distance to the exit from the current vehicle position, and convenience stops that may be available, such as gas, coffee, food, and lodging.

Next Maneuver Menu

When in Active Guidance, the Next Maneuver Turn Arrow, Street Name, and Maneuver Distance are shown in the Next Maneuver at the top of the menu to the left of the map. ETA and Distance to Destination are displayed in the same place as the Next Maneuver information, but appear above the Next Maneuver Turn Arrow.

Repeat Voice Guidance

This symbol indicates the next guidance maneuver. Touch it to repeat the last spoken guidance instruction.

Incident Alert (If Equipped)

During active guidance, if the system determines that there is an incident ahead but there is not a better route, the system will play a tone and show a Quick Notice. This will only show once per incident.

Incident Reports (If Equipped)

Incident report icons, along with traffic flow data, display on the map during both active and inactive guidance.

End Trip

Touch End Trip to end active guidance and return to inactive guidance.

Resume Trip

The trip can be resumed if it was canceled by touching Resume Trip at the top of the Navigation menu.

If the system has determined that the destination has been reached, either because the arrival view displayed or the destination has been passed, the Resume Trip option will not appear.

Favorites

The navigation favorites can have addresses or POIs that have been saved through the favorite icon on the details view.

Accessing Favorites

Touch Favorites in the Navigation menu.

Saving Favorites

Favorites can be added from a number of the system's applications. Touch the favorites icon to save content as a favorite.

Editing Favorites

Favorites can be edited by selecting the Edit button for the favorite and updating the content. Tap and hold on the Favorites item to enter Edit page.

Reorder Favorites

Touch and hold the Reorder button on the right side on a favorite item, then continue to hold and drag it to the desired position in the list.

Delete Favorites

Touch the checkbox next to the favorite and select Delete.

Delete all favorites by selecting Delete All.

Recents

Touch Recents in the Navigation menu.

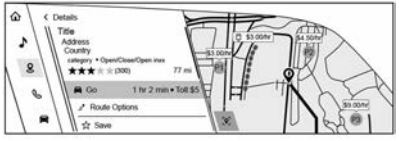
Last Parked Location

The Last Parked Location is the last location the vehicle engine was turned off. That location is displayed in the first row of the Recents list. Touching the last Parked Location shows the Address Details view to either save the address or drive to it. The Last Parked Location can be deleted by entering the Edit display. Once the Last Parked Location is deleted, it no longer appears in the Recents list, unless the vehicle is started at that location again.

Show POI Icons

Touch Search in the Navigation menu. More than eight categories of icons can be selected.

Smart POI Icons on Map (If Equipped)



The smart POI icons such as fuel stations and parking may appear based on time, location, driver search behavior, driving conditions, and vehicle conditions.

Touch a smart POI icon to open the corresponding details:

- Left side: Name and address of the POI + ETE (Estimated Time Enroute.)
- Right side:

Smart Fuel Station Icons

Fuel station prices are shown if available for nearby stations when the vehicle is low on fuel.

Smart Parking Icons

When approaching destination, the system will attempt to display nearby parking destinations with pricing information, if available.

Report an Issue Using POI Details (If Equipped)

In the POI details page, a POI issue can be reported if the data is not accurate or the address is incorrect. Touch Report an Issue near the bottom of the display to access the issue selection page. Touch one of the predefined issues on the selection page, then touch Send. The system will send the information for analysis.

Connected Navigation

Connected Navigation is a subscription service that enables certain capabilities within the navigation system, such as Traffic, Smart Search/Routing, and Personalized Navigation capabilities. The system will show an alert when the subscription is expiring and will ask to renew the plan.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

If equipped, the position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears in the status bar.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ *190* and *If the System Needs Service* ⇨ *191*.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is traveling on winding roads or long, straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is traveling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tire chains are installed on the vehicle.
- The tires are replaced or worn.
- The tire pressure for the tires is incorrect.
- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery has been disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps* ⇨ *184*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstructions.

If the System Needs Service

If the navigation system needs service, see your dealer.

Map Data Updates

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced.

See www.gmnavdisc.com for details on ordering, purchasing, and installing a new or replacement SD card. Features are subject to change. For more information on this feature, see my.cadillac.com/learn.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates* ⇨ *191*.

Voice Recognition

If equipped, voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio, and phone. This feature can be started by pressing on the steering wheel.

However, not all features within these areas are supported by voice commands. Generally, only complex tasks that require multiple manual interactions to complete are supported by voice commands.

For example, tasks that take more than one or two touches, such as a song or artist to play from a media device, would be supported by voice commands. Other tasks, like adjusting the volume or seeking up or down, are audio features that are easily performed by touching one or two options, and are not supported by voice commands.

In general there are flexible ways to speak commands for completing the tasks.

If your language supports it, try stating a one-shot command, such as “Directions to address <number, street, city, state/province>.” Do not include the ZIP code while stating the address during the command. Another example of a one-shot Destination Entry command is, “Directions to Place of Interest at <hotel>.” If these commands do not work, try saying, “Take me to Place of Interest” or “Find address” and the system will walk you through by asking additional questions.

Hybrid Speech Recognition

If equipped, this feature helps distinguish words by using Internet-based information along with the system's voice recognition database. This allows you to speak more naturally when using voice recognition.

Using Voice Recognition

Voice recognition becomes available once the system has been initialized. This begins when the ignition is turned on. Initialization may take a few moments.

1. Press on the steering wheel controls to activate voice recognition.
2. The audio system mutes and the system plays a prompt.
3. Clearly speak one of the commands described in this section.

   A voice recognition system prompt can be interrupted while it is playing by pressing again.

Once voice recognition is started, both the infotainment display and instrument cluster show the selections and visual dialog content. These displays can be turned on or off in the Tutorial Mode under *Settings* ⇨ *204*.

There are three voice prompt modes supported:

- Informative verbal prompts: This type of prompt will provide more information regarding the supported actions.
- Short prompts: This type of prompt will provide simple instructions about what can be stated.
- Auto informative prompts: This type of prompt plays during the first few speech sessions, then automatically switches to the short prompt after some experience has been gained through using the system.

If a command is not spoken, the voice recognition system says a help prompt.

Prompts and Infotainment Displays

While a voice recognition session is active, there may be corresponding options showing on the displays. A selection can be made by manually touching the option, or by speaking the number for the option to select.

Manual interaction in the voice recognition session is permitted. Interaction during a voice session may be completed entirely using voice commands while some manual commands may expedite a task. If a selection is made using a manual control, the voice recognition dialog will progress in the same way as if the selection were made using a voice command. Once the system completes the task, or the session is terminated, the voice recognition dialog stops.

An example of this type of manual intervention is touching an entry of a displayed number list instead of speaking the number associated with the entry desired.

Canceling Voice Recognition

- Touch or say "Cancel" or "Exit" to terminate the voice recognition session and show the display where voice recognition was initiated.
- Press any MFC button or press , , , , , or the thumbwheel on the steering wheel controls to

terminate the voice recognition session and show the display where voice recognition was initiated.

Natural Language Commands

Most languages do not support natural language commands in sentence form. For those languages, use direct commands like the examples shown on the display.

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

Voice recognition can understand commands that are naturally stated in sentence form or direct commands that state the application and the task.

For best results:

- Listen for the prompt before saying a command or reply.
- Speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow.
- Use direct commands without a lot of extra words. For example, “Call <name> at work,” “Play” followed by the artist or song name, or “Tune” followed by the radio station number.
- Navigation destinations can be made in a single command using keywords. A few examples are: “I want directions to an address,” “I need to find a place of interest or (POI),” or “Find contact.”

  The system responds by requesting more details. For other POIs, say the name of a category like “Restaurants,” “Shopping Malls,” or “Hospitals.”
- Navigating to a destination outside of the current country takes more than one command. The first command is to tell the system where the navigation will take place, such as an Address, Intersection, POI, or Contact. If Address or Intersection is selected, the second command is to say, “Change Country.” Once the system responds, say the country before saying the rest of the address and/or intersection.

  If POI is asked for, say “Change Location,” then “Change Country.”

Direct commands might be more clearly understood by the system. An example of a direct command would be “Call <number>.” Examples of these direct commands are displayed on most of the screens while a voice session is active. If “Phone” or “Phone Commands,” is spoken, the system understands that a phone call is requested and will respond with questions until enough details are gathered to make a call.

If a cell phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example “Call <name> at work.”

Using Voice Recognition for List Options

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt will ask to confirm or select an option from that list.

When a display contains a list, there may be options that are available but not displayed. The list on a voice recognition screen functions the same as a list on other displays. Scrolling or flinging can be used to help display other entries from the list.

Manually scrolling or paging the list on a display during a voice recognition session suspends the

current voice recognition event and plays the prompt “Please select manually or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to try again.”

If manual selection takes more than 15 seconds, the session terminates and prompts that it has timed out. The display returns to the display where voice recognition was initiated.

The Back Command

Say “Back” or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to go to the previous menu.

If in voice recognition, and “Back” is spoken all the way back to the starting display, and then “Back” is spoken one more time, the voice recognition session will cancel.

Help

Say “Help” on any voice recognition display and the help prompt for the display is played.

Voice Recognition for the Radio

If browsing the audio sources when voice is touched, the voice recognition commands for AM, FM, and SiriusXM (if equipped) are available.

“Switch to AM” : Switch bands to AM and tune to the last AM radio station.

“Switch to FM” : Switch bands to FM and tune to the last FM radio station.

“Switch to SXM” : Switch bands to SiriusXM and tune to the last SiriusXM channel.

“Tune to <AM frequency> AM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “nine fifty”).

“Tune to <FM frequency> FM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “one oh one point one”).

“Tune to <AM frequency> AM HD” : Tune to the HD Radio station whose frequency is identified in the command.

“Tune to <FM frequency> FM HD” : Tune to the HD Radio station whose frequency is identified in the command.

“Tune to <FM frequency> FM HD <HD channel number>” : Tune to the HD Radio station whose frequency and HD channel are identified in the command.

“Tune to SXM <SXM channel number>” : Tune to the SiriusXM radio station whose channel number is identified in the command.

“Tune to SXM <SXM channel name>” : Tune to the SiriusXM radio station whose channel name is identified in the command.

Voice Recognition for Audio MyMedia

The available voice recognition commands for [browsing] MyMedia are:

“Play Artist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific artist name.

“Play Artist <artist name>” : Begin playback of a specific artist.

“Play Album” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific album name.

“Play Album <album name>” : Begin playback of a specific album.

“Play Song” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific song name.

“Play Song <song name>” : Begin playback of a specific song, if available.

“Play Genre” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific genre.

“Play Genre <genre name>” : Begin playback of a specific genre.

“Play Playlist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific playlist name.

“Play Playlist <playlist name>” : Begin playback of a specific playlist.

“Play <device name>” : Play music from a specific device identified by name. The device name is the name displayed on the display when the device is first selected as an audio source.

“Play Chapter” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Chapter <chapter name>” : Begin playback of a specific chapter.

“Play Audiobook” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific audiobook.

“Play Audiobook <audiobook name>” : Begin playback of a specific audiobook.

“Play Episode” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Episode <episode name>” : Begin playback of a specific episode.

“Play Podcast” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific podcast.

“Play Podcast <podcast name>” : Begin playback of a specific podcast.

“My Media” : Begin a dialog to enter the desired media content.

Handling Large Amounts of Media Content

It is expected that large amounts of media content will be brought into the vehicle. It may be necessary to handle large amounts of media content in a different way than smaller amounts of media. The system may limit the options of voice recognition by not allowing selection of files by voice at the highest level if the number of files exceeds the maximum limit.

Changes to voice commands due to media content limits are:

- Files including other individual files of all media types such as songs, audiobook chapters, podcast episodes, and videos.
- Album type folders including types such as albums and audiobooks.

There are no restrictions if the number of files and albums is fewer than 12,000. When the number of files connected to the system is between 12,000 and 24,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like “Play <song name>.”

The restriction is that the command “Play Song” must be spoken first; the system will then ask for the song name. The reply command would be to say the name of the song to play.

Similar limits exist for album content. If there are more than 12,000 albums, but fewer than 24,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like, “Play <album name>.” The command “Play Album” must first be spoken; the system will then ask

for the album name. The reply would be to say the name of the album to play.

Once the number of files has exceeded approximately 24,000, there is no support for accessing the songs directly through voice commands. There will still be access to the media content by using commands for playlists, artists, and genres.

The access commands for playlists, artists, and genres are prohibited after the number of this type of media exceeds 12,000.

The system will provide feedback the first time voice recognition is initiated if it has become apparent that any of these limits are reached during a device initializing process.

Voice recognition performance will degrade to some extent based on many factors when adding large amounts of data to recognize. If this is the case, perhaps accessing songs through playlists or artist name would work better.

Voice Recognition for Navigation

"Navigation" : Begin a dialog to enter specific destination information.

"Navigation Commands" : Begin a dialog to enter specific destination information.

"Address" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination address, which includes the entire address consisting of the house number, street name, city, state/province, and country. Do not include the ZIP code.

"Place of Interest" : Begin a dialog to enter a destination Place of Interest category or major brand name.

The name must be precisely spoken. Nicknames or short names for the businesses will not likely be found. Lesser known businesses might have to be located by category, such as fast food, hotels, or banks.

"Navigate to Contact" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination contact name.

"Cancel Route" : End route guidance.

"Take Me Home" : Create a route to a stored home location.

Voice Recognition for the Phone

"Call <contact name>" : Initiate a call to a stored contact. The command may include location if the contact has location numbers stored.

"Call <contact> At Home," "At Work," "On Mobile," or "On Other" : Initiate a call to a stored contact and location at home, at work, on mobile device, or on another phone.

"Call <cell phone number>" : Initiate a call to a cell phone number of seven digits, 10 digits, or three digit emergency numbers.

"Pair Phone" : Begin the Bluetooth pairing process. Follow the instructions on the infotainment display.

"Redial" : Initiate a call to the last dialed number.

"Switch Phone" : Select a different connected cell phone for outgoing calls.

"Voice Keypad" : Begin a dialog to enter special numbers like international numbers. The numbers can be entered in groups of digits with each group of digits being repeated back by the system. If the group of digits is not correct, the command "Delete" will remove the last group of digits and allow them to be re-entered. Once the entire number has been entered, the command "Call" will start dialing the number.

Phone Assistant Voice Recognition

Press and hold on the steering wheel controls to pass through and launch Google phone assistant or Siri.

For the low radio, whether connected by Bluetooth or phone projection, the only available voice recognition is either Siri (iPhone) or the Google Assistant (Android).

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)

The Bluetooth-capable system can interact with many mobile devices, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the device's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the mobile device. Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.
- Pair mobile device(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all mobile devices. See "Pairing" later in this section.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable mobile device with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while the ignition is on or in ACC/ACCESSORY. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m (30 ft). Not all mobile devices support all functions and not all mobile devices work with the Bluetooth system. See my.cadillac.com for more information about compatible mobile devices.

Controls

Use the controls on the center stack and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

: Press and hold to start voice recognition on the connected Bluetooth mobile device.

: Press to answer, end or switch between calls.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System* ⇨ *162*.

Audio System

When using the Bluetooth mobile device system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. The volume level while on a mobile device call can be adjusted by pressing the steering wheel controls or the volume control on the MFC. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The volume cannot be lowered beyond a certain level.

Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone)

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile device must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile device manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the device.

Pairing Information

- If no mobile device has been connected, the Phone main page on the infotainment display will show the Connect Phone option. Touch this option to connect.
- A Bluetooth smartphone with music capability can be paired to the vehicle as a smartphone and a music player at the same time.
- Up to 10 devices can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the cell phone changes or the cell phone is deleted from the system.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired cell phone that is set to First to Connect. If there is no cell phone set to First to Connect, it will link to the cell phone which was used last. To link to a different paired cell phone, see “Linking to a Different Phone” later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Make sure Bluetooth has been enabled on the cell phone before the pairing process is started.
2. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
3. Touch Add Phone/Connect Phone.
4. Select the vehicle name shown on the infotainment display from your cell phone’s Bluetooth Settings list.
5. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to confirm the six-digit code showing on the infotainment display and touch Pair. The code on the cell phone and infotainment display will need to be acknowledged for a successful pair.
6. Start the pairing process on the cell phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the cell phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process. Once the cell phone is paired, it will show under Connected.

7. If the vehicle name does not appear on your cell phone, there are a few ways to start the pairing process over:
   - Turn the cell phone off and then back on.
   - Go back to the beginning of the Phone menus on the infotainment display and restart the pairing process.
   - Reset the cell phone, but this step should be done as a last effort.
8. If the cell phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, touch Always Accept and Allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
9. Repeat Steps 1–8 to pair additional cell phones.

First to Connect Paired Phones

If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired cell phone that is set as First to Connect. To enable a paired cell phone as the First to Connect phone:

1. Make sure the cell phone is turned on.
2. Touch Settings, then touch System.
3. Touch Phones to access all paired and all connected cell phones and mobile devices.
4. Touch the phone name of the cell phone to open the cell phone's settings menu.
5. Touch the First to Connect option, to enable the setting for that device.

Cell phones and mobile devices can be added, removed, connected, and disconnected. A sub-menu will display whenever a request is made to add or manage cell phones and mobile devices.

Secondary Phone

A cell phone can be enabled as a Secondary Phone by touching the information icon to the right of the paired cell phone name to open the phone settings menu. If a cell phone is enabled as a Secondary Phone, it can connect simultaneously alongside another Bluetooth mobile device. In doing so, the Secondary Phone will be labeled as Incoming Calls. This means the mobile device can only receive calls. The Address Book of a Secondary Phone will not be available and hands-free outgoing calls cannot be placed using this cell phone.

If needed, touch the Secondary Phone while in the Phones list to swap it into the Outgoing and Incoming role. This role makes it possible to place outgoing calls from the Contacts and Recents list.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phones.

Disconnecting a Connected Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the information icon next to the connected cell phone or mobile device to show the cell phone's or mobile device's information display.
4. Touch Disconnect.

Deleting a Paired Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the device name next to the connected cell phone to display the cell phone's or mobile device's information display.
4. Touch Forget Device.

Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different cell phone, the new cell phone must be in the vehicle and paired to the Bluetooth system.

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the new cell phone to link to from the not connected phone list. See "First to Connect Paired Phones" and "Secondary Phone" previously in this section.

Switching to Handset or Handsfree Mode

To switch between handset or handsfree mode:

- While the active call is hands-free, touch the Handset option to switch to the handset mode.

  The mute icon will not be available or functional while Handset mode is active.
- While the active call is on the handset, touch the Handset option to switch to the hands-free mode.

Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal cell phone contact information for all cell phones that support the Phone Book feature. Become familiar with the cell phone settings and operation. Verify the cell phone supports this feature.

The Contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the cell phone.

The Recents menu accesses the recents call list from your cell phone.

To make a call using the Contacts menu:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Contacts.
3. The Contacts list can be searched by using the first character. Touch A-Z on the infotainment display to scroll through the list of names.

   Touch the name to call.
4. Touch the desired contact number to call.

To make a call using the Recents menu:

1. Touch Phone on the Home Page.
2. Touch Recents.
3. Touch the name or number to call.

Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call by dialing the numbers:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter a phone number.

3. Touch on the infotainment display to start dialing the number.

Searching Contacts Using the Keypad

To search for contacts using the keypad:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter partial phone numbers or contact names using the digits on the keypad to search.

   Results will show on the right side of the display. Touch one to place a call.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Accepting a Call

Use the steering wheel scroll wheel to select , otherwise press on steering wheel controls.

Declining a Call

Use steering wheel scroll wheel to select .

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth cell phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

Accepting a Call

Press on steering wheel controls to answer.

Declining a Call

Use steering wheel scroll wheel to select to decline.

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, touch Phone on the Home Page to display Call View. While in Call View, touch the call information of the call on hold to change calls.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth cell phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

To start a three-way call while in a current call:

1. In the Call View, touch Add Call to add another call.
2. Initiate the second call by selecting from Recents, Contacts, or Keypad.
3. When the second call is active, touch the merge icon to conference the three-way call together.

Ending a Call

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch on the infotainment display, next to a call, to end only that call.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system. Use the Keypad to enter the number.

Phone Settings

Touch ☎ on the home page and then touch Settings. The following may display:

- Contacts
- Active Call View
- OnStar Phone TTY Mode

Contacts

Sort Contacts : This sorts the displayed order of contact names by First Name or Last Name.

Re-sync Phone Contacts : This allows the contact list to re-sync by importing the contacts from the currently connected phone.

Active Call View

This setting allows whether answering incoming call will display the active call view.

Touch On or Off.

OnStar Phone TTY Mode

This setting enables or disables the OnStar Phone TTY Mode for OnStar Advisor Calls and OnStar Emergency Calls.

Touch Disable or Enable.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

If equipped, Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. If available and connected, the Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons will change from gray to white on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

For Wired Phone Projection

1. Download the Android Auto app to your smartphone from the Google Play store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the factory-provided phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, it is highly recommended to use the device's factory-provided USB cable, which should be replaced after significant wear to maintain connection quality. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.
3. When the phone is first connected to activate Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the message "Device Projection Privacy Consent" will appear.
   - Touch Continue to launch Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
   - Touch Disable to remove Apple CarPlay and Android Auto capability from the vehicle Settings menu. Other functions may still work.

For Wireless Phone Projection

1. Download the Android Auto app to your smartphone from the Google Play store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.

2. For first time connection, there are two ways to set up wireless projection:
   - Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the factory-provided phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, it is highly recommended to use the device's factory-provided USB cable, which should be replaced after significant wear to maintain connection quality. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.
   - Connecting the phone over Bluetooth. See *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *197* or *Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone)* ⇨ *198*.
3. Make sure wireless is turned on the phone for wireless projection to work.
4. When the phone is first connected to activate Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, agree to the terms and conditions on both the infotainment system and the phone. Touch Continue to launch Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
5. Follow the instructions on the phone.

The Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons on the Home Page will illuminate depending on the smartphone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch. If not, touch the Android Auto or Apple CarPlay icon on the Home Page to launch.

To disconnect the phones wireless projection:

1. Select Settings from the Home Page.
2. Select Phones
3. Touch the device name on the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto sub-menu.
4. Turn off Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Press ⌂ on the center stack to return to the Home Page.

Features are subject to change. For further information on how to set up Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle, see my.cadillac.com.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. Apple CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Data plan rates apply. For Android Auto support see https://support.google.com/androidauto. For Apple CarPlay support see www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Android Auto, Android, Google, Google Play, and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Press ⌂ on the center stack to exit Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. To enter back into Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, press and hold ⌂ on the center stack.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto can be disabled from the infotainment system. To do this, touch Home,

Settings, and then phone projection. Use the On/Off toggled to turn off Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Settings

Certain settings can be managed in the Owner Center sites when an account is established, and may be modified if other users have accessed the vehicle or created accounts. This may result in changes to the security or functionality of the infotainment system. Some settings may also be transferred to a new vehicle, if equipped. For instructions, in the U.S. see my.cadillac.com or in Canada see mycadillac.ca or moncadillac.ca.

Refer to the User Terms and Privacy Statement for important details. To view, touch the Settings icon on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

The settings menu is organized into three categories. Select the desired category by touching System, Vehicle, or Search.

For Vehicle settings, see *Vehicle Personalization* ➪ *139*.

To access the System menus:

1. Touch the Settings icon on the Home Page of the infotainment display.
2. Touch System to display a list of available options.
3. Touch to select the desired feature setting.
4. Touch the options on the infotainment display to change a setting.

The menu may contain the following:

Display

Touch and the following may display:

Head Up Display

- Head Up Display: Projects information and updates on the windshield. Select Off or On.
- Adjustment: Changes the display position and brightness on the windshield.
- Head Up Display Contents: Select the content shown on the Head Up Display (HUD).

Instrument Cluster

- Layout: Select what information is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Left View: Select what information is displayed on the left side of the instrument cluster. This is only available when gauge layout is selected.
- Right View: Select what information is displayed on the right side of the instrument cluster. This is only available when gauge layout is selected.
- Speed Information: Select the speed related information and features displayed on the instrument cluster.

Radio Display

- Rear Climate Status: Select whether rear climate information is displayed on the radio.
- Turn Display Off: Select to shut off the radio display.

Sounds

Touch and the following may display:

- Maximum Startup Volume: Adjust the volume limit of audio sources when the vehicle is started.

Voice

Touch and the following may display:

- Confirm More/Less: Select Confirm More or Confirm Less. Selecting Confirm More may improve voice recognition system accuracy.
- Prompt Length: Select the style used by the voice recognition system when interacting with it.
- Audio Feedback Speed: Select how quickly the voice recognition system speaks.
- Allow Prompt Interruptions: Select if voice commands can be spoken before voice prompts finish.
- Friendly Prompts: Select to adjust the formality of the voice recognition system.

Conversation Enhancement

Touch and the following may display:

- Conversation Enhancement: This system uses in-vehicle microphones to make it easier for passengers to communicate with each other. Select from Off, Normal, High, or Rear Microphone Off.

Time, Date, and Unit

Touch and the following may display:

- Time/Date: Select On to use GPS, RDS, and cellular network signals to keep the system time and date current. Select Off to manually set time and date using the infotainment display controls.
- Select Time Zone: Select the time zone for the time display or select Auto to use the time zone based on the vehicle location.
- Use 24-hour Format: Select to change the time display to a 24-hour clock format.
- Unit: Select US or Metric.

Phone Projection

Touch and the following may display:

Android Auto

- Android Auto: Select Off or On to allow interaction directly with the phone on the radio screen.
- Select Phone: Select an available phone from the list or press Add Phone to pair a new phone.

Apple CarPlay

- Apple CarPlay: Select Off or On to allow interaction directly with the phone on the radio screen.
- Select Phone: Select an available phone from the list or press Add Phone to pair a new phone.

Phones

Touch and the following may display:

Add Phone

- Pair Bluetooth Phone: Follow the on-screen instructions or select Bluetooth Help.

Connected

Shows connected phones.

Not Connected

Shows not connected phones.

Wi-Fi Hotspot

Touch and the following may display:

- Share Hotspot Data: Select On to allow devices to use the vehicle hotspot and its data.
- Wi-Fi Name: Select to change the vehicle's Wi-Fi network name.

- Wi-Fi Password: Select to change the vehicle's Wi-Fi network password.
- Connected Phones: Select to show a list of the vehicle's currently connected phones.
- Data Updating: Select to show the data plan details including the amount of data remaining.

Networks

This will show connected and available Wi-Fi networks.

If a 4G LTE data package is not active on the vehicle, the infotainment system can be connected to an external protected Wi-Fi network, such as a mobile device or home hotspot, to utilize connected services.

Device Remote Access

Touch and the following may display:

- Remote Access: Select to control devices with an installed OnStar app linked to this vehicle by USB or the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Language

This will set the display language used on the infotainment display and instrument cluster. It may also use the selected language for voice recognition and audio feedback. Select from the available languages.

Privacy

Touch and the following may display:

- Location Services: Select to allow apps and services to identify the vehicle location.
- Voice Recognition Sharing: Select to send voice sessions to a cloud-based voice recognition system.
- Types: This setting lists permissions considered sensitive by Android, and the apps that are currently allowed to use each permission.
- Used By Applications: This setting lists each application and its allowed permissions.

Software Updates

If equipped, the vehicle can download and install select software updates over a wireless connection. The system will prompt for certain updates to be downloaded and installed. There is also an option to check for updates manually.

To manually check for updates, touch Settings on the Home Page and select the System tab. Follow the on-screen prompts. There are two options available under Software Updates, "Check for Updates" and "Previous Updates". Selecting "Check for Updates", will check and list if any updates are available for this vehicle. "No updates available" will display if there is no update available. Selecting "Previous Updates" will list all the previous SW version(s) installed in the vehicle. The steps to check for, download, and install updates may vary by vehicle.

The vehicle can be used normally during the software download. Once the download is complete, there may be a prompt to accept the installation of the update upon the next ignition cycle or the next time the vehicle is shifted into P (Park). For most updates, the vehicle will be disabled and cannot be driven during the installation. The system will deliver

messages indicating success or error during and after the download and installation processes.

Downloading Over-the-Air vehicle software updates requires Internet connectivity, which can be accessed through the vehicle's built-in 4G LTE connection, if equipped and active. If required, data plans are provided by a third party. Optionally, a secure Wi-Fi hotspot such as a compatible mobile device hotspot, home hotspot, or public hotspot can be used. Applicable data rates may apply.

To connect the infotainment system to a secured mobile device hotspot, home hotspot, or public hotspot, touch Settings on the Home Page, select the System tab, followed by Wi-Fi Networks. Select the appropriate Wi-Fi network, and follow the on-screen prompts. Download speeds may vary.

On most compatible mobile devices, activation of the Wi-Fi hotspot is in the Settings menu under Mobile Network Sharing, Personal Hotspot, Mobile Hotspot, or similar.

Availability of Over-the-Air software updates varies by vehicle and country. Features are subject to change. For more information on this feature, see my.cadillac.com/learn.

Download Preferences

Touch and the following may display:

- Download Updates in Background: Allows updates to download without notification.

  Select Off or On.
- Download Updates via Wi-Fi: Allows updates to download using a Wi-Fi network when available.

  Select Off or On.

About

Touch to view the infotainment system software information.

Display Optimization

Touch to adjust the screen for best quality.

Running Applications

Touch to see a complete list of applications that are currently running on the infotainment system.

Return to Factory Settings

Touch and the following may display:

- Reset Vehicle Settings: Resets all vehicle settings for the current user.

  Touch Reset or Cancel.
- Erase Settings and Personal Data: Erases app data settings, user profiles, and personal data including navigation and mobile device data.

  Touch Erase or Cancel.
- Clear Default Applications: Resets preferred applications that have been set to open when selecting a function. No application data will be lost.

  Touch Clear or Cancel.

Vehicle

This menu allows adjustment of different vehicle features. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Search

Enter a setting keyword to find a specific setting.

Teen Driver

If equipped, this allows multiple keys to be registered for beginner drivers to encourage safe driving habits. When the vehicle is started with a Teen Driver key, it will automatically activate certain safety systems, allow setting of some features, and limit the use of others. The Report Card will record vehicle data about driving behavior that can be viewed later. When the vehicle is started with a registered key, the Driver Information Center (DIC) displays a message that Teen Driver is active.

To access:

1. Touch Settings on the Home Page, then touch Vehicle, and then Teen Driver.
2. Create a Personal Identification Number (PIN) by choosing a four-digit PIN. Re-enter the PIN to confirm. To change the PIN, touch Change PIN.

The PIN is required to:

- Register or unregister keys.
- Change Teen Driver settings.
- Change or clear the Teen Driver PIN.
- Access or delete Report Card data.

Register keys to activate Teen Driver and assign restrictions to the key:

Any vehicle key can be registered, up to a maximum of eight keys. Label the key to tell it apart from the other keys.

For a pushbutton start system:

1. Start the engine.
2. For automatic transmissions, the vehicle must be in P (Park). For manual transmissions, the vehicle must be stopped with the parking brake set.
3. From the Settings menu, touch Vehicle and then Teen Driver.
4. Enter the PIN.
5. Place the remote key you wish to register in the transmitter pocket. The key does not need to be the one that started the vehicle. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7* for transmitter pocket location.
6. From the Teen Driver menu, touch Setup Keys.
   - If the remote key has not previously been registered, the option to add the key displays. Touch Setup and a confirmation message displays. Teen Driver restrictions will be applied whenever this key is used to operate the vehicle.
   - If the remote key has already been registered, the option to remove the key displays. If Remove is touched, the remote key is no longer registered. A confirmation message displays, and Teen Driver restrictions will not be applied if this remote key is used to operate the vehicle.

In vehicles with a pushbutton start system, if a Teen Driver and a non-Teen Driver key are both present at start up, the vehicle will recognize the non-Teen Driver key to start the vehicle. The Teen Driver settings will not be active.

Manage Settings

Buckle To Drive : When turned ON, Buckle to Drive prevents the driver from shifting out of P (Park) for a period of time if driver seat belt, and on some vehicles, the passenger seat belt, is not buckled. See *Buckle To Drive* ⇨ *58* and *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Teen Driver Speed Limiter : Limits the maximum speed of the vehicle. When the speed limiter is turned on and the vehicle is started with a Teen Driver key, the DIC displays a message that the top speed is limited.

On certain vehicles, when the Speed Limiter is turned ON, the vehicle's maximum acceleration will be limited. The DIC will display a message that the acceleration is limited.

Teen Driver Speed Warning : Allows the speed warning to be turned on or off. Touch Set Teen Driver Speed Warning to set the warning speed.

Set Teen Driver Speed Warning : Displays a warning in the DIC when exceeding a selectable speed. Choose the desired speed warning level. The speed warning does not limit the speed of the vehicle.

Audio Volume Limit : Allows the audio volume limit to be turned on or off. Touch Set Audio Volume Limit to choose the maximum allowable audio volume level.

SiriusXM Explicit Content Filter (if equipped) : Allows the SiriusXM Explicit Content Filter to be turned ON or OFF. When ON, the teen driver will not be able to listen to SiriusXM stations that contain explicit content, and the Explicit Content Filter selection in the Audio Settings will be unavailable for change.

When Teen Driver is Active:

- The radio will mute when the driver, or in some vehicles, the front passenger seat belt, is not buckled. The audio from any device paired to the vehicle will also be muted.
- If an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device, is on the front passenger seat, it could cause the radio to mute. If this happens, remove the object from the seat. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *71*.
- Some safety systems, such as Forward Collision Alert, if equipped, cannot be turned off.
- The gap setting for the Forward Collision Alert and Adaptive Cruise Control, if equipped, cannot be changed.
- When trying to change a safety feature that is not configurable in Teen Driver, the DIC displays a message indicating that Teen Driver is active and the action is not available.
- Super Cruise, if equipped, is not available.
- Enhanced Low Fuel Warning (if equipped) – When the vehicle is low on fuel, the low fuel light on the instrument cluster flashes and the DIC low fuel warning cannot be dismissed.
- Do not tow a trailer.

Report Card

The vehicle owner must secure the driver's consent to record certain vehicle data when the vehicle is driven with a registered Teen Driver key. There is one Report Card per vehicle. Data is only recorded when a registered Teen Driver key is used to operate the vehicle.

The Report Card data is collected from the time Teen Driver is activated or the last time the Report Card was reset. The following items may be recorded:

- Distance Driven – the total distance driven.
- Maximum Speed – the maximum vehicle speed detected.
- Overspeed Warnings – the number of times the speed warning setting was exceeded.
- Wide Open Throttle – the number of times the accelerator pedal was pressed nearly all the way down.
- Forward Collision Alerts – the number of times the driver was notified when approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly and at potential risk for a crash.
- Forward Automatic Braking, also called Automatic Emergency Braking (if equipped) – the number of times the vehicle detected that a forward collision was imminent and applied the brakes.
- Reverse Automatic Braking (if equipped) – the number of times the vehicle detected that a rearward collision was imminent and applied the brakes.
- Traction Control – the number of times the Traction Control System activated to reduce wheel spin or loss of traction.
- Stability Control – the number of events which required the use of electronic stability control.
- Antilock Braking System Active – The number of Antilock Brake System activations.
- Tailgating Alerts – the number of times the driver was alerted for following a vehicle ahead too closely.

Report Card Data

Cumulative Data is saved for all trips until the Report Card is reset or until the maximum count is exceeded. If the maximum count is exceeded for a Report Card line item, that item will no longer be updated in the Report Card until it is reset. Each item will report a maximum of 1,000 counts. The distance driven will report a maximum of 64,374 km (40,000 mi).

To delete Report Card data, do one of the following:

- From the Report Card display, touch Reset.
- Touch Clear All Teen Keys and PIN from the Teen Driver menu. This will also unregister any Teen Driver keys and delete the PIN.

Forgotten PIN

See your dealer to reset the PIN.

Trademarks and License Agreements

FCC Information

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *476*.

Made for iPod iPhone

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance. iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

SiriusXM

If you decide to continue service after your trial, your selected subscription plan will automatically renew thereafter. You will be charged at then-current rates. Fees and taxes apply. Please see the SiriusXM Customer Agreement at siriusxm.com for complete terms and how to cancel, which includes calling SiriusXM at 1-866-635-2349. All fees and programming are subject to change.

Fees and Taxes: Subscription fee, taxes, one time activation fee, and other fees may apply. Subscription fee is consumer only. All fees and programming subject to change. Subscriptions subject to Customer Agreement available at www.siriusxm.com. SiriusXM service is only available in the 48 contiguous United States and Canada.

In Canada: Some deterioration of service may occur in extreme northern latitudes. This is beyond the control of SiriusXM Satellite Radio.

Explicit Language Notice: Channels with frequent explicit language are indicated with an “XL” preceding the channel name. Channel blocking is available for SiriusXM Satellite Radio receivers by notifying SiriusXM:

- USA Customers — See www.siriusxm.com or call 1-888-601–6296.
- Canada Customers — See www.siriusxm.ca or call 1-877-438-9677.

It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate, or otherwise make available any technology or software incorporated in receivers compatible with the SiriusXM Satellite Radio System or that support the SiriusXM website, the Online Service or any of its content. Furthermore, the AMBER voice compression software included in this product is protected by

intellectual property rights including patent rights, copyrights, and trade secrets of Digital Voice Systems, Inc.

General Requirements:

1. A License Agreement from SiriusXM is required for any product that incorporates SiriusXM Technology and/or for use of any of the SiriusXM marks to be manufactured, distributed, or marketed in the SiriusXM Service Area.
2. For products to be distributed, marketed, and/or sold in Canada, a separate agreement is required with Canadian Satellite Radio Inc. (operating as SiriusXM Canada).

TouchSense Technology and TouchSense System 1000 Series Licensed from Immersion Corporation. TouchSense System 1000 protected under one or more of the U.S. Patents at the following address www.immersion.com/patent-marking.html and other patents pending.

HD Radio Technology

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. For patents see https://dts.com/patents. HD Radio and the HD, HD Radio, and “ARC” logos are registered trademarks or trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Java

Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Schedule I: Gracenote EULA

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information see www.gracenote.com.

Music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote may apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB,

MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote

Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2014. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

MPEG4–AVC (H.264)

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTPS://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTPS://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

MPEG4–Visual

USE OF THIS PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

MP3

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

WMV/WMA

This product includes technology owned by Microsoft Corporation and under a license from Microsoft Licensing, GP. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft Corporation and/or Microsoft Licensing, GP as applicable.

Map End User License Agreement

END USER TERMS

The Map Data SD card ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE North America, LLC ("HERE") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

HERE holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

© United States Postal Service 2013. Prices are not established, controlled, or approved by the United States Postal Service. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only: You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, noncommercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used, and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS" AND HARMAN (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY HARMAN (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Disclaimer of Liability

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories, and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations. Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or

oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims, and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Maps for Life

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

NAME:

HERE North America, LLC

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2014 HERE North America, LLC. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Unicode

Copyright © 1991-2010 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in https://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Free Type Project

Portions of this software are copyright © 2010 The FreeType Project (https://www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

Open Source SW

Further information concerning the OSS licenses is shown in the infotainment display.

QNX

Portions of this software are copyright © 2008-2011, QNX Software Systems. All rights reserved.

Part C – EULA

Copyright © 2011, Software Systems GmbH & Co. KG. All Rights Reserved.

The product you have purchased ("Product") contains Software (Runtime Configuration No. 505962; "Software") which is distributed by or on behalf of the Product manufacturer "Manufacturer") under license from Software Systems Co. ("QSSC"). You may only use the Software in the Product and in compliance with the license terms below.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, QSSC hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in the Product for the purpose intended by the Manufacturer. If permitted by the Manufacturer, or by applicable law, you may make one backup copy of the Software as part of the Product software. QSSC and its licensors reserve all license+C31 rights not expressly granted herein, and retain all right, title and interest in and to all copies of the Software, including all intellectual property rights therein. Unless required by applicable law you may not reproduce, distribute or transfer, or de-compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to unbundle, reverse engineer, modify or create derivative works of, the Software. You agree: (1) not to remove, cover or alter any proprietary notices, labels or marks in or on the Software, and to ensure that all copies bear any notice contained on the original; and (2) not to export the Product or the Software in contravention of applicable export control laws.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, QSSC AND ITS LICENSORS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY WARRANTIES OR OTHER PROVISIONS OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) THAT DIFFER FROM THIS LICENSE ARE OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) ALONE AND NOT BY QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS. YOU ASSUME ANY RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE UNDER THIS LICENSE.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW (SUCH AS IN THE CASE OF DELIBERATE OR GROSSLY NEGLIGENT ACTS), IN NO EVENT SHALL QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS BE LIABLE TO YOU UNDER ANY LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER IN TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT OR OTHERWISE, FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER ARISING AS A RESULT OF THIS LICENSE OR OUT OF THE

USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, PRODUCT FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES), EVEN IF QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Linotype

Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype Corp. registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions in the name of Linotype Corp. or its licensee Linotype GmbH.

Usage in text form of each of the Licensed Trademarks is:

The trademark attribution requirements for the Licensed Trademarks may be viewed at https://www.linotype.com/2061-19414/trademarks.html.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 220
Rear Climate Control System 224

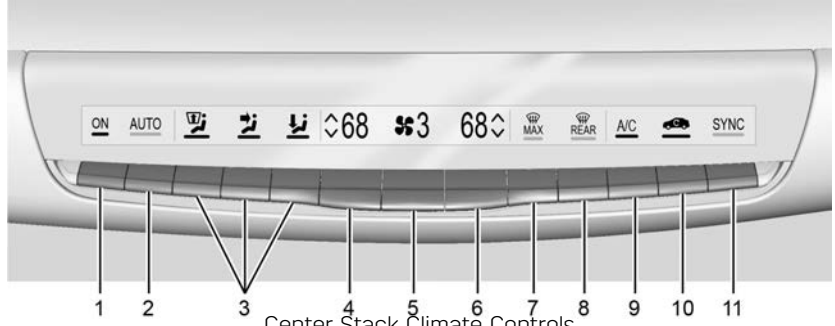
Air Vents
Air Vents 226

Maintenance
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 227
Service 228

Climate Control Systems

Dual Automatic Climate Control System

The climate control buttons on the center stack and on the climate control display are used to adjust the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



Center Stack Climate Controls

1. ON/OFF
2. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
3. Air distribution
4. Driver temperature
5. Fan Control
6. Passenger Temperature
7. Max Defrost
8. Rear Window Defogger
9. Air Conditioning
10. Recirculation
11. Sync

Automatic Operation

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When AUTO is underlined, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air delivery mode or fan setting is manually adjusted, the auto indicator turns off and the display will show the selected settings. Auto operation can be turned off individually for climate settings.

For automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilize. Then adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

English units can be changed to metric units through the instrument cluster. See “Cluster Options Menu” under *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*.

OFF : Press OFF to turn the fan on or off. When off is selected, the system will stop air from flowing into the cabin. If on is selected or any other buttons are pressed, the climate control system will turn on and operate at the current setting.

∧ / ∨ : The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Press to decrease or lift to increase the temperature. Press or lift and hold to rapidly increase or decrease the temperature.

SYNC : Touch SYNC on the climate control display to link all climate zone settings to the driver settings. Adjust the driver side temperature control to change the linked temperature. When the passenger setting is adjusted, the SYNC underline turns off.

Rear : Touch Rear on the infotainment screen to open the rear climate control screen. The rear climate control settings can now be adjusted from the front passenger area.

Manual Operation

∨ ∧ : Press to decrease or lift to increase the fan speed. Press or lift and hold the fan controls to adjust speed more quickly. The fan speed setting displays. Any adjustment of the fan speed cancels automatic fan control and the fan can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To turn off the fan and climate control system, press OFF on the center stack climate controls. The airflow will be blocked from entering in all air delivery modes, except defrost.

The maximum automatic fan speed can be set to low, medium, or high. To adjust Auto Fan Speed, see “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Air Delivery Mode Control : When the climate information is displayed, press the desired air delivery mode on the climate control display to change

the direction of the airflow. The selected air delivery mode button is lit. Pressing any of the air delivery buttons cancels automatic air delivery control and the direction of the airflow can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

: Air is directed to the windshield, outboard a/c outlets, and side window outlets.

: Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

: Air is primarily directed to the floor outlets, with some air directed to the windshield, outboard a/c outlets, and side window outlets.

MAX **:** Clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield. Press MAX to turn on or off. Changing the air delivery mode also turns the defrost off.

A/C : Touch AC on the climate control display to turn the automatic air conditioning on or off. If the fan is turned off or the outside temperature falls below freezing, the air conditioner will not run.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs as needed.

Automatic Air Recirculation : When the AUTO indicator light is on, the air is automatically recirculated as needed to help quickly cool the inside of the vehicle.

: Press to alternate between recirculating air inside the vehicle or pulling in outside air. The indicator light on the button is lit when recirculation mode is active. This helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle and reduce the entry of outside air and odors.

Pressing this button cancels automatic recirculation. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation; recirculation runs automatically as needed.

Manual recirculation mode is not available when in Defrost or some air distribution modes with air to the windshield.

Auto Defog : The climate control system uses a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply, turn on the air conditioner, and direct more air to the windshield. If the climate control system does not detect possible window fogging, it returns to normal operation. To turn Auto Defog off or on, see “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Rear Window Defogger

REAR **:** Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window defogger is on.

The rear window defogger only works when the ignition is on. The defogger turns off if the ignition is turned off or to ACC/ACCESSORY.

The rear window defogger can be set to automatic operation. When Auto Rear Defog is selected, the rear window defogger turns on automatically when the vehicle is first

started in cold weather and turns off when the vehicle is warmed. To turn Auto Rear Defog on or off, see "Climate and Air Quality" under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

The heated outside rearview mirrors turn on when the rear window defogger button is on and help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirrors.

Caution

Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windshield and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window defogger grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Driver and Passenger Heated and Cooled Seats : Press or to heat the driver or passenger seatback only.

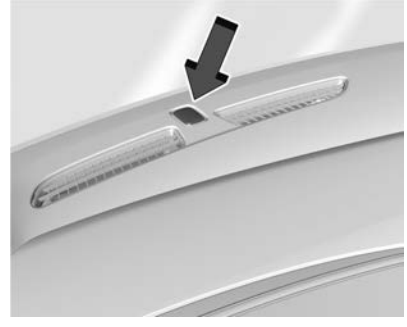
Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

Press or to cool the driver or passenger seat.

There are also auto heated and cooled seats, for more information see *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *47*.

Remote Start Climate Control Operation : The climate control system may run when the vehicle is started remotely. The rear defog may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear defog indicator light does not come on during a remote start. If equipped with heated or cooled seats, they may come on during a remote start. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *13* and *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *47*.

Sensor



The solar sensor, on top of the instrument panel near the windshield, monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

If the sensor is covered, the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

Afterblow Feature

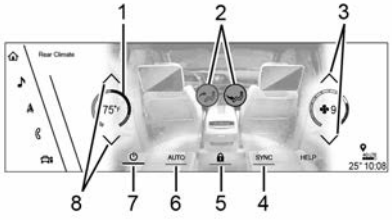
If equipped, under certain conditions, the fan may stay on or may turn on and off several times after you turn off and lock the vehicle. This is normal.

Rear Climate Control System

The rear climate control system is on the rear of the center console. The settings can be adjusted with the rear climate controls and the rear climate display.

Rear Climate Controls

1. Heated Rear Seats
2. Air Delivery Mode Control
3. Fan Control
4. Temperature Control
5. AUTO (Automatic Operation) ⏻ (On/Off)



Rear Climate Display

1. Temperature Setting
2. Air Delivery Mode Control
3. Fan Control
4. SYNC (Synchronized Temperatures)
5. Rear Control Lockout
6. Rear AUTO (Automatic Operation)
7. REAR ⏻ (On/Off)
8. Temperature Control

Rear : Touch to open the rear climate control screen. The rear climate control settings can now be adjusted from the front passenger area.

⏻ : Press ⏻ or REAR ⏻ to turn the rear climate control system on or off. If the rear climate control system is turned off using REAR ⏻ on the rear climate display, the ⏻ button and the temperature or air delivery mode buttons on the rear climate controls must be pressed within five seconds to turn it back on.

SYNC : Touch SYNC on the rear climate display to match the rear climate control temperature to the front climate control driver temperature. The SYNC button will be lit. Press the temperature, MODE, or AUTO button to unlink the set driver and rear temperatures. The SYNC button turns off.

Rear Control Lockout : Touch Rear Control Lockout on the rear climate display to lock or unlock control of the rear climate control system from the front climate control display. When locked the rear climate control system cannot be adjusted from the rear climate controls on the rear of the center console.

Automatic Operation

Rear AUTO : Touch to turn on or off. The air delivery and fan speed are controlled automatically. The AUTO indicator appears on the display on the rear of the center console. If the Mode or fan control buttons are manually adjusted, this cancels the automatic operation.

Manual Operation

∧ /∨ ∨ : Touch or press the fan controls on the rear climate display or on the rear of the center console to increase or decrease the airflow. Pressing ∧ when the system is off will turn the system on. The air delivery mode remains in its previous setting.

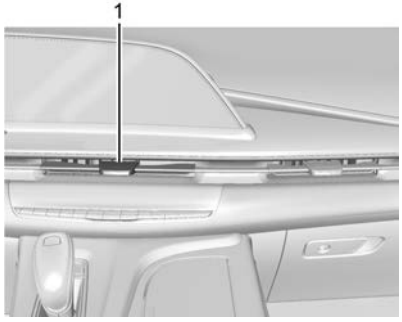
∧ / ∨ : Touch or press and hold the rear temperature controls on the rear climate display or on the rear of the center console to adjust the rear passenger temperature. Press ∧ for warmer air and press ∨ for cooler air.

/ / : Touch the desired mode on the rear climate display or the MODE button on the rear of the center console to change the direction of the airflow in the rear seating area.

or : Press or to heat the left or right outboard seat cushion. See *Heated Rear Seats* ⇨ *53*.

Air Vents

Adjustable air vents are in the center and on the side of the instrument panel.



1. Slider Knob

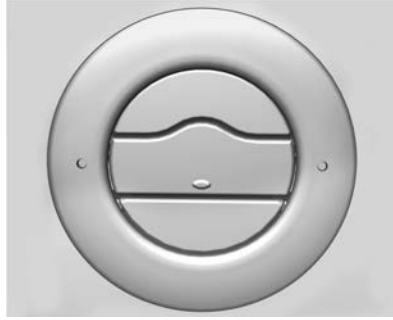
Move the slider knobs (1) to change the direction of the airflow and to shut off the air flow. The horizontal vanes can rotate up and down.
A metallic click sound will be heard every time they pass through the horizontal position.

Operation Tips

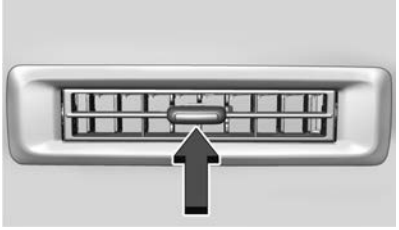
- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from the air inlets at the base of the windshield that could block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Clear snow off the hood to improve visibility and help decrease moisture drawn into the vehicle.
- When you enter a vehicle in cold weather, press the fan up button to the maximum fan level before driving. This helps clear the intake ducts of snow and moisture, and reduces the chance of fogging the inside of the window.
- Keep the air path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside of the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.

Rear System Air Vents

This vehicle has four round or rectangular air vents in the headliner above the second and third row seats.



Press on the center vane rear edge to open the round outlet. Use the center vane to rotate the outlet and change the direction of the airflow. Press on the center vane leading edge to shut off the air flow.



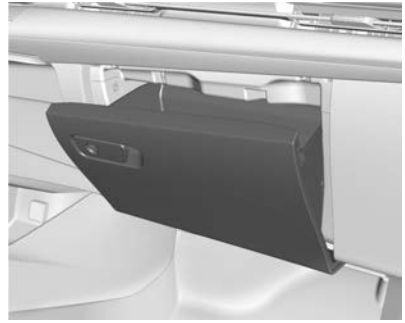
Move the slider knob and rotate the outlet barrel left to right to change the direction of the air flow and to shut off the air flow.

Maintenance

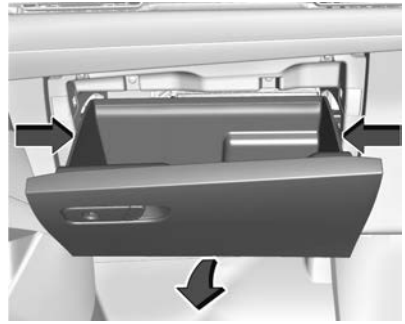
Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter reduces the dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air that is pulled into the vehicle.

The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. To find out what type of filter to use, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts* ⇨ *462*.

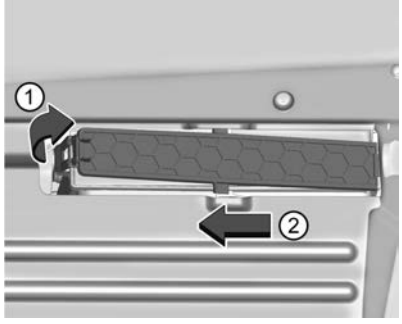


1. Open the glove box door completely.



2. Press the sides of the glove box bin inward to clear the stoppers and rotate downward to lower the bin.

3. Unhook the string dampener to fully remove the glove box bin.



4. Pull the lever (1) on the left side of the filter door and slide left (2), then remove the door. Remove the old filter.
5. Install the new air filter.
6. Reinstall the filter door.
7. Reverse the steps to reinstall the glove box.

See your dealer if additional assistance is needed.

Service

All vehicles have a label underhood that identifies the refrigerant used in the vehicle. The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. The air conditioning evaporator should never be repaired or replaced by one from a salvage vehicle. It should only be replaced by a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.

During service, all refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and may also create unsafe conditions based on inhalation, combustion, frostbite, or other health-based concerns.

The air conditioning system requires periodic maintenance. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *452*.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information

Driving for Better Fuel Economy 230
Distracted Driving 230
Defensive Driving 231
Impaired Driving 231
Control of a Vehicle 231
Braking 231
Steering 232
Off-Road Recovery 233
Loss of Control 233
Off-Road Driving 234
Driving on Wet Roads 237
Hill and Mountain Roads 238
Winter Driving 239
If the Vehicle Is Stuck 240
Vehicle Load Limits 240

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In 244
Ignition Positions 245
Starting the Engine 246
Stop/Start System 247
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 249
Shifting Into Park 249
Shifting out of Park 250
Parking over Things That Burn 250
Dynamic Fuel Management 250
Extended Parking 250

Engine Exhaust

Engine Exhaust 251
Running the Vehicle While Parked 251

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission 251
Manual Mode 255

Drive Systems

Four-Wheel Drive 256

Brakes

Electric Brake Boost 261
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 261
Electric Parking Brake 261
Brake Assist 263
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 263
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) 263

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 264
Driver Mode Control 266
Magnetic Ride Control 269
Locking Rear Axle 269
Four Corner Air Suspension System 269

Cruise Control

Cruise Control 272
Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced) 274
Super Cruise 285

Driver Assistance Systems

Driver Assistance Systems 301
Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing 302
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 303
Surround Vision System 303
Park Assist 311
Automatic Parking Assist (APA) 313
Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) 315
Rear Pedestrian Alert 317
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System 318
Assistance Systems for Driving 318
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 318
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) 320

Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System 322
Night Vision System 323
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 326
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 326
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 329

Fuel

Top Tier Fuel 331
Recommended Fuel 331
Prohibited Fuels 332
Fuels in Foreign Countries 332
Fuel Additives 332
Filling the Tank 332
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 334

Trailer Towing

General Towing Information 334
Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips 335
Trailer Towing 339
Towing Equipment 343
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) 352
Trailering App 354

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment ... 365

Driving Information

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible:

- Set the climate controls to the desired temperature after the engine is started, or turn them off when not required.
- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Distracted Driving

Distraction comes in many forms and can take your focus from the task of driving. Exercise good judgment and do not let other activities divert your attention away from the road. Many local governments have enacted laws regarding driver distraction. Become familiar with the local laws in your area.

To avoid distracted driving, keep your eyes on the road, keep your hands on the steering wheel, and focus your attention on driving.

- Do not use a phone in demanding driving situations. Use a hands-free method to place or receive necessary phone calls.
- Watch the road. Do not read, take notes, or look up information on phones or other electronic devices.
- Designate a front seat passenger to handle potential distractions.

- Become familiar with vehicle features before driving, such as programming favorite radio stations and adjusting climate control and seat settings. Program all trip information into any navigation device prior to driving.
- Wait until the vehicle is parked to retrieve items that have fallen to the floor.
- Stop or park the vehicle to tend to children.
- Keep pets in an appropriate carrier or restraint.
- Avoid stressful conversations while driving, whether with a passenger or on a cell phone.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Refer to the infotainment section for more information on using that system and the navigation system, if equipped, including pairing and using a cell phone.

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means "always expect the unexpected." The first step in driving defensively is to wear the seat belt. See *Seat Belts* ⇨ *57*.

- Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they may do and be ready.
- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

Impaired Driving

Death and injury associated with impaired driving is a global tragedy.

⚠ Warning

Drinking alcohol or taking drugs and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol or drugs. You can have a

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking or taking drugs.

Do not drive while under the influence of alcohol or drugs, or ride with a driver who has been drinking or is impaired by drugs. Find alternate transportation home; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will remain sober.

Control of a Vehicle

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

Braking

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average driver reaction time is about three-quarters of a second. In that time, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h

(60 mph) travels 20 m (66 ft), which could be a lot of distance in an emergency.

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. Doing so could make the pedal harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Steering

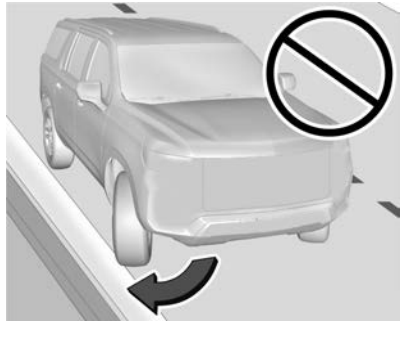
Caution

To avoid damage to the steering system, do not drive over curbs, parking barriers, or similar objects at speeds greater than 3 km/h

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

(1 mph). Use care when driving over other objects such as lane dividers and speed bumps. Damage caused by misuse of the vehicle is not covered by the vehicle warranty.



Electric Power Steering

This vehicle has electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If power steering assist is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort.

If the steering assist is used for an extended period of time while the vehicle is not moving, power assist may be reduced.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel, and is held in that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

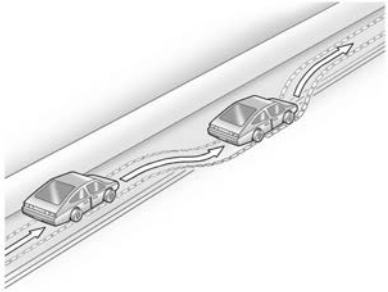
Curve Tips

- Take curves at a reasonable speed.
- Reduce speed before entering a curve.
- Maintain a reasonable steady speed through the curve.
- Wait until the vehicle is out of the curve before accelerating gently into the straightaway.

Steering in Emergencies

- There are some situations when steering around a problem may be more effective than braking.
- Holding both sides of the steering wheel allows you to turn 180 degrees without removing a hand.
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) allows steering while braking.

Off-Road Recovery



The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving. Follow these tips:

1. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer the vehicle so that it straddles the edge of the pavement.
2. Turn the steering wheel about one-eighth of a turn, until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge.
3. Turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Loss of Control

Skidding

There are three types of skids that correspond to the vehicle's three control systems:

- Braking Skid — wheels are not rolling.
- Steering or Cornering Skid — too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force.
- Acceleration Skid — too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

If the vehicle starts to slide, follow these suggestions:

- Ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and steer the way you want the vehicle to go. The vehicle may straighten out. Be ready for a second skid if it occurs.
- Slow down and adjust your driving according to weather conditions. Stopping distance can be longer and vehicle control can be affected when traction is reduced by water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material on the road. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.
- Try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide.

Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

Off-Road Driving

Four-wheel-drive vehicles can be used for off-road driving. Vehicles without four-wheel drive and vehicles not equipped with All Terrain (AT) or On-Off Road (OOR) tires must not be driven off-road except on a level, solid surface. For contact information about the original equipment tires, see the warranty manual.

One of the best ways for successful off-road driving is to control the speed.

⚠ Warning

When driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. You and your passengers should always wear seat belts.

Before Driving Off-Road

- Have all necessary maintenance and service work completed.
- Fuel the vehicle, fill fluid levels, and check inflation pressure in all tires, including the spare, if equipped.
- Read all the information about four-wheel-drive vehicles in this manual.
- Know the local laws that apply to off-road driving.

Loading the Vehicle for Off-Road Driving

⚠ Warning

- Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.
- Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and as low as possible. The heaviest things should be on the floor, forward of the rear axle.
- Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof.

For more information about loading the vehicle, see *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240* and *Tires* ⇨ *400*.

Environmental Concerns

- Always use established trails, roads, and areas that have been set aside for public off-road recreational driving and obey all posted regulations.
- Do not damage shrubs, flowers, trees, or grasses or disturb wildlife.
- Do not park over things that burn. See *Parking over Things That Burn* ⇨ *250*.

Driving on Hills

Driving safely on hills requires good judgment and an understanding of what the vehicle can and cannot do.

⚠ Warning

Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. Driving up hills can cause the vehicle to stall. Driving down hills can cause loss of control. Driving across hills can cause a rollover. You could be injured or killed. Do not drive on steep hills.

Before driving on a hill, assess the steepness, traction, and obstructions. If the terrain ahead cannot be seen, get out of the vehicle and walk the hill before driving further.

When driving on hills:

- Use a low gear and keep a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Maintain a slow speed.
- When possible, drive straight up or down the hill.
- Slow down when approaching the top of the hill.
- Use headlamps even during the day to make the vehicle more visible.

⚠ Warning

Driving to the top of a hill at high speed can cause a crash. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.

- Never go downhill forward or backward with either the transmission or transfer case in N (Neutral). The brakes could overheat and you could lose control.

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle has the two-speed automatic or electronic transfer case, shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause your vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). This is because the N (Neutral) position on the transfer case overrides the transmission. You or someone else could be injured. If leaving the vehicle, set the parking brake and shift the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

transmission to P (Park). Shift the transfer case to any position but N (Neutral).

- When driving down a hill, keep the vehicle headed straight down. Use a low gear because the engine will work with the brakes to slow the vehicle and help keep the vehicle under control.

⚠ Warning

Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and you or others could be injured or killed. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.

If the vehicle stalls on a hill:

1. Apply the brakes to stop the vehicle, and then apply the parking brake.

2. Shift into P (Park) and then restart the engine.
   - If driving uphill when the vehicle stalls, shift to R (Reverse), release the parking brake, and back straight down.
   - Never try to turn the vehicle around. If the hill is steep enough to stall the vehicle, it is steep enough to cause it to roll over.
   - If you cannot make it up the hill, back straight down the hill.
   - Never back down a hill in N (Neutral) using only the brake. The vehicle can roll backward quickly and you could lose control.
   - If driving downhill when the vehicle stalls, shift to a lower gear, release the parking brake, and drive straight down the hill.
3. If the vehicle cannot be restarted after stalling, set the parking brake, shift into P (Park), and turn the vehicle off.
   3.1. Leave the vehicle and seek help.
   3.2. Stay clear of the path the vehicle would take if it rolled downhill.

- Avoid turns that take the vehicle across the incline of the hill. A hill that can be driven straight up or down might be too steep to drive across. Driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels, which could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.
- Surface conditions can be a problem. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause the tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it — a rock, a rut, etc. — and roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline more severe. If a rock is driven across with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, the vehicle can tilt even more.
- If an incline must be driven across, and the vehicle starts to slide, turn downhill. This should help straighten out the vehicle and prevent the side slipping.

⚠ Warning

Getting out of the vehicle on the downhill side when stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.

Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow, or Ice

Use a low gear when driving in mud — the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. Keep the vehicle moving to avoid getting stuck.

Traction changes when driving on sand. On loose sand, such as on beaches or sand dunes, the tires tend to sink into the sand. This affects steering, accelerating, and braking. Drive at a reduced speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Traction is reduced on hard packed snow and ice and it is easy to lose control. Reduce vehicle speed when driving on hard packed snow and ice.

⚠ Warning

Driving on frozen lakes, ponds, or rivers can be dangerous. Ice conditions vary greatly and the vehicle could fall through the ice; you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.

Driving in Water

⚠ Warning

Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it is only shallow water, it can still wash away the ground from under your tires. Traction could be lost, and the vehicle could roll over. Do not drive through rushing water.

Caution

Do not drive through standing water if it is deep enough to cover the wheel hubs, axles, or exhaust pipe. Deep water can damage the axle and other vehicle parts.

If the standing water is not too deep, drive through it slowly. At faster speeds, water can get into the engine and cause it to stall. Stalling can occur if the exhaust pipe is under water. Do not turn off the ignition when driving through water. If the exhaust pipe is under water, the engine will not start. When going through water, the brakes get wet and it may take longer to stop. See “Driving on Wet Roads” later in this section.

After Off-Road Driving

Remove any brush or debris that has collected on the underbody or chassis, or under the hood. These accumulations can be a fire hazard.

After operation in mud or sand, have the brake linings cleaned and checked. These substances can cause glazing and uneven braking. Check the body structure, driveline, steering, suspension, wheels, tires, and exhaust system for damage and check the fuel lines and cooling system for any leakage.

More frequent maintenance service is required. See the *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *452*.

Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ Warning

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires* ⇨ *400*.
- Turn off cruise control.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, and cooling system.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

⚠ Warning

Using the brakes to slow the vehicle on a long downhill slope can cause brake overheating, can reduce brake performance, and could result in a loss of braking. Shift the transmission to a lower gear to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ Warning

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. This can cause overheating of the brakes and loss of steering assist. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear.

- Drive at speeds that keep the vehicle in its own lane. Do not swing wide or cross the center line.
- Be alert on top of hills; something could be in your lane (e.g., stalled car, crash).

- Pay attention to special road signs (e.g., falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

Winter Driving

Driving on Snow or Ice

Caution

To avoid damage to the wheels and brake components, always clear snow and ice from inside the wheels and underneath the vehicle before driving.

Snow or ice between the tires and the road creates less traction or grip, so drive carefully. Wet ice can occur at about 0 °C (32 °F) when freezing rain begins to fall. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated.

For Slippery Road Driving:

- Accelerate gently. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick.
- Turn on Traction Control. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *264*.
- The Antilock Brake System (ABS) improves vehicle stability during hard stops, but the brakes should be applied sooner than when on dry pavement. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ *261*.
- Allow greater following distance and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.
- Turn off cruise control.

Cold Weather Mode

In very low temperatures, a cold weather message may display on the Driver Information Center (DIC). The engine speed, transmission shift patterns, and cabin fan speed may operate differently to enable the vehicle to warm up quicker. You can manually override the cabin fan speed in cold weather mode.

Blizzard Conditions

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and signal for help. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. If possible, use Roadside Service. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *471*. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

⚠ Warning

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in snow:

- Clear snow from the base of the vehicle, especially any blocking the exhaust pipe.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the vehicle side that is away from the wind, to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to circulate the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See "Climate Control Systems."

For more information about CO, see *Engine Exhaust* ➪ *251*.

To save fuel, run the engine for short periods to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and partially close the window. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes time for help to arrive, when running the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible, to save fuel.

If the Vehicle Is Stuck

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.

If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method. See *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control* ➪ *264*.

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 56 km/h (35 mph).

Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a low forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing the Vehicle* ➪ *437*.

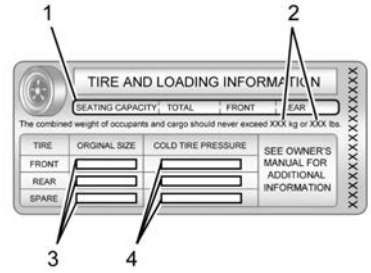
Vehicle Load Limits

It is very important to know how much weight the vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on the vehicle may show how much weight it was designed to carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification/Tire label.

⚠ Warning

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also reduce stopping performance, damage the tires, and shorten the life of the vehicle.

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the center pillar (B-pillar). The tire and loading information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (1), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (2) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the size of the original equipment tires (3) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (4). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires* ⇨ *400* and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406*.

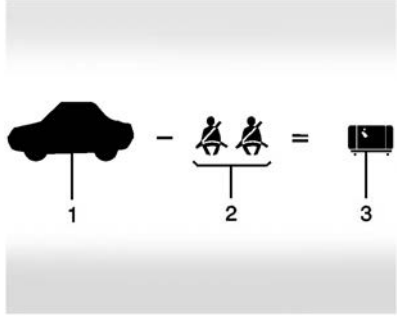
There is also important loading information on the vehicle Certification/Tire label. It may show the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axles. See “Certification/Tire Label” later in this section.

“Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit–

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

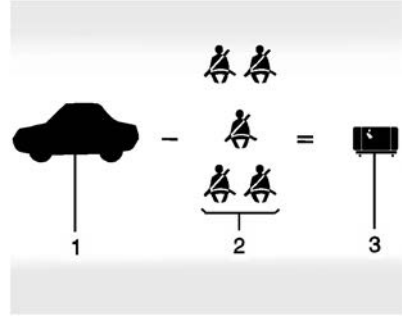
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle."

See *Trailer Towing* ⇨ *339* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules, and trailering tips.



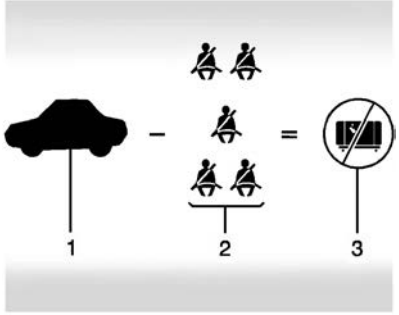
Example 1

1. Maximum Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 2 = 136 kg (300 lbs)
3. Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = 317 kg (700 lbs)



Example 2

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 5 = 136 kg (750 lbs)
3. Available Cargo Weight = 113 kg (250 lbs)

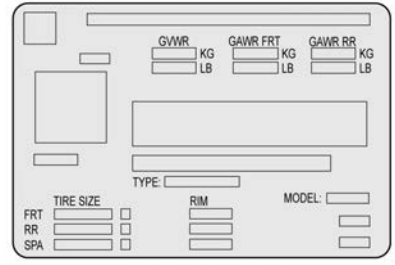


Example 3

1. Maximum Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 91 kg (200 lbs) × 5 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)
3. Available Cargo Weight = 0 kg (0 lbs)

Refer to the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about the vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed the vehicle's capacity weight.

Certification/Tire Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Certification/Tire label is attached to the B-pillar. The label may show the size of the vehicle's original tires and the inflation pressures needed to obtain the gross weight capacity of the vehicle. This is called Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo.

The Certification/Tire label may also show the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). To find out the actual loads on the front and rear axles, weigh the vehicle at a weigh station. Your dealer can help with this. Be sure to spread the load equally on both sides of the center line.

The warranty does not cover parts or components that fail because of overloading.

The label will help determine how much cargo and installed equipment the vehicle can carry.

Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change the weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help load the vehicle properly.

⚠ Warning

Things you put inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of the vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.

There is also important loading information for off-road driving in this manual. See "Loading the Vehicle for Off-Road Driving" under *Off-Road Driving* ⇨ *234*.

Add-On Equipment

There may be a limit on how many people can be inside the vehicle when carrying removable items. Be sure to weigh the vehicle before buying and installing the new equipment.

Caution

Overloading the vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not overload the vehicle.

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the front or rear axle.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

Caution

The vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:

- Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 800 km (500 mi). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 300 km (200 mi) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Trailer Towing* ⇨ *339* for the trailer towing capabilities of the vehicle and more information.

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

On new vehicles, the various mechanical and electrical systems experience a "break-in" period during the first 6 400 km (4,000 mi) of routine driving. As the vehicle is driven, the mechanical systems adjust to provide optimal fuel economy and transmission shift performance.

Electrical systems will adapt and calibrate during the break-in period. A one-time occurrence of clicks and similar vehicle noises is normal during this process.

Normal driving charges the vehicle's battery to achieve the best operation of the vehicle, including fuel economy and the Stop/Start System. See *Stop/Start System* ⇨ *247*.

Ignition Positions

Vehicles equipped with Keyless Access have pushbutton starting.

The Remote Key must be in the vehicle for the system to operate. If the pushbutton start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio antenna signal causing interference to the Keyless Access system. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.

To shift out of P (Park), the ignition must be on or in Service Mode, and the brake pedal must be applied.

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

Stopping the Engine/LOCK/OFF (No Indicator Lights) : When the vehicle is stopped, press ENGINE START/STOP once to turn the engine off.

If the vehicle is in P (Park), the ignition will turn off, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *249*.

If the vehicle is not in P (Park), the ignition will return to ACC/ACCESSORY and display the message SHIFT TO PARK in the Driver Information Center (DIC). When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition system will turn off.

The vehicle may have an electric steering column lock. The lock is activated when the ignition is turned off and either front door is opened.

A sound may be heard as the lock actuates or releases. The steering column lock may not release with the wheels turned off center. If this happens, the vehicle may not start. Move the steering wheel from left to right while attempting to start the vehicle. If this does not work, the vehicle needs service.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop.
4. Hold the brake pedal down and shift to P (Park). The shift lever must be in P (Park) to turn the ignition off.
5. Continue to hold the brake pedal down.
6. Set the parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *261*.
7. Press ENGINE START/STOP once to turn the ignition off.
8. Release the brake pedal.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, press and hold ENGINE START/STOP for longer than two seconds, or press twice in five seconds.

ACC/ACCESSORY (Amber Indicator Light) : This mode allows some electrical accessories to be used when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button one time without the brake pedal applied will place the ignition system in ACC/ACCESSORY.

The ignition will switch from ACC/ACCESSORY to off after five minutes to prevent battery rundown.

ON/RUN/START (Green Indicator Light) : This mode is for driving and starting. With the ignition off, and the brake pedal applied, pressing the button once will turn the ignition on. Once engine cranking begins, release the button. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *246*.

Service Mode

This power mode is available for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. With the vehicle off, and the brake pedal not applied, pressing and holding the button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Service Mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do when the ignition is on, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Service Mode. Press the button again to turn the ignition off.

Starting the Engine

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

Caution

If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *365*.

Shift the vehicle into P (Park) or N (Neutral). To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Caution

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

Starting Procedure

1. The remote key must be in the vehicle. Press ENGINE START/STOP with the brake pedal applied. When the engine begins cranking, let go of the button.

   The idle speed will go down as the engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

   When the low fuel warning light is on and the FUEL LEVEL LOW message is displayed in the Driver Information Center (DIC), press the ENGINE START/STOP position to continue engine cranking.

Caution

Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by trying to start the engine immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.

2. If the engine does not start after five to 10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below –18 °C or 0 °F), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there while pressing ENGINE START/STOP for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the button and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Stop/Start System

If equipped and enabled, the Stop/Start system will shut off the engine to help conserve fuel. It has components designed for the increased number of starts.

⚠ Warning

The automatic engine Stop/Start feature causes the engine to shut off while the vehicle is still on. Do not exit the vehicle before shifting to P (Park). The vehicle may restart and move unexpectedly. Always shift to P (Park), and then turn the ignition off before exiting the vehicle.

Auto Engine Stop/Start

When the brakes are applied and the vehicle is at a complete stop, the engine may turn off. When stopped, the tachometer displays AUTO STOP. See *Tachometer* ⇨ *116*. When the brake pedal is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed, the engine will restart.

To maintain vehicle performance, other conditions may cause the engine to automatically restart before the brake pedal is released.

Auto Stops may not occur and/or Auto Starts may occur because:

- The climate control settings require the engine to be running to cool or heat the vehicle interior.
- The vehicle battery needs to charge.
- The vehicle battery has recently been disconnected.
- Minimum vehicle speed has not been reached since the last Auto Stop.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- The engine or transmission is not at the required operating temperature.
- The outside temperature is not in the required operating range.
- The vehicle is shifted out of D (Drive) to any gear other than P (Park).
- Certain driver modes have been selected. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *266* and *Four-Wheel Drive* ⇨ *256*.
- The vehicle is on a steep hill or grade.
- The driver door has been opened or the driver seat belt has been unbuckled.
- The hood has been opened.
- The Auto Stop has reached the maximum allowed time.

Auto Stop Disable Switch

Uplevel Shown, Others Similar

The automatic engine Stop/Start feature can be disabled and enabled by pressing Ⓐ. Auto Stop/Start is enabled each time you start the vehicle.

When the Ⓐ indicator is illuminated, the system is enabled.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

When the ignition is turned from on to off, the following features (if equipped) will continue to function for up to 10 minutes, or until the driver door is opened. These features will also work when the ignition is in RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY:

- Infotainment System
- Power Windows (during RAP this functionality will be lost when any door is opened)
- Sunroof (during RAP this functionality will be lost when any door is opened)
- Auxiliary Power Outlet
- Audio System
- OnStar System

Shifting Into Park

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the vehicle is not in P (Park) with the parking brake set.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *335*.

To shift into P (Park):

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *261*.
2. Press the P (Park) switch on top of the shift lever.
3. Press ENGINE START/STOP to turn the vehicle off.

If the vehicle is shifted into P (Park) on a hill, the EPB may apply automatically. The driver may not be able to release the EPB using the EPB switch. It should automatically release when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

Leaving the Vehicle with the Engine Running

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. It could overheat and catch fire.

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the vehicle is not in P (Park) with the parking brake set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and shift to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *249* . If you are towing a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *335*.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, the vehicle must be in P (Park) with the EPB set.

Confirm that the vehicle is in P (Park).

Shifting out of Park

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic transmission. The shift lock release button is designed to prevent inadvertent shifting out of P (Park).

To shift out of P (Park):

1. Ensure the engine is running.
2. Apply the brake pedal.
3. Press and hold the shift lock release button on the shift lever.
4. Move the shift lever to the desired position. For N (Neutral) hold the lever in the N (Neutral) position until the N indicator illuminates red.
5. The P indicator will turn white and the gear indicator on the shift lever will turn red when the vehicle is no longer in P (Park).
6. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

If the vehicle cannot shift from P (Park), a Driver Information Center (DIC) message may be displayed. Ensure the engine is running, the brake pedal is applied, and the shift lock release button is pressed when you are attempting to shift out of P (Park). If all of these conditions are met but the vehicle will not shift out of P (Park), see your dealer for service.

Parking over Things That Burn

⚠ Warning

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Dynamic Fuel Management

If equipped, Dynamic Fuel Management allows the engine to operate in multiple cylinder patterns, up to the full 8-cylinder operation, depending on driving conditions. When less power is required, such as cruising at a constant vehicle speed, the system will reduce any combination of operating cylinders enabling the vehicle to achieve better fuel economy. When greater power is required, such as passing or merging onto a freeway, the system will maintain full 8-cylinder operation.

Extended Parking

It is best not to park with the vehicle running. If the vehicle is left running, be sure it will not move and there is adequate ventilation.

See *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *249* and *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *251*.

If the vehicle is left parked and running with the remote key outside the vehicle, it will continue to run for up to 15 minutes.

If the vehicle is left parked and running with the remote key inside the vehicle, it will continue to run for up to 30 minutes.

The vehicle could turn off sooner if it is parked on a hill, due to lack of available fuel.

The timer will reset if the vehicle is taken out of P (Park) while it is running.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.
- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running.

If the vehicle is left with the engine running, follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *249* and *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *251*.

If parking on a hill and pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *335*.

Automatic Transmission

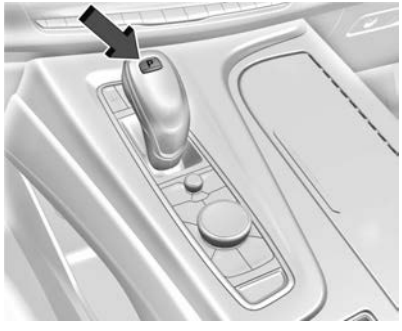
The shift pattern is displayed in the top of the shift lever. The selected gear position will illuminate red on the shift lever, while all others will be displayed in white. If the shift is not immediate, as in very cold conditions, the indicator on the shift lever may flash until it is fully engaged.

The shift lever always starts from a center position, represented by an up/down arrow on the shift pattern. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

The transmission does not operate when the vehicle is off.

If the vehicle is in ACC/ACCESSORY, the transmission can be shifted into P (Park).

If the vehicle is turned off while at a relatively high vehicle speed, the transmission will automatically shift to N (Neutral). Once the vehicle is stopped, P (Park) is automatically selected.



P : This position locks the drive wheels. Use P (Park) when starting the engine to prevent the vehicle from moving easily.

⚠ Warning

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the transmission is not in P (Park) with the parking brake set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If the engine has been left running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and place the transmission into P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park* ➪ *249* and *Electric Parking Brake* ➪ *261*.

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic controlled transmission. The shift lock release button is designed to prevent inadvertent shifting out of P (Park) unless the ignition is on, the brake pedal is applied, and the shift lock release button is pressed.

When the vehicle is stopped, press ENGINE START/STOP to turn off the vehicle. The transmission will shift to P (Park) automatically, unless the vehicle is in N (Neutral). See “Car Wash Mode” later in this section.

The vehicle will not shift into P (Park) if it is moving too fast. Stop the vehicle and shift into P (Park).

To shift in and out of P (Park), see *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *249* and *Shifting out of Park* ⇨ *250*.

Service Shift Lever Message

If the message SERVICE SHIFTER SEE OWNER'S MANUAL appears in the Driver Information Center (DIC), the shift lever needs service. Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible. If the vehicle is automatically shifting into P (Park), check to see if the P (Park) button on top of the shift lever is stuck. To operate the vehicle, hold the shift lever in the desired gear, R (Reverse) or D (Drive), until vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h (10 mph), then release the shift lever.

R : Use this gear to back up.

If the vehicle is shifted from either R (Reverse) to D (Drive) or L (Low), or L (Low) or D (Drive) to R (Reverse) while the speed is too high, the vehicle will shift to N (Neutral). Reduce the vehicle speed and try the shift again.

To shift into R (Reverse):

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold shift lock release button on the side of the shift lever.
3. From the center position, move the shift lever forward through the first detent to the end of travel. R is illuminated in red.
4. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

To shift out of R (Reverse):

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shift to the desired gear.
3. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

At low vehicle speeds, R (Reverse) can be used to rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck* ⇨ *240*.

N : In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

⚠ Warning

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Caution

Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.

The vehicle is not designed to stay in N (Neutral) for more than five minutes. It may automatically shift into P (Park). N (Neutral) is not

intended for towing. If the vehicle needs to be towed, see *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *437*.

To shift into N (Neutral):

1. Move the shift lever forward to the first detent from the center position.

   If the vehicle is in P (Park), apply the brake pedal and press the shift lock release button while moving the shift lever forward. N will illuminate in red.
2. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

To shift out of N (Neutral):

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shift to the desired gear. If shifting from N (Neutral) to R (Reverse), press the shift lock release button.
3. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

Car Wash Mode

This vehicle includes a Car Wash Mode that allows the vehicle to remain in N (Neutral) for use in automatic car washes.

Car Wash Mode (Engine Off – Driver in Vehicle)

To place the vehicle in N (Neutral) with the engine off and the vehicle occupied:

1. Drive to the entrance of the car wash.
2. Apply the brake pedal.
3. Shift to N (Neutral).
4. Turn off the engine and release the brake pedal.
5. The indicator should continue to show N. If it does not, repeat Steps 2–4.
6. The vehicle is now ready for the car wash.

Car Wash Mode (Engine Off – Driver Out of Vehicle)

To place the vehicle in N (Neutral) with the engine off and the vehicle unoccupied:

1. Drive to the entrance of the car wash.
2. Apply the brake pedal.
3. Open the door.
4. Shift to N (Neutral).
5. Turn off the engine and release the brake pedal.
6. The indicator should continue to show N. If it does not, repeat Steps 2–5.
7. Exit the vehicle and close the door. The vehicle is now ready for the car wash.
8. The vehicle may automatically shift to P (Park) upon re-entry.

Car Wash Mode (Engine On – Driver in Vehicle)

To place the vehicle in N (Neutral) with the engine on and the vehicle occupied:

1. Drive to the entrance of the car wash.
2. Apply the brake pedal.
3. Shift to N (Neutral).
4. Release the brake pedal. The vehicle is now ready for the car wash.

Car Wash Mode (Engine On – Driver Out of Vehicle)

To place the vehicle in N (Neutral) with the engine on and the vehicle unoccupied:

1. Drive to the entrance of the car wash.
2. Apply the brake pedal.
3. Open the door.
4. Shift to N (Neutral), then release the brake pedal.
5. The indicator should continue to show N. If it does not, repeat Steps 2–4.
6. Exit the vehicle and close the door. The vehicle is now ready for the car wash.
7. The vehicle may automatically shift to P (Park) upon re-entry.

Caution

A transmission hot message may display if the automatic transmission fluid is too hot. Driving under this condition can damage the vehicle. Stop and idle the engine to cool the automatic transmission fluid. This message clears when the transmission fluid has cooled sufficiently.

D : This position is for normal driving. If more power is needed for passing, press the accelerator pedal down.

To shift into D (Drive):

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. From the center position, move the shift lever back.
   - If the vehicle is in P (Park) press the shift lock release button while pulling the shift lever back.
   - D will illuminate in red.
   - After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

To shift out of D (Drive):

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shift to the desired gear.
3. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

Downshifting the transmission on a slippery road could result in skidding. See “Skidding” under *Loss of Control* ⇨ *233*.

Caution

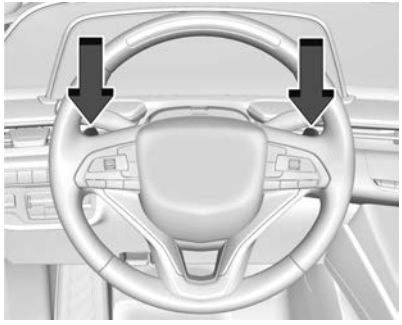
Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If the vehicle is stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

Manual Mode

Electronic Range Select (ERS)

Caution

Driving with the engine at a high rpm without upshifting while using Tap Shift, could damage the vehicle. Always upshift when necessary while using Tap Shift.



Electronic Range Select (ERS), or Manual Mode, allows manual selection of gear positions. Use this mode when driving downhill or towing a trailer to limit the top gear and vehicle speed. The shift position indicator within the Driver Information Center (DIC) displays a number next to the L indicating the highest available gear.

To enter ERS/Manual Mode:

1. With the vehicle in D (Drive), pull back the shift lever to activate L (Low). The L will illuminate red, and the D will turn white.
2. Tap the left steering wheel control to reduce the highest gear available, or the right control to increase the highest gear available.
3. To exit, pull back the shift lever a second time. The D will illuminate red, and the L will turn white.

When shifting to L (Low), the transmission shifts to a preset lower gear range. The highest gear available while in this range will be displayed next to the L (Low) in the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *132*. All gears below are available to use. For example, when 4 (Fourth) is shown next to the L, 1 (First) through 4 (Fourth) gears are shifted automatically. To shift to 5 (Fifth) gear, tap the right steering wheel control or shift into D (Drive).

L (Low) prevents shifting to a lower gear range if the engine speed is too high. If the vehicle speed is not reduced within the allotted time, the lower gear range shift will not complete. Slow the vehicle, then tap the left steering wheel control to the desired lower gear range.

Cruise control can be used while in ERS.

Drive Systems

Four-Wheel Drive

If equipped, four-wheel drive engages the front axle for extra traction.

Four-wheel drive engages the front axle for extra traction.

Caution

Do not drive on clean, dry pavement in 4 ↑ and 4 ↓ (if equipped) for an extended period of time. These conditions may cause premature wear on the vehicle's powertrain.

Driving on clean, dry pavement in 4 ↑ or 4 ↓ may:

- Cause a vibration to be felt in the steering system.
- Cause tires to wear faster.

⚠ Warning

With four-wheel drive, the vehicle will be free to roll if the transfer case is in N (Neutral), even when the shift lever is in P (Park). Be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear — 2 ↑, 4↑, or 4↓ — not in N (Neutral). See *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *249*.

Caution

Extended high-speed operation in 4 ↓ may damage or shorten the life of the drivetrain.

An engagement noise and bump is normal when shifting between 4 ↓ and 4 ↑ or N (Neutral), with the engine running.

Shifting into 4 ↓ will turn Traction Control and StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) off. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *264*.

Automatic Transfer Case

Two-Speed Transfer Case

If equipped, the transfer case controls are used to shift into and out of four-wheel drive.

To shift the transfer case, press the desired button. The graphic in the instrument cluster will flash while a shift is in progress. The graphic displayed will change to indicate the setting requested.

When the shift is complete the graphic will stop flashing. The DIC message turns off once the shift is complete. If the transfer case cannot complete a shift request, it will go back to its last chosen setting.

The settings are:

N (Neutral) : Use only when the vehicle needs to be towed. See *Recreational Vehicle Towing* ⇨ *438*. See *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *437*.

2 ↑ (Two-Wheel Drive High) : Use for driving on most streets and highways. The front axle is not engaged. This setting provides the best fuel economy.

AUTO (Automatic Four-Wheel Drive) : Use when road surface conditions are variable. When driving in AUTO, the front axle is engaged, and the vehicle's power is sent to the front and rear wheels automatically based on driving conditions. This setting provides slightly lower fuel economy than 2 ↑.

4 ↑ (Four-Wheel Drive High) : Use this position when extra traction is needed, such as when driving on snowy or icy roads, when off-roading, or when plowing snow.

4 ↓ (Four-Wheel Drive Low) : This setting engages the front axle and delivers extra torque. Choose 4 ↓ when driving off-road in deep sand, deep mud, or deep snow, and while climbing or descending steep hills. While driving in 4 ↓, keep vehicle speed below 72 km/h (45 mph).

Shifting into 4 ↓ will turn Traction Control and StabiliTrak/ESC off. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *264*.

Shifts between 2 ↑, 4 ↑ , and AUTO

Any of these shifts can be made at normal driving speed.

The actual 4x4 shift request is only made after the button is released. The 4x4 graphic will remain flashing until the shift request has completed. A DIC message displays to indicate that the 4x4 transfer case has been requested to shift to the new desired state.

Once the 4x4 shift has completed, the DIC message disappears, the 4x4 graphic stops flashing, and the current setting is indicated.

When a shift to 2 ↑ is completed successfully while in P (Park), the parking brake will engage. To resume driving, shift the transmission to the desired gear and manually release the parking bake or press the accelerator pedal to begin driving. See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *261*.

If equipped, use 4 ↓, AUTO, or 4 ↑ to provide additional traction when parking on a steep grade with poor traction such as ice, snow, mud, or gravel.

Shifting Into 4 ↓

1. The ignition must be on and the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) with the transmission in N (Neutral). It is best for the vehicle to be moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h (1 to 2 mph).
2. Press 4 ↓. The actual 4x4 shift request is only made after the button is released. The 4x4 graphic will remain flashing until the shift request has completed. A DIC message displays to indicate that the 4x4 transfer case has been requested to shift to the new desired state.

   Once the 4x4 shift has completed, the DIC message disappears, the 4x4 graphic stops flashing and the current setting is indicated.

If vehicle speed is higher when shift request occurs, a DIC message displays. Reduce vehicle speed.

If the transmission is not in N (Neutral) when shift request occurs, a DIC message displays. The vehicle will allow 20 seconds for the shift to occur. After this time, a graphic in the instrument cluster will indicate that the transfer case is in 4 ↓.

Caution

Shifting the transmission into gear before the requested mode indicator light has stopped flashing could damage the transfer case.

If the transmission is not shifted into N (Neutral) or the vehicle has not slowed to 5 km/h (3 mph) within

20 seconds, the transfer case will remain in its original state. This will be indicated in the instrument cluster.

With the vehicle moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and the transmission in N (Neutral), attempt the shift again.

Shifting Out of 4↓

1. The vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) with the transmission in N (Neutral) and the ignition on. It is best for the vehicle to be moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h (1 to 2 mph).
2. Press 4↑, AUTO, or 2↑. The actual 4x4 shift request is only made after the button is released. The 4x4 graphic will remain flashing until the shift request has completed. A DIC message displays to indicate the state of the request.

   Once the 4x4 shift has completed, the DIC message disappears, the 4x4 graphic stops flashing, and the current setting is indicated.

   If vehicle speed is higher when shift request occurs, a DIC message displays. Reduce vehicle speed.

   If the transmission is not in N (Neutral) when the shift request occurs, DIC messages will display. The vehicle will allow 20 seconds for this shift to occur. After this time, a graphic in the instrument cluster will indicate that the transfer case is in 4↓.

Caution

Shifting the transmission into gear before the requested mode indicator light has stopped flashing could damage the transfer case.

   If the transmission is not shifted into N (Neutral) or the vehicle has not slowed to 5 km/h (3 mph) within 20 seconds, the transfer case will remain in its original state. This will be indicated in the instrument cluster.

   With the vehicle moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph), and the transmission in N (Neutral), attempt the shift again.

Shifting Into N (Neutral)

To shift into N (Neutral):

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
3. Shift the transfer case to 2↑.
4. Apply the parking brake and/or brake pedal.
5. Press 2↑ five times in 10 seconds until the N (Neutral) symbol starts flashing in the instrument cluster. When the shift is complete, the graphic stops flashing. If the parking brake and/or brake pedal is not applied within 20 seconds, the transfer case will remain in the original state.
6. If the transmission is not shifted into N (Neutral) or the vehicle has not slowed to 5 km/h (3 mph) within 20 seconds, the transfer case will remain in its original state. This will be indicated in the instrument cluster.

Shifting Out of N (Neutral)

To shift out of N (Neutral):

1. Turn the ignition on with the engine off. See *Ignition Positions* ➪ *245*.
2. Set the parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake* ➪ *261*.

3. Shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
4. Shift the transfer case to 2 ↑. Transfer case shifts out of N (Neutral) can only be made into 2 ↑. When the shift to 2 ↑ is complete, the graphic in the instrument cluster will stop flashing. If the transfer case cannot complete a shift, the graphic will return to the previously selected setting.

Single Speed Transfer Case

If equipped, the transfer case controls are used to shift into and out of four-wheel drive.

To shift the transfer case, press the desired button. The graphic in the instrument cluster will flash while a shift is in progress. The graphic displayed will change to indicate the setting requested.

When the shift is complete the graphic will stop flashing. The DIC message turns off once the shift is complete. If the transfer case cannot complete a shift request, it will go back to its last chosen setting.

The settings are:

2 ↑ (Two-Wheel Drive High) : Use for driving on most streets and highways. The front axle is not engaged. This setting provides the best fuel economy.

4 ↑ (Four-Wheel Drive High) : Use this setting when extra traction is needed, such as when driving on snowy or icy roads, when off-roading, or when plowing snow.

AUTO (Automatic Four-Wheel Drive)

Use when road surface conditions are variable. When driving in AUTO, the front axle is engaged, and the vehicle's power is sent to the front and rear wheels automatically based on driving conditions. This setting provides slightly lower fuel economy than 2 ↑.

Shifts between 2 ↑, 4 ↑, and AUTO

Any of these shifts can be made at normal driving speed.

The actual 4x4 shift request is only made after the button is released. The 4x4 graphic will remain flashing until the shift request has completed. A DIC message displays.

Once the 4x4 shift has completed, the DIC message disappears, the 4x4 graphic stops flashing, and the current setting is indicated.

The actual 4x4 shift request is only made after the button is released. The 4x4 graphic will remain flashing until the shift request has completed.

A DIC message displays. Once the 4x4 shift has completed, the DIC message disappears, the 4x4 graphic stops flashing, and the current setting is indicated.

Brakes

Electric Brake Boost

Vehicles equipped with electric brake boost have hydraulic brake circuits that are electronically controlled when the brake pedal is applied during normal operation. The system performs routine tests and turns off within a few minutes after the vehicle is turned off. Noise may be heard during this time. If the brake pedal is pressed during the tests or when the electric brake boost system is off, a noticeable change in pedal force and travel may be felt. This is normal.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) helps prevent a braking skid and maintain steering while braking hard.

If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *125*.

ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot on the brake pedal and does not always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle ahead, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room ahead to stop, even with ABS.

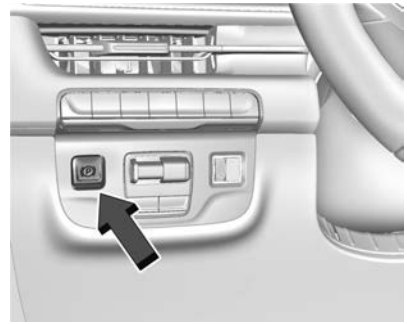
Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly. Hearing and feeling ABS operate is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows steering and braking at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help even more than braking.

Electric Parking Brake



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) can be applied when the vehicle is on or off. If there is not enough electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released. To prevent draining the battery, avoid unnecessary repeated cycles of the EPB.

The system has a red EPB status light and an amber service EPB warning light. See *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *124* and *Service Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *125*. There are also parking brake-related Driver Information Center (DIC) messages.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the red EPB status light to ensure that the parking brake is applied.

If a message displays on the DIC indicating the transmission is unable to shift soon, the service electric parking brake is on, and the EPB light flashes at the same time, the system must be reset. Start the vehicle, apply the EPB, and then release it. The message and light should turn off. See *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *124* and *Service Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *125*.

EPB Apply

To apply the EPB:

1. Be sure the vehicle is at a complete stop.
2. Press the EPB switch.

The red EPB status light will flash and then stay on once the EPB is fully applied. If the red EPB status light flashes continuously, then the EPB is only partially applied or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will display. Release the EPB and try to apply it again. If the light does not come on, or keeps flashing, have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the red EPB status light is flashing. See your dealer.

If the amber service EPB warning light is on, press the EPB switch. Continue to hold the switch until the red EPB status light remains on. If the amber service EPB warning light is on, see your dealer.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is moving, the vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is pressed. If the switch is pressed until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

The vehicle may automatically apply the EPB in some situations when the vehicle is not moving. This is normal, and is done to periodically check the correct operation of the EPB system, or as required by other safety functions that utilize the EPB.

If the EPB fails to apply, block the rear wheels to prevent vehicle movement.

EPB Release

To release the EPB:

1. Turn the ignition on or to ACC/ ACCESSORY.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the EPB switch momentarily.

The EPB is released when the red EPB status light is off.

If the amber service EPB warning light is on, release the EPB by pressing and holding the EPB switch. Continue to hold the switch until the red EPB status light is off. If either light stays on after release is attempted, see your dealer.

Caution

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

If you are towing a trailer and parking on a hill, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *335*.

Automatic EPB Release

The EPB automatically releases if the vehicle is running, placed into gear, and an attempt is made to drive. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied to preserve parking brake lining life.

Brake Assist

Brake Assist detects rapid brake pedal applications due to emergency braking situations and provides additional braking to activate the Antilock Brake System (ABS) if the brake pedal is not pushed hard enough to activate ABS normally. Minor noise, brake pedal pulsation, and/or pedal movement during this time may occur. Continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. Brake Assist disengages when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

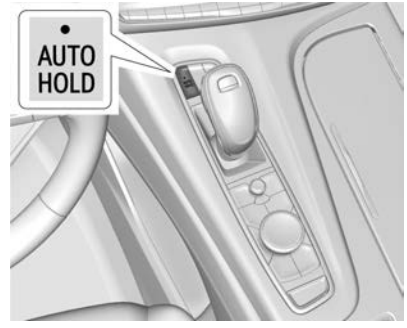
⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the HSA feature. HSA does not replace the need to pay attention and drive safely. You may not hear or feel alerts or warnings provided by this system. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *231*.

When the vehicle is stopped on a grade, Hill Start Assist (HSA) temporarily prevents the vehicle from rolling in an unintended direction during the transition from brake pedal release to accelerator pedal apply. The brakes release when the accelerator pedal is applied or automatically release after a few seconds. The brakes may also release under other conditions. Do not rely on HSA to hold the vehicle.

HSA is available when the vehicle is facing uphill in a forward gear, or when facing downhill in R (Reverse). The vehicle must come to a complete stop on a grade for HSA to activate.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)



⚠ Warning

Do not rely on this feature. It does not replace the need to pay attention and drive safely. You may not hear or feel alerts or warnings provided by this system. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

When Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) is turned on and the vehicle is braked to a stop, AVH prevents the vehicle from moving during the transition from brake pedal release to accelerator pedal apply. The brakes release when the accelerator pedal is applied. The brakes may also release under other conditions. Do not rely on AVH to hold the vehicle.

If the accelerator pedal is not applied within a few minutes, the Electric Parking Brake will apply. The parking brake will also apply if the driver door is opened or the driver seat belt is unfastened while AVH is holding the vehicle.

AVH can be turned on by pressing AUTO HOLD. The indicator light on the switch will come on. The AVH light on the instrument panel will come on while AVH is actively holding the vehicle. See *Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Light* ⇨ *125*.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control

System Operation

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) and StabiliTrak/ Electronic Stability Control (ESC). These systems help limit wheel spin and assist the driver in maintaining control, especially on slippery road conditions.

TCS activates if it senses any of the drive wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to the spinning wheels and reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

StabiliTrak/ESC activates when the vehicle senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually traveling. StabiliTrak/ESC selectively applies braking pressure to one or more of the vehicle wheel brakes to assist the driver in keeping the vehicle on the intended path. Trailer Sway Control (TSC) is also on automatically when the vehicle is started. See *Trailer Sway Control (TSC)* ⇨ *352*.

If cruise control is being used and traction control or StabiliTrak/ESC begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control will disengage. Cruise control may be turned back on when road conditions allow.

Both systems come on automatically when the vehicle is started and begins to move. The systems may be heard or felt while they are operating or while performing diagnostic checks. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

It is recommended to leave both systems on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn TCS off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck* ⇨ *240* and “Turning the Systems Off and On” later in this section.

When the transfer case (if equipped) is in Four-Wheel Drive Low, the TCS and StabiliTrak/ESC are automatically

disabled, comes on, and the appropriate message will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC).

The indicator light for both systems is to the right of the center stack and below the screen. This light will:

- Flash when TCS is limiting wheel spin
- Flash when StabiliTrak/ESC is activated
- Turn on and stay on when either system is not working

See *Traction Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak Light* ⇨ *127*.

If either system fails to turn on or to activate, a message displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC), and comes on and stays on to indicate that the system is inactive and is not assisting the driver in maintaining control. Adjust driving accordingly.

If comes on and stays on:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

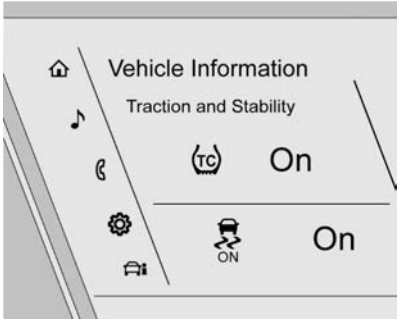
Drive the vehicle. If comes on and stays on, see your dealer as soon as possible.

Turning the Systems Off and On

Caution

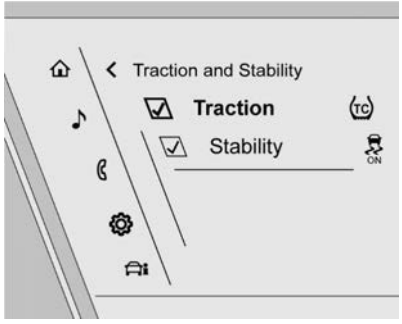
Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

To turn Traction (TSC) or Stability (ESC) off and on, access the Traction and Stability screen from the Vehicle Information main screen in the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Information* ⇨ *135* for instructions on navigating and selecting items.



Traction and Stability Screen

The current status of each system is displayed next to the Traction and Stability icons. To turn either system off or on, select or touch the Traction and Stability screen to access the Traction and Stability menu screen.



Traction and Stability Menu

To turn off TCS, select or touch the Traction virtual button on the screen. The traction off light displays in the instrument cluster. See *Traction Off Light* ⇨ *127*.

If TCS is limiting wheel spin when disabled, the system will not turn off until the wheels stop spinning.

To turn TCS back on, select or touch the Traction virtual button on the screen. The traction off light displayed in the instrument cluster will turn off.

To turn StabiliTrak/ESC off, first turn off TCS to enable the Stability virtual button on the screen, then select or touch the Stability virtual button. The StabiliTrak/ESC off light will display in the instrument cluster. See *StabiliTrak OFF Light* ⇨ *127*.

To turn StabiliTrak/ESC back on, select or touch the Stability virtual button on the screen. StabiliTrak/ESC will turn on, but TCS will remain off.

TCS cannot be on when StabiliTrak/ESC is off. If both systems are turned off, selecting or touching the Traction virtual button will turn both systems back on.

StabiliTrak/ESC will automatically turn on if the vehicle exceeds 56 km/h (35 mph) and cannot be turned off again until speed is reduced. Traction control will remain off. Vehicles equipped with the four corner air suspension re-enable StabiliTrak/ESC at 32 km/h (20 mph).

The vehicle has a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature and a Hill Start Assist (HSA) feature. See *Trailer Sway Control (TSC)* ⇨ *352* or *Hill Start Assist (HSA)* ⇨ *263*.

Adding accessories can affect the vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *368*.

Driver Mode Control

Driver Mode Control (DMC) allows the driver to adjust the overall driving experience to better suit preference by adjusting multiple subsystems simultaneously. Drive mode availability and affected vehicle subsystems are dependent upon vehicle trim level, region, and optional features.

Tour will be the default mode at every ignition cycle. A unique and persistent indicator will be displayed in the instrument cluster for each mode.

Depending on trim level, Tour mode, Sport mode, Snow/Ice mode, Off-Road mode, Tow/Haul mode, Terrain mode, and My mode may be available.

To activate each mode, press the MODE button on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. To activate Terrain Mode, press button located next to the MODE button.

Tour Mode : Use this mode for normal city and highway driving to provide a smooth ride. This setting provides balance between comfort and handling. This is the standard/default mode. There is no persistent indicator in the instrument cluster for this mode.

Sport Mode : Use this mode where road conditions or personal preference demand a more controlled response. When in Sport mode the vehicle automatically down shifts. In this mode, the vehicle also monitors driving behaviors and automatically enables Performance Shift Features when spirited driving is detected. These features maintain lower transmission gears to increase available engine braking and improve acceleration response. The vehicle resumes normal operation after a short period when no spirited driving is detected. The steering changes to provide more precise control. If the vehicle has Magnetic Ride Control, the suspension changes to provide better cornering performance.

Snow/Ice Mode : Use this mode to improve vehicle acceleration on snow and ice covered roads. When active, Snow/Ice Mode adjusts acceleration to optimize traction on slippery surfaces. This can compromise the acceleration on dry asphalt. This feature is not intended for use when the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice, snow, or gravel. If the vehicle becomes stuck, see *If the Vehicle Is Stuck* ⇨ *240*.

Off-Road Mode : Use this mode for off-road recreational driving. Off-Road mode should be used to improve driving at moderate speeds, on grass, gravel, dirt, unpaved roads, or snow-covered roads. The accelerator pedal is tuned for off-road use. If equipped with the following features, Off-Road mode modifies pedal mapping, ride height, and Traction Control System (TCS) performance. For more information on off-road driving, see *Off-Road Driving* ⇨ *234*.

Tow/Haul Mode : Use this mode when hauling heavy loads for increased performance and vehicle control. Tow/Haul Mode adjusts the transmission shift pattern, steering, and Electronic Stability Control (ESC) performance.

If the vehicle is turned off while in Tow/Haul mode and then restarted within four hours or less, it will

remain active. Otherwise, the vehicle will start in Tour mode. Tow/Haul mode turns on trailer sway control.

If equipped with a diesel engine, exhaust braking is automatically activated when Tow/Haul mode is selected. The system will command down shifts to reduce vehicle speed when the brake is applied. The normal tow/haul shift pattern will return once the vehicle is on a low grade or when the accelerator pedal is pressed. While in the Electronic Range Select (ERS) Mode (see *Manual Mode* ⇨ *255*), grade braking is deactivated, allowing the driver to select a range, and limiting the highest gear available.

For more information on trailer weight specifications, see *Towing Equipment* ⇨ *343*.

Terrain Mode : Use this mode when traveling on very rough roads at very low speeds, such as a two-track or heavily rutted road. This mode can also be used for pulling a boat out of the water on a trailer. When in Terrain mode, the vehicle shifts automatically, but will hold a lower gear longer to maximize engine torque. This mode has a unique pedal map and transmission shift pattern for better control at lower speeds and over rough terrain. This mode modifies accelerator pedal mapping, transmission shift pattern, ride height, and Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (eSLD).

When the vehicle comes to a stop on an upward grade, automatic vehicle hold is engaged until the driver presses the accelerator pedal. Stop/Start and cruise control are disabled in Terrain mode.

Active Braking during lift throttle will be engaged. This feature automatically applies light braking to simulate heavy engine braking of four-wheel-drive low. It also applies light braking in D (Drive) until the vehicle is at idle speeds. In L1 and L2 light braking will typically bring the vehicle to a stop. Active Braking during lift throttle also reduces trailer braking.

Terrain mode automatically exits to Tour mode if the brake temperatures become too hot, electronic parking brake becomes inoperable, or the vehicle cannot perform braking or vehicle hold.

For more information on off-road driving, see *Off-Road Driving* ⇨ *234* and *Hill and Mountain Roads* ⇨ *238*.

My Mode

My mode is used to personalize everyday driving. This mode allows the driver to configure the vehicle system settings to their driving preferences. My mode will remain active every time the vehicle is started. To customize My mode, see “Drive Mode Customization.”

Drive Mode Customization

The vehicle is equipped to modify the following settings based on vehicle content. Through the center radio display, select Vehicle Settings>Drive Mode Customization to customize and personalize My mode, or turn off or on Visualization.

My Mode

These settings will be retained over each key cycle, and do not have to be reset each time the vehicle is started.

The following settings may be available depending on region, trim level, and optional features.

Engine Sound : Engine sound settings adjusts the volume of engine noise. Engine sound is quieter at lower settings and louder at higher settings.

Steering : Steering setting adjusts the effort required to turn the steering wheel. Steering feel is less responsive at lower settings and more responsive at higher settings.

Suspension : Suspension adjusts the stiffness of the shocks and / or springs. The ride is more comfortable at lower settings and stiffer at higher settings for better control.

Visualization

This feature shows handling and performance settings on the infotainment display when changing drive modes.

Magnetic Ride Control

This vehicle may have a semi-active damping system called Magnetic Ride Control. With this feature, improved vehicle ride and handling is provided under a variety of passenger and loading conditions.

Locking Rear Axle

Vehicles with a locking rear axle can give more traction on snow, mud, ice, sand, or gravel. It works like a standard axle most of the time, but when traction is low, this feature will allow the rear wheel with the most traction to move the vehicle.

Four Corner Air Suspension System

The Four Corner Air Suspension feature provides full time load leveling capability along with the benefit of adjusting ride height for increased convenience and capability.

⚠ Warning

To help avoid personal injury or death, make sure the area underneath the vehicle and inside the wheel wells is clear when lowering the vehicle.

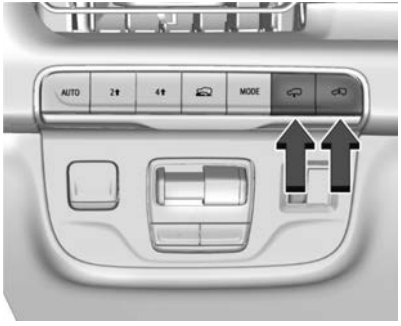
⚠ Warning

To help avoid personal injury or death, always select the lowest ride height for the current driving conditions. Higher ride heights raise the vehicle's center of gravity, increasing the chance of a rollover during extreme maneuvers.

⚠ Warning

Heavy loads on the roof rack will make the vehicle's center of gravity higher, increasing the possibility of a rollover. To avoid losing control of the vehicle, always select the normal height setting and avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt maneuvers when carrying cargo on the roof rack.

Changing Ride Height



Press either 'Up' or 'Down' Ride Height Button to open the Ride Height menu. Use these buttons to select the desired ride height in the menu. After a brief pause, the menu will timeout and the selection will finalize. Ride heights that are unavailable for selection will be greyed out in the menu.

Ride Height Descriptions

Normal Height

Normal Height is the standard vehicle height used for everyday driving.

Entry/Exit Height

Entry/Exit Height is 50 mm (2 in) lower than Normal Height. This ride height lowers the vehicle for easy entry and exit from the vehicle as well as providing a lower height for loading and unloading cargo from any door or the rear liftgate.

This ride height can be selected in the Ride Height Menu at any vehicle speed. When Entry/Exit Height is select at higher speeds, the vehicle will wait to lower until the vehicle slows to less than 12 km/h (7 mph).

The vehicle will automatically raise to Normal Height from Entry/Exit Height when speed increases above 8 km/h (5 mph). If no door has been opened since lowering to Entry/Exit Height, the vehicle will wait to raise to Normal Height until 30 km/h (19 mph). This gives the driver more flexibility when lowering to Entry/Exit Height for passenger pick up and drop off.

The driver can enable Automatic Entry/Egress Mode to automatically lower to Entry/Exit Height when the vehicle is shifted to P (PARK). Automatic Entry/Egress Mode may be enabled via the infotainment screen under Settings/Vehicle/Ride Height. When the vehicle is higher than Normal Height, Automatic Entry/Egress Mode is disabled. When the vehicle is in Tow/Haul Driver Mode, Off-Road Driver Mode, or it senses a trailer is connected, Automatic Entry/Egress Mode is disabled.

Increased Height

Increased Height is 25 mm (1 in) higher than Normal Height. This ride height raises the vehicle for off-road use, allows for higher speeds than Maximum Height, and is only available with specific optional content.

Increased Height can be selected in the Ride Height Menu while vehicle speed is less than 80 km/h (50 mph). If vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), the vehicle will automatically lower to Normal Height.

Off-Road Driver Mode and Terrain Driver Mode will automatically set Increased Height when vehicle speed is less than 80 km/h (50 mph). If vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h

(50 mph), the vehicle will lower to Normal Height. Normal Height will be maintained until vehicle speed is slowed to less than 16 km/h (10 mph) and then the vehicle will automatically raise back to Increased Height.

The vehicle will automatically lower from Increased Height to Normal Height to provide improved stability if aggressive maneuvers are detected.

Maximum Height

Maximum Height is 50 mm (2 in) higher than Normal Height. This ride height raises the vehicle for off-road use and is only available with specific optional content.

To raise the vehicle to Maximum Height, first shift the transfer case to 4 ↓. Once the transfer case is in 4 ↓ and vehicle speed is less than 48 km/hr (30 mph), select Maximum Height in the Ride Height Menu. If vehicle speed exceeds 48 km/h, the vehicle will automatically lower to Increased Height.

The vehicle will automatically lower from Maximum Height to Normal Height to provide improved stability if aggressive maneuvers are detected.

Aerodynamic Height

Aerodynamic Height is 20 mm (0.75 in) lower than Normal Height. This ride height lowers the vehicle at higher vehicle speeds to improve aerodynamics.

The vehicle will lower to Aerodynamic Height when vehicle speed exceeds 105 km/h (65 mph) for a period of time. The vehicle will raise to Normal Height when the vehicle slows to less than 48 km/h (30 mph).

Aerodynamic Height is automatically disabled when a trailer is connected to the vehicle or Tow/Haul Driver Mode is active.

Suspension Modes

The air suspension has two special modes, Service Mode and Alignment Mode, located in the infotainment screen under Settings/Vehicle/Suspension.

Service Mode

Service Mode will disable all air suspension operation including raising and lowering the vehicle and operation of the air compressor. This mode is useful when the vehicle is being towed on a flat bed or when any work under the vehicle is being performed.

Service Mode is automatically enabled when the vehicle is put on a hoist or a floor jack is used to raise a corner. Service Mode automatically disables when vehicle speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph).

Alignment Mode

Alignment Mode will optimize the vehicle height to provide the most accurate wheel alignment. This mode should be enabled once the vehicle is driven onto the alignment station.

To enable Alignment Mode, ensure the vehicle is at Normal Height and shift the vehicle to Neutral. Alignment Mode automatically disables when vehicle speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph).

Air Suspension Operation with Door(s) or Hood Open

The air suspension will temporarily suspend all height changes while the hood or any door is open. The air suspension resumes height changes once the hood and all doors are closed. An open rear liftgate does not suspend the air suspension operation.

System Over-Temperature

If the air suspension is under heavy use, the system may temporarily suspend all height changes to allow compressor cooldown. When this occurs and a height change is requested, a 'Leveling System Unavailable' message will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Suspension Lowered for Stability

In the event of a loss of Electronic Stability Control, the air suspension will lower the vehicle at higher speeds to provide increased stability. This will be accompanied by a 'Vehicle Lowering for Stability' message in the instrument cluster.

Excessive Vehicle Loading

If the air suspension detects excessive vehicle loading, it will not raise above Normal Height.

Air Suspension Service

If a 'Service Leveling System' message is displayed in the instrument cluster, see your authorized dealer immediately.

Cruise Control

⚠ Warning

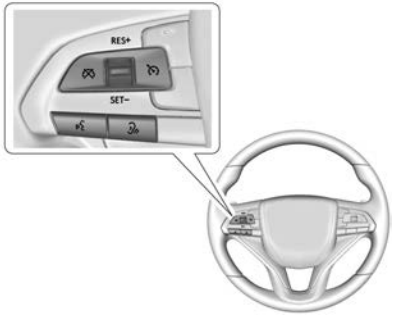
Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. Do not use cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

If equipped with cruise control, a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more can be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph).

If the Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control system begins to limit wheel spin while using cruise control, the cruise control automatically disengages. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *264*. If a collision alert occurs when cruise control is activated, cruise control is disengaged. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *318*. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, the cruise control can be turned back on.

If the brakes are applied, cruise control disengages.



: Press to turn the system on and off. A white indicator appears in the instrument cluster when cruise is turned on.

RES+ : If there is a set speed in memory, press the control up briefly to resume that speed or press and hold to accelerate. If the cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed.

SET– : Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If the cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed.

: Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Setting Cruise Control

If is on when not in use, SET– or RES+ could get pressed and go into cruise when not desired. Keep off when cruise is not being used.

To set cruise control:

1. Press .
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET–.
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator.

When the cruise control has been set to the desired speed, a green cruise control indicator appears on the instrument cluster and a cruise set speed message appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC) and Head-Up Display (HUD), if equipped.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied or is pressed, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, press RES+ up briefly. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

Increasing Speed While Cruise Control is at a Set Speed

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold RES+ up until the vehicle accelerates to the desired speed, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, press RES+ up briefly to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) faster.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

Reducing Speed While Cruise Control is at a Set Speed

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold SET– down until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in small increments, press SET– down briefly. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) slower.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previous set cruise speed.

While pressing the accelerator pedal or shortly following the release to override cruise, briefly applying the SET– control will result in cruise set to the current vehicle speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control works on hills depends on the vehicle speed, the load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, pressing the accelerator pedal may be necessary to maintain vehicle speed. When going downhill, Cruise Grade Braking helps maintain the driver selected speed.

Cruise Grade Braking is enabled when the vehicle is started and cruise control is active. It is not enabled in Range Selection Mode. It assists in maintaining driver selected speed when driving on downhill grades by using the engine and transmission to slow the vehicle.

To disable and enable Cruise Grade Braking for the current ignition cycle, press and hold the Tow/Haul button for five seconds. A Driver Information Center (DIC) message displays.

For other forms of Grade Braking, see *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *251* and *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *266*.

Ending Cruise Control

There are four ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press .
- Shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
- To turn off cruise control, press .

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)

If equipped, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) allows the cruise control set speed and following gap to be selected. Read this entire section before using this system. The following gap is the following time (or distance) between your vehicle and a vehicle detected directly ahead in your path, moving in the same direction. If no vehicle is detected in your path,

ACC works like regular cruise control. ACC uses camera and radar sensors. See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *476*.

If a vehicle is detected in your path, ACC can speed up the vehicle or apply limited, moderate braking to maintain the selected following gap. To disengage ACC, apply the brake. If the Traction Control System (TCS) or StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) activates while ACC is engaged, ACC may automatically disengage. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *264*. When road conditions allow ACC to be safely used, ACC can be turned back on.

Disabling the TCS or StabiliTrak/ESC system will disengage and prevent engagement of ACC.

ACC can reduce the need for you to frequently brake and accelerate, especially when used on expressways, freeways, and interstate highways. When used on other roads, you may need to take over the control of braking or acceleration more often.

⚠ Warning

ACC has limited braking ability and may not have time to slow the vehicle down enough to avoid a collision with another vehicle you are following. This can occur when vehicles suddenly slow or stop ahead, or enter your lane. Also see "Alerting the Driver" later in this section. Complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *231*.

⚠ Warning

ACC will not detect or brake for children, pedestrians, animals, or other objects.

Do not use ACC when:

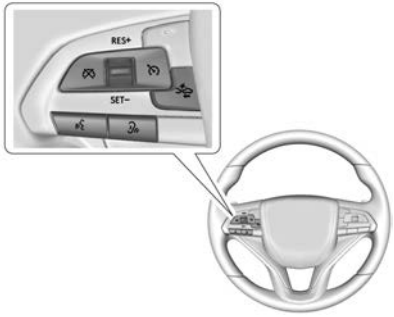
- On winding and hilly roads or when the sensors are blocked by snow, ice, or dirt. The system

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

may not detect a vehicle ahead. Keep the entire front of the vehicle clean.

- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, dirt, insect residue, or dust; when other foreign objects obscure the camera and/or radar; or when the vehicle in front or oncoming traffic causes additional environmental obstructions, such as road spray. ACC performance is limited under these conditions.
- On slippery roads where fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip.



: Press to turn the system on or off. The indicator turns white on the instrument cluster when ACC is turned on.

RES+ : Press briefly to resume the previous set speed or to increase vehicle speed if ACC is already activated. To increase speed by about 1 km/h (1 mph), press RES+ to the first detent. To increase speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press RES+ to the second detent.

SET– : Press briefly to set the speed and activate ACC or to decrease vehicle speed if ACC is already activated. To decrease speed by about 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET– to the first detent. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET– to the second detent.

: Press to disengage ACC without erasing the selected set speed.

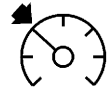
: Press to select a following gap time (or distance) setting for ACC of Far, Medium, or Near.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

Switching Between ACC and Regular Cruise Control

To switch between ACC and regular cruise control, press and hold . A Driver Information Center (DIC) message displays.

ACC Indicator



Regular Cruise Control Indicator

When ACC is engaged, a green indicator will be lit on the instrument cluster and the following gap will be displayed. When the regular cruise control is engaged, a green indicator will be lit on the instrument cluster; the following gap will not display.

When the vehicle is turned on, the cruise control mode will be set to the last mode used before the vehicle was turned off.

⚠ Warning

Always check the cruise control indicator on the instrument cluster to determine which mode cruise control is in before using the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

feature. If ACC is not active, the vehicle will not automatically brake for other vehicles, which could cause a crash if the brakes are not applied manually. You and others could be seriously injured or killed.

Setting Adaptive Cruise Control

If ⏲ is on when not in use, it could get pressed and go into ACC when not desired. Keep ⏲ off when cruise is not being used.

Select the set speed desired for ACC. This is the vehicle speed when no vehicle is detected in its path.

While the vehicle is moving, ACC will not set at a speed less than 5 km/h (3 mph), although the minimum allowable set speed is 25 km/h (15 mph).

To set ACC while moving:

1. Press ⏲.
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET–.
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

After ACC is set, it may immediately apply the brakes if a vehicle ahead is detected closer than the selected following gap.

ACC can also be set while the vehicle is stopped if ACC is on and the brake pedal is applied.

The ACC indicator displays on the instrument cluster and Head-Up Display (HUD), if equipped. When ACC is turned on, the indicator will be lit white. When ACC is active, the indicator will turn green.

Be mindful of speed limits, surrounding traffic speeds, and weather conditions when selecting the set speed.

Resuming a Set Speed

If ACC is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, ACC is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

To begin using ACC again, press RES+ up briefly.

- If the vehicle is moving more than 5 km/h (3 mph), it returns to the previous set speed.
- If the vehicle is stopped with the brake pedal applied, press RES+ and release the brake pedal. ACC will hold the vehicle until RES+ or the accelerator pedal is pressed.

A green ACC indicator and the set speed display on the instrument cluster. The vehicle ahead indicator may be flashing if a vehicle ahead was present and moved. See “Approaching and Following a Vehicle” later in this section.

Once ACC has resumed, the vehicle speed will increase to the set speed under the following conditions:

- There is no vehicle ahead.
- The vehicle ahead is beyond the selected following gap.

- The vehicle speed is not being limited because of a sharp turn.

Increasing Speed While ACC is at a Set Speed

If ACC is already activated, do one of the following:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the higher speed. Briefly press and release SET– and release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will now cruise at the higher speed.

  When the accelerator pedal is pressed, ACC will not brake because it is overridden. While overridden, the ACC indicator will turn blue on the instrument cluster and HUD, if equipped.
- Press and hold RES+ until the desired set speed is displayed, then release it.
- To increase speed in small increments, press RES+. to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes 1 km/h (1 mph) faster.
- To increase speed in larger increments, press RES+ to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed increases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The set speed can also be increased while the vehicle is stopped.

- If stopped with the brake applied, press RES+ until the desired set speed is displayed.
- If ACC is holding the vehicle at a stop and there is another vehicle directly ahead, pressing RES+ will increase the set speed.
- Pressing RES+ when there is no longer a vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is pulling away and the brake is not applied will cause the ACC to resume.

  When it is determined that there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is beyond the selected following gap, then the vehicle speed will increase to the set speed.

Reducing Speed While ACC is at a Set Speed

If ACC is already activated, do one of the following:

- Use the brake to get to the desired lower speed. Release the brake and press SET–. The vehicle will now cruise at the lower speed.
- Press and hold SET– until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in smaller increments, press SET– to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) slower.
- To decrease speed in larger increments, press SET– to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed decreases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

  The set speed can also be decreased while the vehicle is stopped.
- If stopped with the brake applied, press or hold SET– until the desired set speed is displayed.

Selecting the Follow Distance Gap

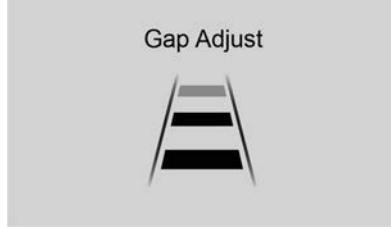
When a slower moving vehicle is detected ahead within the selected following gap, ACC will adjust the

vehicle's speed and attempt to maintain the follow distance gap selected.

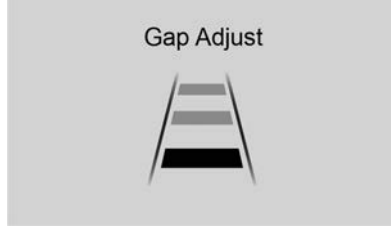
With ACC active, press on the steering wheel to adjust the following gap. Each press cycles the gap button through three settings: Far, Medium, or Near.

When pressed, the current gap setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster and HUD (if equipped). The gap setting will be maintained until it is changed.

Far Gap Setting



Medium Gap Setting



Near Gap Setting

If equipped, and a trailer is electrically connected, the gap setting display will be as follows:

Far Gap Setting with Trailer

Medium Gap Setting with Trailer

Near Gap Setting with Trailer

Since each gap setting corresponds to a following time (Far, Medium, or Near), the following distance will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further back your vehicle will follow a vehicle detected ahead. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the following gap. The range of selectable gaps may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

The gap setting used by ACC is independent to the alert timing sensitivity (Far, Medium, or Near) used by the Forward Collision Alert (FCA) feature. Pressing while ACC is active will only modify the gap setting used by ACC without changing the alert timing sensitivity used by FCA. Pressing while ACC is not active will only modify the alert timing sensitivity used by FCA without modifying the gap setting used by ACC. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *318*.

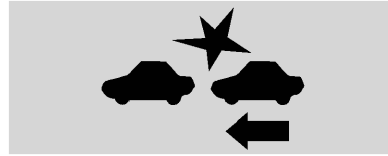
Courtesy Gap

Press and hold on the steering wheel when vehicle is moving to temporarily increase the gap with the vehicle ahead to allow for merging traffic.

Press and hold when stopped to cancel ACC from resuming automatically (if the stop is brief) and remain stationary. This can be used to allow traffic to merge between you and the vehicle ahead. Press RES+ or the accelerator pedal to resume ACC.

Following distance gap will return to the original selection after hold.

Alerting the Driver



If ACC is engaged, driver action may be required when ACC cannot apply sufficient braking because of approaching a vehicle too rapidly.

When this condition occurs, the collision alert symbol will flash on the windshield. Either eight beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *231*.

Approaching and Following a Vehicle

The vehicle ahead indicator is in the instrument cluster and HUD display (if equipped). It only displays when a vehicle is detected in your vehicle's path moving in the same direction. If this symbol is not displaying, ACC will not respond to or brake for vehicles ahead.

ACC automatically slows the vehicle down and adjusts vehicle speed to follow the vehicle in front at the selected following gap. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle in front of you, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking, if necessary. When braking is active, the brake lamps will come on. The automatic braking may feel or sound different than if the brakes were applied manually. This is normal.

Passing a Vehicle While Using ACC

If the set speed is high enough, and the left turn signal is used to pass a vehicle ahead in the selected following gap, ACC may assist by gradually accelerating the vehicle prior to the lane change.

⚠ Warning

When using ACC to pass a vehicle or perform a lane change, the following distance to the vehicle being passed may be reduced. ACC may not apply sufficient acceleration or braking when passing a vehicle or performing a lane change. Always be ready to manually accelerate or brake to complete the pass or lane change.

Stationary or Very Slow-Moving Objects

⚠ Warning

ACC may not detect and react to stopped or slow-moving vehicles ahead of you. For example, the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

system may not brake for a vehicle it has never detected moving. This can occur in stop-and-go traffic or when a vehicle suddenly appears due to a vehicle ahead changing lanes. Your vehicle may not stop and could cause a crash. Use caution when using ACC. Your complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

Irregular Objects Affecting ACC

ACC may have difficulty detecting the following objects:

- Vehicles with cargo extending from the back end.
- Non-standard shaped vehicles, such as vehicle transport, vehicles with a side car fitted, or horse carriages.
- Objects that are close to the front of your vehicle.

ACC Automatically Disengages

ACC may automatically disengage and the driver will need to manually apply the brakes to slow the vehicle if:

- The sensors are blocked.
- The Traction Control System (TCS) or Stabilitrack/ESC has activated or been disabled.
- There is a fault in the system.
- The radar falsely reports blockage when driving in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles or roadside objects.
- A DIC message may display to indicate that ACC is temporarily unavailable.

The ACC active symbol will turn white when ACC is no longer active.

In some cases, when ACC is temporarily unavailable, regular cruise control may be used. See “Switching Between ACC and Regular Cruise Control” previously in this section. Always consider driving conditions before using either cruise control system.

Notification to Resume ACC

ACC will maintain a following gap behind a detected vehicle and slow your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

If the stopped vehicle ahead has driven away and ACC has not resumed, the vehicle ahead indicator will flash as a reminder to check traffic ahead before proceeding. In addition, the left and right sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse three times, or three beeps will sound. See “Alert Type” and “Adaptive Cruise Go Notifier” in “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

When the vehicle ahead drives away, ACC resumes automatically if the stop was brief. If necessary, press RES+ or the accelerator pedal to resume ACC. If stopped for more than two minutes or if the driver door is opened and the driver seat belt is unbuckled, the ACC automatically applies the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle. The EPB status light will turn on. See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *261*. To release the EPB, press the accelerator pedal.

A DIC warning message may display indicating to shift to P (Park) before exiting the vehicle. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *138*.

⚠ Warning

If ACC has stopped the vehicle, and if ACC is disengaged, turned off, or canceled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop. The vehicle can move. When ACC is holding the vehicle at a stop, always be prepared to manually apply the brakes.

⚠ Warning

Leaving the vehicle without placing it in P (Park) can be dangerous. Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by ACC. Always place the vehicle in P (Park) and turn off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

ACC Override

If using the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, the ACC indicator turns blue on the instrument cluster and in the HUD (if equipped) indicating ACC braking will not occur. ACC will resume operation when the accelerator pedal is not being pressed.

⚠ Warning

The ACC will not automatically apply the brakes if your foot is resting on the accelerator pedal. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you.

Curves in the Road

⚠ Warning

On curves, ACC may not detect a vehicle ahead in your lane. You could be startled if the vehicle accelerates up to the set speed, especially when following a vehicle exiting or entering exit ramps. You could lose control of the vehicle or crash. Do not use ACC while driving

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

on an entrance or exit ramp. Always be ready to use the brakes if necessary.

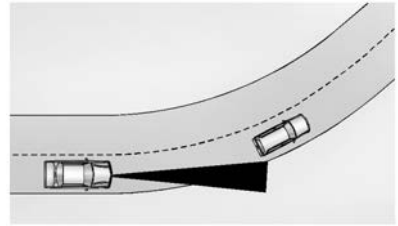
⚠ Warning

On curves, ACC may respond to a vehicle in another lane, or may not have time to react to a vehicle in your lane. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you, or lose control of your vehicle. Give extra attention in curves and be ready to use the brakes if necessary. Select an appropriate speed while driving in curves.

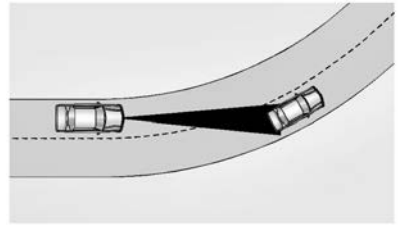
ACC may operate differently in a sharp curve. It may reduce the vehicle speed if the curve is too sharp.

The curve speed control indicator may illuminate green when ACC is actively controlling the vehicle speed and detects a sharp curve on the road ahead.

ACC automatically slows the vehicle down while navigating the curve and may increase speed out of the curve, but will not exceed the set speed.



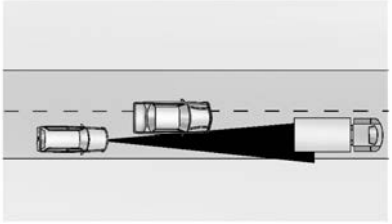
When following a vehicle and entering a curve, ACC may not detect the vehicle ahead and accelerate to the set speed. When this happens, the vehicle ahead indicator will not appear.



ACC may detect a vehicle that is not in your lane and apply the brakes.

ACC may occasionally provide an alert and/or braking that is considered unnecessary. It could respond to vehicles in different lanes, signs, guardrails, and other stationary objects when entering or exiting a curve. This is normal operation. The vehicle does not need service.

Other Vehicle Lane Changes



ACC will not detect a vehicle ahead until it is completely in the lane. The brakes may need to be manually applied.

Objects Not Directly in Front of Your Vehicle

The detection of objects in front of the vehicle may not be possible if:

- The vehicle or object ahead is not within your lane.
- The vehicle ahead is shifted, not centered, or is shifted to one side of the lane.

Driving in Narrow Lanes

Vehicles in adjacent traffic lanes or roadside objects may be incorrectly detected when located along the roadway.

Do Not Use ACC on Hills

Do not use ACC when driving on steep hills as ACC may not detect a vehicle ahead.

Towing with ACC

If equipped when towing a trailer, ACC driving characteristics such as following gap, acceleration rates and braking rates may be modified to provide a better towing experience.

ACC should not be used while towing a trailer with an aftermarket trailer brake controller. Aftermarket trailer brake controllers may not function properly with the ACC system.

ACC may be used when towing a trailer when trailer attached is within GM-approved allowable size and weight limits. See *Trailer Towing* ⇨ *339*.

When towing a trailer with ACC, it is important to properly set the Trailer Gain. See “Integrated Trailer Brake Control System” in *Towing Equipment* ⇨ *343* for Trailer Gain Adjustment Procedure.

Use Tow/Haul mode when driving down steep hills or mountain grades, or when hauling heavy loads. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *266*.

Disengaging ACC

There are three ways to disengage ACC:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press .
- Press .

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

Weather Conditions Affecting ACC

System operation may be limited under snow, heavy rain, or road spray conditions.

Accessory Installations and Vehicle Modifications

Do not install or place any object around the front camera windshield area that would obstruct the front camera view.

Do not install objects on top of the vehicle that overhang and obstruct the front camera, such as a canoe, kayak, or other items that can be transported on a roof rack system. See *Roof Rack System* ⇨ *101*.

Do not modify the hood, headlamps, or fog lamps, as this may limit the camera's ability to detect an object.

Cleaning the Sensing System

The camera sensor on the windshield behind the rearview mirror and the radar sensors on the front of the vehicle can become blocked by snow, ice, dirt, mud, or debris. These areas need to be cleaned for ACC to operate properly.

If ACC will not operate, regular cruise control may be available. See "Switching Between ACC and Regular Cruise Control" previously in this section. Always consider driving conditions before using either cruise control system.

For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *442*.

Super Cruise

If equipped, Super Cruise can steer to maintain lane position under certain conditions on Super Cruise-enabled roads that are separated from opposing traffic.

Super Cruise can also steer to perform a lane change under certain conditions on Super Cruise-enabled roads.

A lane change can be initiated by the driver using the turn signal lever.

The Super Cruise system may initiate a lane change maneuver in following scenarios:

- to pass slower traffic
- when the current lane is ending ahead
- to return to the initial lane

See "Super Cruise Lane Change" later in this section and *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *154*.

⚠ Warning

Super Cruise can only assist to maintain lane position, or steer to change lanes, when driving on compatible roads. You must supervise the driving task and monitor the road conditions. You may need to respond to traffic

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

events by steering, braking, or accelerating. See Defensive Driving.

Super Cruise is:

- Not a self-driving system
- Not a crash avoidance or warning system
- Not a substitute for proper supervision of the driving task.

Super Cruise uses the following to detect the current lane position and lane markings ahead on compatible roads under certain conditions:

- Cameras
- Global Positioning System (GPS) sensing
- A high-precision map
- GPS-enhancement data downloaded through OnStar

Super Cruise works with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), which controls acceleration and braking while Super Cruise is enabled and operating. Review and understand both this section and the ACC section before using Super Cruise. See *Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)* ⇨ *274*.

An active Connected Service plan that includes Super Cruise Services is required to use Super Cruise.

⚠ Warning

Super Cruise does not perform all aspects of driving, nor does it do everything a driver can do. Super Cruise only steers to maintain vehicle position in the current lane or, under some circumstances, to change lanes. Super Cruise can only be used with Adaptive Cruise Control.

Super Cruise does:

- Not prevent crashes or warn of possible crashes.
- Not steer to avoid stopped or slow-moving vehicles, cross-traffic, construction barriers or cones, motorcycles, children, pedestrians, animals, or other objects on the road.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Not steer in response to vehicles or objects next to your vehicle, including vehicles attempting to enter your lane.
- Not respond to traffic lights, stop signs, or other traffic control devices.
- Not respond to crossing traffic.
- Not make turns.
- Not steer to merge onto or to exit highways.
- Not steer to avoid, or steer through construction zones.
- Not function on surface streets.
- Not respond to oncoming traffic.
- Not function in city driving conditions.

⚠ Warning

Some state and local laws may require hands to be kept on the steering wheel at all times. Only remove your hands from the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

steering wheel if Super Cruise is engaged, it is safe to do so, and it is permitted by state and local laws.

⚠ Warning

Failure to supervise the driving task and to respond appropriately, even while Super Cruise is operating, can cause a crash. Super Cruise may not respond as you would to all driving situations and may not maintain lane position under all conditions.

It is extremely important to pay attention to the operation of the vehicle, even while using Super Cruise. Do not use a hand-held device while driving, even with Super Cruise engaged. To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always remain properly seated in the driver seat with your seat belt fastened.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Never remove your hands from the steering wheel when Super Cruise is not operating.
- Always make sure traffic conditions are safe before using Super Cruise.
- Always keep the entire vehicle and the sensors clean. Sensors are on the front, sides, and rear of the vehicle.
- Always observe posted speed limits. Only use Super Cruise at or below the posted speed limit.

Super Cruise should not be used in complex or uncertain driving conditions, including:

- Not in construction zones.
- Not when approaching or exiting toll plazas.
- Not when approaching an intersection that is controlled with a traffic light, stop sign, or other traffic control device.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Not when lane markings are not present or cannot be detected. For example, there is too much glare, weather conditions are poor, or lanes are poorly marked.
- Not on slippery or icy roads.
- Not in adverse weather conditions, including rain, sleet, fog, ice, or snow.
- Not on winding or hilly roads.
- Not for city driving.
- Not during heavy or emergency braking.
- Not on surface streets.
- Not on a road shoulder, service drive, or under an elevated freeway.
- Not when towing a trailer.
- Not in a highway exit lane.

When Super Cruise is Available

Super Cruise Indicator

Super Cruise is designed to operate only when:

- ACC is on. See *Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)* ⇨ *274*.
- Teen Driver is not active.
- The GPS detects the vehicle is on a compatible road.
- Both the camera and the radar sensors are functioning and not covered, obstructed, or damaged.
- The Driver Attention System (DAS) detects the driver's head and eyes are directed toward the road ahead.
- The lane markings are clearly visible and able to be detected by the system.
- If equipped with Adjustable Ride Height; Super Cruise allowable ride height is selected.

Poor Conditions

Poor Conditions

Using Super Cruise

⚠ Warning

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always check that Super Cruise is available before pressing .

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Only remove your hands from the steering wheel if the steering wheel light bar, , and are green. Super Cruise may not begin steering immediately, even when Super Cruise is available and has been pressed.

To engage:

- Press to turn on ACC. Make sure the white indicator displays in the instrument cluster. See *Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)* ⇨ *274*.

When Super Cruise is available, the white will display in the instrument cluster.

- Press . ACC will set the speed to the current vehicle speed or resume to the higher previously stored ACC set speed.

When engaged and not steering the vehicle, the steering wheel light bar flashes blue, and will be blue. The driver is in control of steering and Super Cruise is not steering the vehicle.

When the vehicle is positioned in the center of the lane, the steering wheel light bar and display will turn green, indicating Super Cruise is steering the vehicle.

When Super Cruise controls the steering, traffic and other conditions and laws permit, and it is safe to do so, your hands can be taken off the steering wheel.

Always pay attention to the road and the operation of the vehicle. Always monitor and be attentive of surrounding traffic, including vehicles that may cross the road in front of your vehicle.

Super Cruise steering can be overridden with manual steering at any time. When Super Cruise is engaged, always be prepared to take immediate action — including steering, accelerating, and braking quickly, if necessary.

Super Cruise, when engaged, will enable Forward Collision System to alert and brake.

Steering Manually and Changing Lanes

The vehicle can always be manually steered, even with Super Cruise engaged; for example, when manually changing lanes.

When the steering wheel is moved manually, the steering wheel light bar flashes blue and on the instrument cluster turns blue to indicate Super Cruise is not steering the vehicle.

When ready to allow Super Cruise to resume steering again, position the vehicle in the center of the lane, hold the steering wheel until the steering wheel light bar turns green, and then release the steering wheel when it is safe to do so.

⚠ Warning

To help prevent crashes before making a lane change:

- Always check mirrors.
- Glance over your shoulder.
- Use the turn signals.

Super Cruise Lane Change

Super Cruise can steer to perform a single lane change under certain conditions when requested by the driver or initiated by the Super Cruise System.

To request a lane change:

1. Verify the lane next to your vehicle is clear and conditions are safe to make a lane change.

2. Use the turn signal lever to activate the turn signal in the direction of the desired lane change.
3. Return the turn signal lever to the neutral position after the lane change. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *154*.

Super Cruise System may initiate a single lane change when enabled through Vehicle Personalization under following conditions:

- The Super Cruise System may initiate a lane change to the left to pass a slower moving vehicle ahead and a subsequent lane change to right to return to your original lane.
- Super Cruise System may initiate a lane change to left or right when current lane is ending ahead.
- To cancel a Super Cruise lane change, return the turn signal lever to the neutral position or move the turn signal lever.
- Super Cruise steering can be overridden with manual steering at any time to cancel a Super Cruise lane change.

If Super Cruise detects that traffic is clear, Super Cruise will steer the vehicle to perform the lane change. A message appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC) during the lane change to provide more information on the status of the lane change.

The Super Cruise Lane Change feature can be enabled or disabled through the vehicle personalization menu. See "Super Cruise Lane Change" under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

⚠ Warning

Super Cruise Lane Change may not detect a vehicle in an adjacent lane. Always supervise the driving task and monitor traffic conditions when using the Super Cruise Lane Change feature. Only request a lane change when traffic conditions are safe for a lane change, and always be ready to manually steer the vehicle. See "Steering Manually and Changing Lanes" listed previously in this section.

Take Over Alert

⚠ Warning

Super Cruise will not maintain the vehicle's speed while the steering wheel light bar is flashing red.
If the steering wheel light bar flashes red, immediately resume manual steering to prevent serious injury or death. If you do not resume manual steering, the vehicle will begin to slow in the same lane and eventually come to a complete stop on the road.

To begin steering manually, hold the steering wheel firmly (with both hands) using the highlighted regions as shown in the picture below.

Any time the steering wheel light bar flashes red, resume manual steering immediately. The instrument cluster light , will also turn red and a message will display in the Driver Information Center (DIC). In addition, beeps will sound, or the Safety Alert Seat will vibrate. See “Collision/ Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*. After you begin steering manually, then Super Cruise will disengage.

The red flashing steering wheel light bar could occur under any of the following conditions:

- Lane markings are poor or visibility is limited.
- The Driver Attention System (DAS) does not detect that the driver's head and eyes are directed toward the road.
- ACC is canceled.
- The vehicle is on a tight curve, or the lanes are too wide, or the vehicle goes into a curve too fast.
- The compatible road ends.
- The vehicle is approaching an intersection controlled by a traffic light, stop sign, or other traffic control device.
- A Super Cruise system fault occurs.
- Super Cruise is unable to complete the lane change maneuver.

Attention to the Road

⚠ Warning

Super Cruise is a driver assistance system and cannot accurately detect or predict all situations. Super Cruise is not a crash avoidance system. To prevent serious injury or death, you must supervise the driving task and monitor the road conditions. You may need to respond to traffic events by steering, braking, or accelerating. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *231*. Super Cruise also cannot determine whether you are awake, asleep, impaired, or properly focused on safe driving. The vehicle could crash into other vehicles, drive out of the lane, or drive off the road. Complete attention is always required while driving, even while using Super Cruise. Be prepared to take over steering or apply the brakes at any time.

⚠ Warning

To prevent serious injury or death, be alert and pay special attention when passing highway exits, entrances, and crossings with Super Cruise, and be ready to take control of the vehicle when necessary. Changes in lane markings around exits and entrances can momentarily cause Super Cruise to not detect the correct lane. If this occurs, Super Cruise may attempt steering inputs to bring the vehicle back into the correct lane and, in rare circumstances, could over-correct and cause the vehicle to momentarily cross into a lane next to your vehicle unless you manually steer to maintain your lane position.

The Driver Attention System (DAS) on the steering column continually monitors driver head and eye position to estimate driver attention to the road. The camera does not record or share pictures, audio, or video.

Sunglasses, hats, or other types of clothing that change the shape of the head may interfere with camera performance. To improve camera performance, raise or lower the steering wheel, or change the seat position.

Pay close attention to the road ahead to avoid these three increasing alerts:

First Alert	• If the steering wheel light bar flashes green, the system has detected that your head and eyes may not be directed toward the road. • The flashing will stop when the system detects that your head and eyes appear to be directed toward the road.
Second Alert	• If the steering wheel light bar flashes green for too long, Super Cruise will alert the driver to take control of steering immediately by flashing the light bar red. Also, either beeps will sound or the Safety Alert Seat will vibrate. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*. • Take over steering, then Super Cruise will disengage. • To re-engage Super Cruise, press . See “Using Super Cruise” previously in this section.
Third Alert	• If the steering wheel light bar flashes red for too long, a voice command will tell you to take control of the vehicle. • Take control of the steering immediately; ACC and Super Cruise will disengage. • A DIC message will indicate that Super Cruise is locked out. Super Cruise cannot be re-engaged until the vehicle is turned off and back on again. • Continued failure to take over steering will cause the vehicle to brake to a stop and OnStar will be called. The brake lamps and hazard warning flashers will come on. • Take control of the vehicle and continue driving.

Stationary or Very Slow-Moving Objects; Cross-Traffic

⚠ Warning

Super Cruise is not a crash avoidance system and will not steer or brake to avoid a crash. Super Cruise does not steer to prevent a crash with stopped or slow-moving vehicles. You must supervise the driving task and may need to steer and brake to prevent a crash, especially in stop-and-go traffic or when a vehicle suddenly enters your lane. Always pay attention when using Super Cruise. Failure to do so could result in a crash involving serious injury or death.

Curves in the Road

⚠ Warning

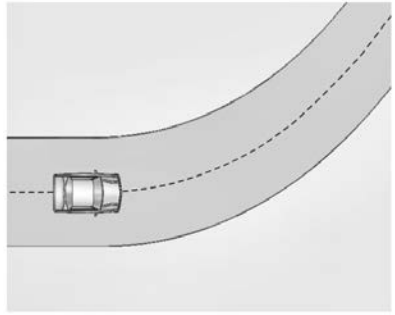
The vehicle could drift out of your lane of travel. To prevent crashes, always be ready to manually steer.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

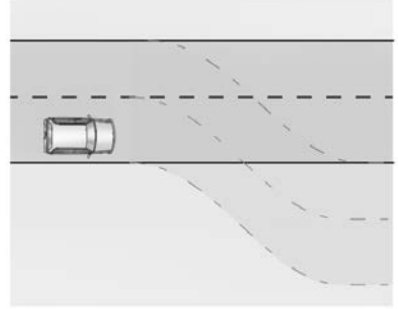
Super Cruise may not detect your lane on curves in the road. Super Cruise may not detect the markings that show your lane. You may not have time to react to a vehicle in the lane next to your vehicle while on curves in the road.

Super Cruise may operate differently in sharp curves. It may drift out of your lane of travel if the curve is too sharp.



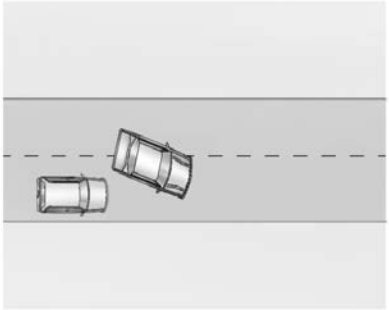
When entering a curve, Super Cruise may not detect the lane markings and may not adjust the steering enough to stay in your lane of travel. When this happens, you will need to steer the vehicle.

Super Cruise may detect other lane markings that are not in your lane and may or may not steer appropriately to maintain your lane.



Super Cruise may occasionally provide an alert and/or steering that is considered unnecessary. It could respond to lane markings in different lanes, signs, guardrails, and other stationary objects when entering or exiting a curve. This is normal operation. The vehicle does not need service.

Other Vehicles Entering Your Lane



Super Cruise may not detect a vehicle that enters your lane, or may not brake fast enough to avoid a crash. You must manually brake and steer the vehicle.

Intersections; Vehicles Crossing the Road Ahead

Super Cruise will not brake the vehicle when approaching an intersection that is controlled by a traffic light or stop sign. Super Cruise will not detect vehicles crossing the road ahead, including at intersections, and will not automatically steer or brake to prevent a collision. You must manually brake and steer the vehicle.

Towing a Trailer

Do not use Super Cruise when towing a trailer. For towing capability, see *Trailer Towing* ⇨ *339*.

Super Cruise on Hills

Do not use Super Cruise while driving on steep hills.

Super Cruise Indicator Light Summary

The steering wheel light bar and instrument cluster light provide the following important information about Super Cruise operation:

Steering Wheel Light Bar	Instrument Cluster Light	Super Cruise Description
Off	Off	Super Cruise is off. There is no automatic steering. Operate the vehicle manually.
Off	White	Super Cruise is available and can be engaged.
Solid Green	Solid Green	Super Cruise is steering. Pay attention to the road and vehicle operation.
Flashing Blue	Solid Blue	Super Cruise is not steering. Operate the vehicle manually. See “Steering Manually and Changing Lanes” previously in this section.
Flashing Green	Solid Green	Super Cruise has detected you are not paying sufficiently close attention to the road. Pay attention to the road. See “Attention to the Road” previously in this section.
Flashing Red	Solid Red	Take over steering immediately. Super Cruise will disengage. See “Take Over Alert” previously in this section.

Disengaging Super Cruise

There are two ways to disengage Super Cruise:

- Press while your hands are on the steering wheel. The Super Cruise steering will disengage.
- Press the brake pedal while your hands are on the steering wheel. Both Super Cruise steering and Adaptive Cruise Control will disengage.

Super Cruise Messages

If does not appear, can be pressed to display a DIC message as to why the system is unavailable.

Immediately after a disengagement, pressing the within 10 seconds will display a DIC message with the reason for Super Cruise disengagement.

Super Cruise Message Summary

Subscription Required Press OnStar Button	• The owner's required Connected Services subscription may have ended. • Press the Blue OnStar button in your vehicle to speak with an OnStar representative, who can help determine the issue and what actions to take.
Unavailable Turn on Adaptive Cruise Control	Adaptive Cruise Control must be on before Super Cruise can be enabled. • Set speed is not required before enabling Super Cruise. • Adaptive Cruise Control is not required to be engaged before enabling Super Cruise.
Unavailable Approved Roads Only	Super Cruise is disabled because the vehicle is being driven on a road that is not compatible.
Unavailable Lane Ending	Super Cruise is disabled because the driving lane is ending.
Unavailable Poor Weather Conditions	Super Cruise is disabled due to inclement weather conditions affecting system performance.

Super Cruise Message Summary (cont'd)

Unavailable No Road Information	• There is no map information available for that portion of the road. Recent road reconstruction may turn off Super Cruise for that section of road until new map information is available. • The vehicle is not on the correct type of road. A controlled access freeway or compatible divided highway is required for Super Cruise. • There are lanes entering or exiting on both the left and right side of the road. • The vehicle is approaching an interchange or intersection. The message will appear for 10 seconds or less.
Unavailable Sensors Can’t Find Lane Lines	• Rain or snow is inhibiting the system’s ability to see lane lines. • Direct sunlight is on the front camera at dawn or dusk. • There are missing or poor lane line markings on the road. • There is sun glare on the road surface. • There is heavy rain, puddles, or road spray.

Super Cruise Message Summary (cont'd)

Unavailable Sensor Can't See Face Clearly	• Cups, food, hands, or other objects are obscuring the DAS view of the driver's face. • The steering column is pointed too high or low for the DAS to see the driver. Adjust the steering column or the seat if the message occurs frequently. • Sun is shining into the Driver Attention System (DAS) camera. • Dawn or dusk sun glare is on the driver's face.
Unavailable Looking Away From Road for Too Long	The DAS system detects that the driver is not looking at the road.
Unavailable Driving Too Fast	The vehicle is traveling faster than 137 km/h (85 mph). The maximum Super Cruise speed in curves will vary based on how sharp the curve is. The vehicle will automatically decrease speed if needed.
Unavailable Driving in Exit Lane	The Super Cruise system has detected that the vehicle is in an exit lane.
Unavailable GPS Signal Lost	• There is poor reception in isolated areas. • Reception is being blocked by buildings or other large structures.
Unavailable You Have Taken Vehicle Control	• The brake pedal is being pressed. • The Adaptive Cruise Control has been canceled or turned off.
Unavailable Sensor Blocked	Clear snow, ice, dirt, or other contaminants from the front and rear areas of the vehicle.

Super Cruise Message Summary (cont'd)

Unavailable Sharp Curve	Some curves are too sharp to be navigated by the Super Cruise system. Super Cruise will be available after the curve is traveled.
Super Cruise Unavailable	Super Cruise is unavailable for reasons not described in other messages.
Super Cruise Locked Out See Owner's Manual	The driver did not take control of the vehicle when prompted by the Super Cruise system. The Super Cruise system will be disabled until the ignition is turned off and back on.

Map Updates

Super Cruise map information must be periodically updated at least once every seven months to determine whether Super Cruise is available on certain roads.

See the following website for Super Cruise map open source compliance documentation, including the license information:

https://oss.veoneer.com/

Data Download

If the vehicle is equipped with OnStar and has an active service plan, additional data may be collected through the OnStar system. This includes information about: the vehicle's operation; a crash involving the vehicle; the use of the vehicle and its features; and, in certain situations, the location and approximate GPS speed of the vehicle. Refer to the OnStar Terms and Conditions and Privacy Statement on the OnStar website.

Location Services

This setting enables or disables sharing of vehicle location outside the vehicle for certain purposes. Even if the Location Services setting is disabled, vehicle location information will continue to be shared for emergency services and Super Cruise, if equipped.

System Care

The camera on the steering column has a lens cover that may become dirty over time and affect camera performance. Clean the lens cover with a soft cloth sprayed with glass

cleaner. Wipe the lens gently, then dry it. Never use abrasive cloths/cleaners or corrosive chemicals of any kind on the lens cover.

Super Cruise uses the front radar, front camera, and 360 degree cameras for its operation. Clean surfaces are required for Super Cruise operation. See *Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)* ⇨ *274*, "Surround Vision Camera" under *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *302*, and *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *329* for care information.

Caution

The Super Cruise system is a highly sophisticated system and should only be serviced by technicians with the proper training, tools, and safety instructions, which your dealer has. Without proper training and tools the vehicle may become damaged.

Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, backing, and parking. Read this entire section before using these systems.

⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear or feel alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *231*.

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.
- Work if the detection sensor is covered up, such as with a sticker, magnet, or metal plate.
- Work if the detection sensor viewing zone is interrupted by an installed accessory, such as a bike rack, or hitch mounted cargo carrier.
- Work if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not properly repaired.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

Audible or Safety Alert Seat

Some driver assistance features alert the driver of obstacles by beeping. To change the volume of the warning chime, see "Comfort and Convenience" under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

If equipped with the Safety Alert Seat, the driver seat cushion may provide a vibrating pulse alert instead of beeping. To change this, see "Collision/Detection Systems" under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Cleaning

Depending on vehicle options, keep these areas of the vehicle clean to ensure the best driver assistance feature performance. Driver Information Center (DIC) messages may display when the systems are unavailable or blocked.

- Front and rear bumpers and the area below the bumpers
- Front grille and headlamps
- Front camera lens in the front grille or near the front emblem
- Front side and rear side panels
- Outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror
- Side camera lens on the bottom of the outside mirrors
- Rear side corner bumpers
- Rear Vision Camera above the license plate

Radio Frequency

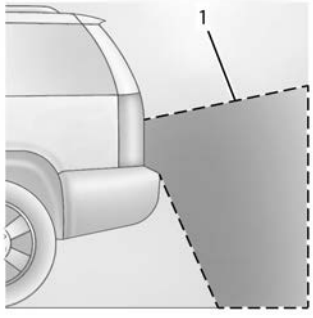
This vehicle may be equipped with driver assistance systems that operate using radio frequency. See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *476*.

Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing

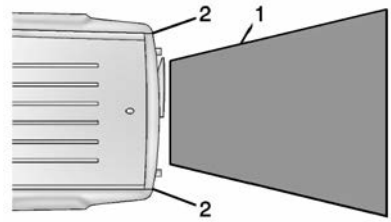
If equipped, the Rear Vision Camera (RVC), Rear Park Assist (RPA), Front and Rear Park Assist (FRPA), Surround Vision, Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) and Backing Warning System, Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), and Enhanced Automatic Parking Assist (APA) may help the driver park or avoid objects. Always check around the vehicle when parking or backing.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

When the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse), the RVC displays an image of the area behind the vehicle in the infotainment display. The previous screen displays when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse) after a short delay. To return to the previous screen sooner, press Home or Back on the infotainment system, shift into P (Park), or reach a vehicle speed of approximately 12 km/h (8 mph) while in D (Drive). The rear vision camera is above the license plate.



1. View Displayed by the Camera



1. View Displayed by the Camera
2. Corners of the Rear Bumper

Displayed images may be farther or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper do not display.

A warning triangle may display to show that RPA or RCTA has detected an object. This triangle changes from amber to red and increases in size the closer the object.

⚠ Warning

The camera(s) do not display children, pedestrians, bicyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

other object outside of the cameras' field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle. Shown distances may be different from actual distances. Do not drive or park the vehicle using only these camera(s). Always check behind and around the vehicle before driving. Failure to use proper care may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

Surround Vision System

If equipped the Surround Vision system can display various views surrounding the vehicle in the infotainment display. See below for camera view descriptions and more information.

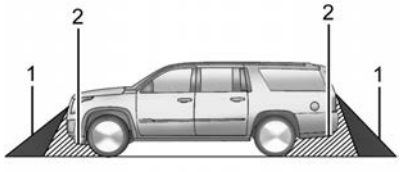
⚠ Warning

The Surround Vision cameras have blind spots and will not display all objects near the corners of the vehicle. Folding outside mirrors that

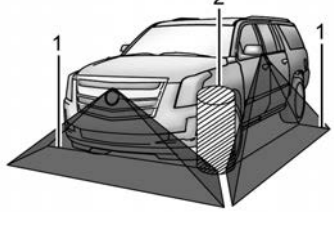
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

are out of position may not display surround view correctly. Always check around the vehicle when parking or backing.



1. Views Displayed by the Surround Vision Cameras
2. Area Not Shown

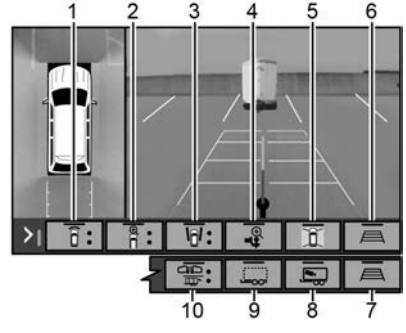


1. Views Displayed by the Surround Vision Cameras
2. Area Not Shown

⚠ Warning

The camera(s) do not display children, pedestrians, bicyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other object outside of the cameras' field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle. Shown distances may be different from actual distances. Do not drive or park the vehicle using only these camera(s). Always check behind and around the vehicle before driving. Failure to use proper care may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

Camera Views



Touch the camera view buttons along the bottom of the infotainment display to access each view (if equipped):

1. Front/Rear Standard View

   Displays an image of the area in front or behind the vehicle. To select, touch Front/Rear Standard View on the infotainment display when a camera view is active.

   When the hitch guidance is selected, Rear Standard View will remain visible across gear changes, otherwise the view will

toggle between Front and Rear Standard View based on gear position.

If equipped, the front view camera also displays when the Park Assist system detects an object within 30 cm (12 in).

To access this view when in a forward gear above 12 km/h (8 mph), select CAMERA on the infotainment display and select Rear Standard View. The view will close after 8 seconds and can be closed early by selecting X, Home or Back.

2. Front/Rear Top-Down View

   Displays a front or rear overhead view of the vehicle. To view, select Front/Rear Top-Down View on the infotainment display when the camera app is active.

3. Front/Rear side View

   Displays a view that shows objects next to the front or rear sides of the vehicle. To select, touch Front/Rear Side View on the infotainment display when a camera view is active. Touch the button to toggle between front and rear camera views. Park Assist and RCTA overlays are not available when Front/Rear Side View is active.

4. Hitch View

   Displays a zoomed-in view of the hitch area to assist with aligning the vehicle's hitch ball with the trailer coupler and monitoring the trailer connection. To view, select Hitch View on the infotainment display when the Camera App is active. To access this view when in a forward gear above 12 km/h (8 mph), select CAMERA on the infotainment display and select Hitch View. The view will close after eight seconds and can be closed early by selecting X, Home or Back. Shifting into P (Park) while in this view will automatically engage the Electric Parking Brake (EPB).

5. Surround View

   Displays an image of the area surrounding the vehicle. Surround View is displayed alongside the currently selected view when below 12 kph (8 mph). Surround View is disabled when above 12 kph (8 mph).

6. Camera App Guidance Lines

   The Camera App supports three possible guidance modes: No Guidance, Vehicle Guidance and Trailering Guidance. To change guidance mode, select the appropriate guidance icon. Depending on the guidance mode and view selected, different guidance lines may appear. A grayed-out icon indicates that guidance lines are not available. Certain views do not support Guidance lines.

   - Standard Guidance Lines are available in Front/Rear Standard Views, Front/Rear Top-Down Views and Surround View when the vehicle guidance mode is selected. Standard Guidance Lines show current and intended vehicle path.
   - Hitch Guidance Line is available in Rear Standard View when the Trailering

Guidance mode is selected. Hitch Guidance displays a single centered guidance line on the infotainment display to assist with aligning the vehicle's hitch with a trailer coupler. Align the Hitch Guidance Line with the trailer coupler by continuously steering the vehicle to keep the guidance line centered on the coupler when backing. Park Assist overlays will not display when the Hitch Guidance Line is active.

- Rear Trailer Guidance Lines are available in the Rear Trailer View when the Trailering Guidance mode is selected and the rear trailer camera calibration has been successfully completed. Rear Trailer Guidance Lines show the intended path (yellow) and the current path (blue) of the trailer. The current path guidance lines will converge with the intended path guidance lines.

7. Camera App Guidance Lines

   Duplicate of item 6.

8. Interior Trailer View

   Displays a view of the interior of the trailer. The feature is available when a trailer is connected. The feature requires user installation of an accessory trailer camera on the interior of the trailer per the accessory trailer camera installation instructions (see your dealer for accessory trailer camera(s) and information). To view, select Interior Trailer View on the infotainment display when the Camera App is active. To access this view when in a forward gear above 12 km/h (8 mph), select CAMERA on the infotainment display and select Interior Trailer View. The view will close after 8 seconds and can be closed early by selecting X, Home or Back.

9. Transparent Trailer View

   Displays a view that allows the driver to virtually "see through" the trailer. The feature is available when a compatible trailer is connected, a valid profile is selected and the vehicle is not in Reverse. The feature requires user installation of an accessory trailer camera on the rear exterior surface of the trailer per the accessory trailer camera installation instructions (see your dealer for accessory trailer camera(s) and information). To view, select Transparent Trailer View on the infotainment display when the Camera App is active. To access this view when in a forward gear above 12 km/h (8 mph), select CAMERA on the infotainment display and select Transparent Trailer View. The view can be closed by selecting X, Home or Back.

   When the system is calibrated and trailer position is known one of three views will be shown; Transparent Trailer View, Left Transparent Trailer View or Right Transparent Trailer View. The Transparent Trailer View is shown when the position of the trailer is relatively straight

behind the vehicle. The Left or Right Transparent Trailer view is shown when the position of the trailer is too far to the left or right. When the system is not calibrated or trailer position is not known the Transparent Trailer Picture-in-Picture View will be shown.

10. Rear Trailer Views
    - Rear Trailer View

      Displays a view of the area behind the trailer when a trailer is connected. The feature requires user installation of an accessory trailer camera on the rear exterior surface of the trailer per the accessory trailer camera installation instructions (see your dealer for accessory trailer camera(s) and information). To view, select Rear Trailer View on the infotainment display when the Camera App is active. To access this view when in a forward gear above 12 km/h (8 mph), select CAMERA on the infotainment display and select Rear Trailer View. The view can be closed by selecting X, Home or Back.
    - Rear Side View with Available Articulation Functionality

      Displays a rearward split view of the left and right sides of the vehicle and trailer, when a trailer is connected. The view will automatically pan to show more of the left or right side based on the position of the trailer when a compatible profile is configured and selected via the Trailering App. To view, select Rear Side View with Available Articulation Functionality on the infotainment display when the Camera App is active. To access this view when in a forward gear above 12 km/h (8 mph), select CAMERA on the infotainment display and select Rear Side View with Available Articulation Functionality. The view can be closed by selecting X, Home or Back.
    - Picture-in-Picture Side View

      Displays a rearward split view of the left and right sides of the vehicle and trailer with an overlay view of the area behind the trailer when a trailer is connected. The feature requires user installation of an accessory trailer camera on the rear exterior surface of the trailer per the accessory trailer camera installation instructions (see your dealer for accessory trailer camera(s) and information). To view, select Picture-in-Picture Side View on the infotainment display when the Camera App is active. To access this view when in a forward gear above 12 km/h (8 mph), select CAMERA on the infotainment display and select Picture-in-Picture Side View. The view can be closed by selecting X, Home or Back.

Additional Views and Alerts

- Turn Signal Activated Views

Displays a rearward view of the left or right side of the vehicle and trailer when a trailer is connected. Views are provided based on turn signal activation with the right-side view being shown when the right turn signal is active and the left side view being shown when the left turn signal is active. The feature can be enabled or disabled. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*. The view can be closed early by selecting X, Home or Back.

A Trailer Length Indicator Overlay is available in the Turn Signal Activated Views when the trailer is relatively straight behind the vehicle and a compatible profile is configured and selected via the Trailering App. The overlay will not be visible when the position of the trailer is too far to the left or right. The overlay can be enabled or disabled. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

- Jack-Knife Detection and Alert

  The vehicle may be equipped with Jack-Knife Detection. The system will track the position of the trailer relative to the vehicle. As the front of the trailer approaches the rear of the vehicle, a warning or an alert will be displayed. A warning indicates to the driver to proceed with caution, an alert indicates that a collision is imminent. Based on vehicle equipment and user settings, the visual warning or alert may be accompanied by audible or safety alert seat notifications. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

- Trailer Angle Indicator

  The vehicle may be equipped with a Trailer Angle Indicator. The Trailer Angle Indicator gives the driver a visual representation of the trailer's position relative to the vehicle. (Available only in Reverse, Guidelines On, Rear Trailering Views).

⚠ Warning

Use Hitch Guidance only to help back the vehicle to a trailer hitch or, when traveling above 12 km/h (8 mph), to briefly check the status of your trailer. Do not use for any other purpose, such as making lane

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

change decisions. Before making a lane change, always check the mirrors and glance over your shoulder. Improper use could result in serious injury to you or others.

HD Surround Vision with Trailer Camera Provisions

If equipped, this feature provides additional views to aid in trailering/towing. The system shows multiple views in the infotainment display using five cameras mounted around the vehicle and up to two additional accessory cameras that can be mounted on or in a trailer. The front camera is in the grille under the front emblem, the side cameras are on the bottom of the outside mirrors, the rear camera is in the tailgate handle and the bed camera is mounted on the rear of the cab. Additionally, up to two accessory cameras can be mounted to the rear and/or interior of the trailer. See your dealer for accessory trailer cameras. To access, touch CAMERA on the infotainment display or shift to R (Reverse). To return to the previous

screen when not in reverse, touch the Home or Back buttons on the infotainment display.

Certain trailer views require a compatible trailer profile be configured and selected. A compatible trailer is a box type trailer (cargo, camper, etc.) with a conventional hitch.

Available camera views:

- Front/Rear Standard View
- Front/Rear Top-Down View
- Front/Rear Side View
- Hitch View
- Rear trailer View
- Rear Side view with a available articulation functionality
- Picture-in-Picture Side View
- Interior Trailer View
- Transparent trailer View
- Surround View
- Guidance Lines
- Hitch Guidance

Surround Vision (360 Degrees)

If equipped, the Surround Vision system can display various views surrounding the vehicle in the infotainment display using four cameras mounted around the vehicle. The front camera is in the grille under the front emblem, the side cameras are on the bottom of the outside mirrors, and the rear camera is in the tailgate handle.

The Surround Vision system can be accessed by selecting CAMERA in the infotainment display or when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). To return to the previous screen sooner, when not in R (Reverse), press the Home or Back button on the infotainment system, shift into P (Park), or, while in D (Drive), reach a vehicle speed of approximately 12 km/h (8 mph).

Available camera views:

- Front/Rear Standard View
- Front/Rear Top-Down View
- Front/Rear Side View
- Hitch View
- Surround View
- Guidance Lines
- Hitch Guidance

Surround Vision

If equipped, this feature provides, additional views to aid in trailering/towing. The Front Vision Camera and Surround Vision cameras are not supported. The system can show various views in the infotainment display using cameras mounted in and around the vehicle and trailer. The rear camera is in the tailgate handle and the cargo bed camera is mounted on the rear of the cab. Up to two accessory cameras can be mounted to the rear and/or interior of the trailer. See your dealer for these accessory cameras.

The system can be accessed by selecting CAMERA in the infotainment display or when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). To return to the previous screen sooner, when not in R (Reverse), press the Home or Back button on the infotainment system or shift into P (Park).

Available camera views:

- Rear Standard View
- Hitch View
- Bed View
- Rear Trailer View
- Interior Trailer View
- Guidance Lines
- Hitch Guidance

Troubleshooting

The Transparent Trailer calibration may take longer than expected or not calibrate if:

- The vehicle is driven too fast during calibration. Speed should be maintained below 50 km/h (31 mph).
- The vehicle is not driven straight during calibration. Steering should be maintained as straight as possible, excessive steering during calibration may extend calibration time.
- The calibration is attempted in low light. Calibration should be attempted when there is enough light.
- The calibration is attempted during adverse weather conditions. Calibration during conditions such as snow or heavy rain should be avoided.
- The road surface is not ideal for calibration. Calibration should be attempted on an alternate road surface.
- The accessory trailer cameras are swapped at the hitch connector. Ensure that the camera mounted to the rear of the trailer is connected to the rear trailer camera input.
- The accessory trailer camera is mounted, angled or rotated outside of the defined mounting location (see camera installation instructions).

Distortion may be observed in the calibrated Transparent Trailer View if:

- The accessory trailer camera is mounted, angled or rotated outside of the defined mounting location (see camera installation instructions).

The Transparent Trailer icon may appear grayed out if:

- A compatible trailer profile is not configured or a non-compatible trailer profile is selected.
- The vehicle is in R (Reverse).
- The trailer is not connected.
- The accessory rear trailer camera is not connected or connected to the incorrect input.

The preview may not be provided or the wrong preview may be provided if:

- The accessory cameras are not recognized. Ensure that the accessory camera(s) are connected and power cycle the vehicle.
- The accessory trailer cameras are swapped at the hitch connector. Ensure that the accessory camera(s) are connected to the correct input.
- The accessory trailer camera(s) are connected to the correct camera input.
- The accessory trailer camera(s) are not installed according to the installation instructions.

A feature may be unavailable or not activating as expected if:

- The customization is disabled. Check the customization settings where applicable.
- The accessory trailer cameras are swapped at the hitch connector. Ensure that the accessory camera(s) are connected to the correct camera input.

A view may switch automatically if:

- The vehicle is shifted to another gear.

Park Assist

The vehicle may be equipped with Rear Park Assist (RPA) or Front and Rear Park Assist (FRPA). Under certain conditions, the Park Assist system can assist the driver during backing and parking maneuvers when the vehicle is driven at no more than 9 km/h (6 mph). An illuminated indicator in the Park Assist button indicates the system is ready.

Sensors located in the bumpers measure the distance between the vehicle and objects using sonar technology. These sensors are designed to detect certain objects up to 1.8 m (6 ft) behind and 1.3 m (4 ft) in front of your vehicle that are taller than 25 cm (10 in).

Different environmental conditions may affect whether and how far the Park Assist system can detect objects. Keep the sensors clean of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush; and clean sensors after a car wash in freezing temperatures. Sensors that are not clean may not detect objects or may cause the system to alert when not required.

⚠ Warning

The Park Assist System is no substitute for careful and attentive driving. The Park Assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 9 km/h (6 mph). To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

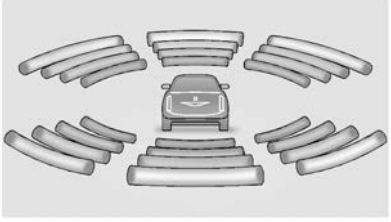
Park Assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or backing.

How the System Works

The vehicle may have a Park Assist amphitheatre-like display on the cluster with bars that represent the estimated location of a detected object and the vehicle's distance from the object. As a detected object becomes closer, more bars light up and change color from yellow to amber to red. Vehicles equipped with RPA will show the amphitheater at the rear of the vehicle, and if equipped, FRPA will show the amphitheater at the front and rear.

The system warns the driver with beeps against potentially hazardous obstacles in the path of the vehicle. When an object in the driving path is first detected in the rear, one beep will be heard from the rear, or the driver's seat will pulse two times if equipped with Safety Alert Seat. When an object

is very close, five beeps will sound from the front or rear, depending on the object's location, or the driver's seat will pulse five times. Beeps for front are higher pitched than the rear. The beeps may be muted by pressing the on screen mute button.



Turning the System On and Off

The Park Assist System can be turned on or off using the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Turning the Park Assist System on or off also turns the Backing Warning and Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) on or off at the same time.

When the system is off, PARK ASSIST OFF is shown on the display. This message disappears after a short period of time.

If the vehicle has a trailer hitch attached, select ON - ATTACHED using the infotainment system menus to allow Park Assist to function properly. Park Assist is able to compensate for a trailer hitch up to 0.3 m (1 ft) in length and width. Park Assist may not function properly with larger trailer hitches and provide inaccurate information of objects in the rear

Turn off Park Assist when towing a trailer to prevent unwanted beeps and when a bike rack is attached to ensure proper operation.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The following messages may be shown on the display:

SERVICE PARK ASSIST

If this message displays, check the following conditions:

- The sensors may not be clean. Keep the vehicle's front and rear bumpers free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care* ⇨ *442*.
- The Park Assist sensors may be covered by frost or ice. Frost or ice can form around and behind the sensors and may not always be seen; this can occur after washing the vehicle in cold weather. The message may not clear until the frost or ice has melted.

If this message displays and the above conditions do not exist, take the vehicle to your dealer for repair.

PARK ASSIST OFF

If the Park Assist System does not activate due to a temporary condition, this message is shown on the display. This can occur under the following conditions:

- The driver has disabled the system.

- An object is currently blocking the rear sensors (for example, bike rack, tailgate, trailer hitch, etc.) Once the object is removed, Park Assist will return to normal operation.
- The bumper is damaged. Take the vehicle to your dealer for repairs.
- Other conditions, such as vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of air brakes on a very large truck, are affecting system performance.

Automatic Parking Assist (APA)

If equipped, under certain conditions Enhanced Automatic Parking Assist (APA) can use sensors based on sonar technology along the vehicle's front, rear and sides to detect a parking spot and automatically park the vehicle. The vehicle will automatically maneuver into a detected spot moving at or near idle speed. It does this by automatically steering, braking, accelerating, and gear shifting. The driver must always be prepared to apply braking if necessary. A display and beeps help to guide the parking maneuvers.

⚠ Warning

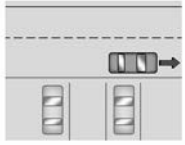
APA may not always detect objects in the parking space, objects that are not rigid (e.g. shrubs and chain-link fences), objects below the bumper, objects high off the ground (e.g. flatbed trucks), hanging objects, objects below ground level (e.g. large potholes), or moving objects (e.g. pedestrians, cyclists, vehicles). Always verify that the parking space is appropriate for parking a vehicle. APA may not respond to changes in the parking space, such as movement of an adjacent vehicle, or a person or object entering the parking space. APA does not detect or avoid traffic that is behind or alongside of the vehicle. Always be prepared to stop the vehicle during the parking maneuver.

How to Activate Automatic Parking

To activate APA, press P on the Home Page of the infotainment display for the system to begin searching for a parking space while driving forward at no greater than 30 km/h (18 mph). By default, APA searches for parallel parking spaces to the right of the vehicle up to the sensors' range of 1.5 m (5 ft). To search for a parking space to the left, turn on the left turn signal or, if available, change the side selection in the infotainment display. To switch the parking mode between parallel and perpendicular press and hold P while searching for a valid parking spot or, if available, change the parking mode in the infotainment display.

APA cannot park in all empty parking spots. The parking spot must:

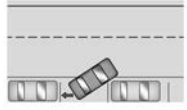
- Be sufficiently large to fit the vehicle comfortably.
- Have an adjacent vehicle, wall, or pillar for the system to align to.



After completely passing an eligible parking spot, a beep sounds and a red stop symbol is displayed in the driver information center. Generally, APA selects the nearest empty parking spot behind the vehicle, but under some conditions may select a space that is further back. Slow down and bring the vehicle to a complete stop to begin.

Follow the displayed instructions. When instructed to drive in reverse, shift to R (Reverse) while holding the brakes. The steering wheel will vibrate briefly as a reminder to remove hands from the steering wheel. Release the brakes slowly when the vibration stops to begin automatic parking. As the vehicle automatically steers, brakes, accelerates, and shifts gears into the parking spot, check surroundings. Be prepared to stop to avoid vehicles, pedestrians, or objects.

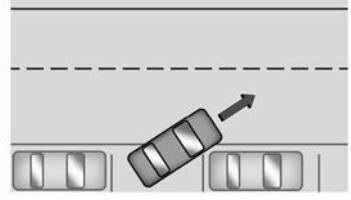
A progress arrow displays the status of the parking maneuver. Once automatic parking is finished and the vehicle has come to a full stop, FINAL POSITION - PRESS BRAKES message will be displayed. Press and hold the brakes, and APA will beep and display a PARKING COMPLETE message. Shift the vehicle to P (Park) and apply the parking brake.



How to Activate Automatic Parallel Spot Unparking Assist

To activate parallel spot unparking assist, press the soft-touch button or hard switch P after turning on the vehicle while leaving it in P (Park) and the parking brake is off. If the system is able to determine a path out of the parking spot, a screen will be displayed for unparking options. Similar to automatic parking, follow the displayed instructions and check surroundings as the vehicle unparks.

Once automatic unparking is finished and the vehicle has come to a full stop, FINAL POSITION - PRESS BRAKES message will be displayed. Press and hold the brakes, and APA will beep and display a TAKE CONTROL message. The vehicle is now positioned such that the path to exit the parking spot is free of obstructions. Shift into D (Drive) to start driving away.



How to Cancel Automatic Parking or Automatic Unparking

To cancel automatic parking or automatic unparking at any time, press P or "X" on the infotainment display and be prepared to resume control of the vehicle. APA holds the vehicle until the parking brake or brake is applied, or the vehicle is shifted into P (Park). To start driving away, press the brakes and shift into D (Drive).

Certain vehicle conditions and driver interferences may also cancel automatic parking:

- The driver manually steers the vehicle.
- The maximum allowed speed is exceeded.
- There is a failure with the APA system.
- Electronic stability control or antilock brakes are activated.
- The parking brake is applied or vehicle is shifted into Park (P).
- Driver unbuckles seat belt and opens door.

System Limitations

Automatic Parking Assist has certain limitations. The system cannot:

- Maneuver the vehicle at speeds exceeding 5 km/h (3 mph).
- Detect whether a parking space is legal or restricted.
- Detect pavement markings or lines
- Park the vehicle closely lined up with the vehicle next to it, particularly if the spot is approached at an angle or if the parking space is angled.
- Park exactly centered in a very large spot.
- Always detect short curbs.
- Operate while towing any trailer.
- Function the vehicle is raised or lowered by air suspension (if equipped).
- Detect or automatically react to approaching traffic when exiting a parallel spot

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

If the vehicle does not reverse into the expected parking space, the system could be maneuvering the vehicle into a previously detected space.

Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB)

Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) have the Backing Warning System and Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) system. When in R (Reverse), Backing Warning alerts of rear objects at vehicle speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph), and RAB may automatically brake hard at speeds between 1–32 km/h (0.5–20 mph).

RAB may activate unintendedly if there is an object attached to vehicle. To disable RAB, press the P button.

The Backing Warning System will beep once from the rear when an object is first detected, or pulse twice on both sides of the Safety Alert Seat. When the system detects a potential crash, beeps will be heard from the rear, or five pulses will be felt on both sides of the Safety Alert Seat. There may also be a brief, sharp application of the brakes.

⚠ Warning

The Backing Warning System only operates at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph). It does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. In some

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

situations, such as at higher backing speeds, there may not be enough time for the short, sharp application of the vehicle brake system to occur. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with the Backing Warning System, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before backing.

When the vehicle is in R (Reverse), if the system detects the vehicle is backing too fast to avoid a crash with a detected object behind your vehicle in your path, it may automatically brake hard to a stop to help avoid or reduce the harm caused by a backing crash.

⚠ Warning

RAB may not avoid many types of backing crashes. Do not wait for the automatic braking to apply. This system is not designed to replace driver braking and only works in

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

R (Reverse) when an object is detected directly behind the vehicle. It may not brake or stop in time to avoid a crash. It will not brake for objects when the vehicle is moving at very low speeds. It does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with RAB, always check the area around the vehicle before and while backing.

Pressing the brake pedal after the vehicle comes to a stop will release RAB. If the brake pedal is not pressed soon after the stop, the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) may be set. When it is safe, press the accelerator pedal firmly at any time to override RAB.

⚠ Warning

There may be instances where unexpected or undesired automatic braking occurs. If this happens, either press the brake pedal or firmly press the accelerator pedal to release the brakes from the RAB system. Before releasing the brakes, check the RVC and check the area around the vehicle to make sure it is safe to proceed.

Rear Pedestrian Alert

Under certain conditions, this feature can provide alerts for a pedestrian within the system's range directly behind the vehicle. This feature only works in R (Reverse) below 12 km/h (8 mph), and detects pedestrians up to 8 m (26 ft) away during daytime driving. During nighttime driving, feature performance is very limited.

Rear Pedestrian Alert Indicator

When a pedestrian is detected within the system's range directly behind the vehicle, this symbol flashes amber on the infotainment display, along with two beeps from the rear, or if equipped, two pulses from both sides of the driver seat. When a pedestrian is detected close to the vehicle, the symbol flashes red on the infotainment display, along with seven beeps from the rear, or if equipped, seven pulses from both sides of the driver seat.

⚠ Warning

Rear Pedestrian Alert does not automatically brake the vehicle. It also does not provide an alert unless it detects a pedestrian, and it may not detect all pedestrians if:

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- The pedestrian is not directly behind the vehicle, fully visible to the Rear Vision Camera (RVC), or standing upright.
- The pedestrian is part of a group.
- The pedestrian is a child.
- Visibility is poor, including nighttime conditions, fog, rain, or snow.
- The RVC is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice.
- The RVC, taillamps, or back-up lamps are not cleaned or in proper working condition.
- The vehicle is not in R (Reverse).

To help avoid death or injury, always check for pedestrians around the vehicle before backing up. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *231*. Keep the RVC, taillamps, and back-up lamps clean and in good repair.

Rear Pedestrian Alert can be set to Off or Alert. See “Rear Pedestrian Detection” in “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*. If equipped, alerts can be set to beeps or seat pulses. See “Alert Type” in “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System

If equipped, Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) displays a red warning triangle with a left or right pointing arrow on the infotainment display to warn of traffic coming from the left or right. This system detects objects coming from up to 20 m (65 ft) from the left or right side of the vehicle. When an object is detected, either three beeps sound from the left or right or three Safety Alert Seat pulses occur on the left or right side, depending on the direction of the detected vehicle.

Driving With a Trailer

Use caution while backing up when towing a trailer. The RCTA feature is automatically disabled when a trailer is attached to the vehicle.

Turning the Features On or Off

RCTA can be turned on or off using the infotainment system. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Assistance Systems for Driving

If equipped, when driving the vehicle in a forward gear, Forward Collision Alert (FCA), Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB), Lane Keep Assist (LKA), Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA), Night Vision System, Lane Change Alert (LCA), and/or Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) can help to avoid a crash or reduce crash damage.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

The FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a red flashing alert on the windshield and rapidly beeps or pulses the driver seat. FCA also lights an amber visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m (197 ft) and operates at speeds above 8 km/h (5 mph). If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it can detect vehicles to distances of approximately 110 m (360 ft) and operates at all speeds. See *Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)* ⇨ *274*.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *231*.

FCA can be disabled through vehicle personalization. See “Collision/ Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead

FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected, the vehicle ahead indicator will display green. Vehicles may not be detected on curves, highway exit ramps, or hills, due to poor visibility; or if a vehicle ahead is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

⚠ Warning

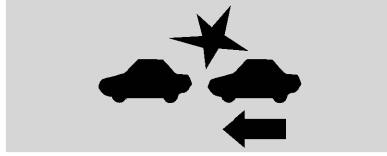
FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a

(Continued)

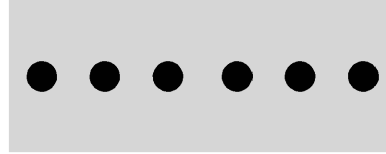
Warning (Continued)

vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windshield is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windshield are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windshield, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

Collision Alert



With Head-Up Display



Without Head-Up Display

When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash on the windshield. Also, eight rapid high-pitched beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. When this Collision Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed.

Tailgating Alert

The vehicle ahead indicator will display amber when you are following a vehicle ahead much too closely.

Selecting the Alert Timing

The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press to set the FCA timing to Far, Medium, or Near. The first button press shows the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect the timing of both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timings may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

If your vehicle is equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), changing the FCA timing setting does not change the following gap setting (Far, Medium, or Near). Adjustments to the following gap setting can be made while ACC is engaged.

Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, this may correct the issue:

- Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror.
- Clean the entire front of the vehicle.
- Clean the headlamps.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

The AEB system may help avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. AEB also includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA). When the system detects a vehicle ahead in your path that is traveling in the same direction that you may be about to crash into, it can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle. This can help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes when driving in a forward gear. Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard. This Automatic Emergency Braking can only occur if a vehicle is detected. This is shown by the FCA vehicle ahead indicator being lit. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *318*.

The system works when driving in a forward gear between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph), or on vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) above 4 km/h (2 mph). It can detect vehicles up to approximately 60 m (197 ft).

⚠ Warning

AEB is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on AEB to brake the vehicle. AEB will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles.

AEB may not:

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Detect a vehicle ahead on winding or hilly roads.
- Detect all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detect a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.
- Detect a vehicle ahead if it is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

AEB may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash. If this happens, AEB may engage the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle at a stop. Release the EPB or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

AEB may automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and undesired. It could respond to a turning vehicle ahead, guardrails, signs, and other non-moving objects. To override AEB, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA)

IBA may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. IBA will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

IBA may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

AEB and IBA can be disabled. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

⚠ Warning

Using AEB or IBA while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and crash. Turn the system to Alert or Off when towing a trailer.

A system unavailable message may display if:

- The front of the vehicle or windshield is not clean.
- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with object detection.
- There is a problem with the StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system.

The AEB system does not need service.

Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System

If equipped, the FPB system may help avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes with nearby pedestrians when driving in a forward gear. FPB displays an amber indicator, , when a nearby pedestrian is detected ahead. When approaching a detected pedestrian too quickly, FPB provides a red flashing alert on the windshield and rapidly beeps or pulses the driver seat. FPB can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle. This system includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA), and the Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) system may also respond to pedestrians. See *Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)* ⇨ *320*.

The FPB system can detect and alert to pedestrians in a forward gear at speeds between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph). During daytime driving, the system detects pedestrians up to a distance of approximately 40 m (131 ft). During nighttime driving, system performance is very limited.

⚠ Warning

FPB does not provide an alert or automatically brake the vehicle, unless it detects a pedestrian. FPB may not detect pedestrians, including children:

- When the pedestrian is not directly ahead, fully visible, or standing upright, or when part of a group.
- Due to poor visibility, including nighttime conditions, fog, rain, or snow.
- If the FPB sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice.
- If the headlamps or windshield are not cleaned or in proper condition.

Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. For more information, see *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *231*. Keep the windshield, headlamps, and FPB sensor clean and in good repair.

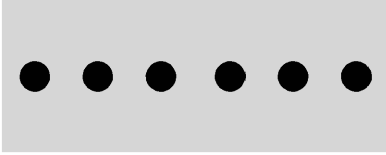
FPB can be set to Off, Alert, or Alert and Brake through vehicle personalization. See “Collision/ Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

Detecting the Pedestrian Ahead

FPB alerts and automatic braking will not occur unless the FPB system detects a pedestrian. When a nearby pedestrian is detected in front of the vehicle, the pedestrian ahead indicator will display amber.

Front Pedestrian Alert

With Head-Up Display



Without Head-Up Display

When the vehicle approaches a pedestrian ahead too rapidly, the red FPB alert display will flash on the windshield. Eight rapid high-pitched beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. When this Pedestrian Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the Front Pedestrian Alert occurs.

Automatic Braking

If FPB detects it is about to crash into a pedestrian directly ahead, and the brakes have not been applied, FPB may automatically brake moderately or brake hard. This can help to avoid some very low speed pedestrian crashes or reduce pedestrian injury. FPB can automatically brake to detected pedestrians between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph). Automatic braking levels may be reduced under certain conditions, such as higher speeds.

If this happens, Automatic Braking may engage the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle at a stop. Release the EPB. A firm press of the accelerator pedal will also release Automatic Braking and the EPB.

⚠ Warning

FPB may alert or automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and undesired. It could falsely alert or brake for objects similar in shape or size to pedestrians, including shadows. This is normal operation and the vehicle does not need service. To override Automatic Braking, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Automatic Braking can be disabled through vehicle personalization. See “Front Pedestrian Detection” in “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

⚠ Warning

Using the Front Pedestrian Braking system while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and crash. Turn the system to Alert or Off when towing a trailer.

Cleaning the System

If FPB does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror may correct the issue.

Night Vision System

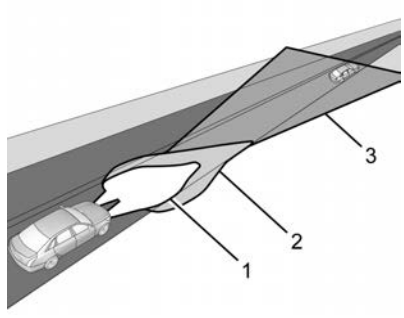
If equipped, this system can help the driver see and alert the driver to pedestrians or large animals ahead of the vehicle beyond the area lit by the headlamps. A thermal heat image of the view ahead is displayed when it is dark enough outside. If a pedestrian or large animal is detected more than

25 m (82 ft) away, a yellow box appears around the pedestrian or large animal. With the vehicle moving, when the system detects a pedestrian or large animal may approach or cross the vehicle's path, an amber pedestrian or animal icon displays and an amber box appears around the identified object. When the system detects that the vehicle is approaching a pedestrian or large animal ahead too quickly, the yellow or amber box changes to red.

With the Pedestrian Braking system turned on, Night Vision provides a red Head-Up Display (HUD) alert when the system detects that the vehicle is approaching a pedestrian ahead too quickly. In addition, an alert beeps or the Safety Alert Seat pulses, if equipped. See *Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System* ⇨ *322*.

⚠ Warning

The system does not detect all objects or the vehicle distance from objects. The system may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash.



1. Low-Beam Headlamps
2. High-Beam Headlamps
3. Night Vision System

By selecting a view on the instrument cluster, the Night Vision image can be displayed. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114* . The Night Vision system can operate only if:

- The ignition is on.
- The vehicle is in P (Park) or a forward gear.
- It is dark enough outside.
- The headlamps are on, except when parked.

Adjust the instrument panel brightness to make the image no brighter than necessary. Turn the image off by selecting another view on the instrument cluster. The night vision image brightness and contrast can be adjusted individually using the touchscreen to the left of the instrument cluster.

Warm objects, such as pedestrians, animals, and other moving vehicles, should appear whiter on the Night Vision display. Cold objects, such as the sky, signs, and parked vehicles, should appear darker. Night Vision only shows objects that are warmer or colder than the surroundings. It does

not detect brake lamps, turn signals, emergency flashers, traffic lights, or sign information.

Use this system as an aid by occasionally glancing at the image. Do not stare at the image or use the image under well-lit conditions.

⚠ Warning

Do not stare at the image while driving as this might cause important objects ahead not to be seen. You could crash, and you or others could be injured.

When a pedestrian or large animal is detected, a yellow box will be drawn around it. With the vehicle moving when the pedestrian or animal may be in the vehicle path, an amber box displays around the pedestrian or animal on the Night Vision display and an amber pedestrian icon, , or animal icon, , displays on the instrument cluster. This pedestrian icon is also shown on the Head-Up Display (HUD). When the system detects the vehicle is approaching a pedestrian or large animal too quickly, the amber pedestrian icon or animal icon and amber box turns red, and a red flashing icon, or , displays on the HUD with rapid beeping or pulsing of the Safety Alert Seat, if equipped.

System pedestrian icons, beeps, and (if equipped) Safety Alert Seat pulses can be set to Off through vehicle personalization by turning off the Front Pedestrian Braking system. See “Front Pedestrian Detection” in “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*.

⚠ Warning

The Night Vision system does not automatically brake the vehicle. It does not provide alerts unless it detects a pedestrian or large animal. The system may not detect pedestrians, including children, or animals:

- If they are less than 25 m (82 ft) away.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- If they are not directly ahead in the sensor coverage area, fully visible, standing upright, or part of a group.
- If the person or animal is moving too quickly through the field of view, such as a bicyclist.
- If the pedestrian is wearing certain types of clothing.
- If headlamps are off, except when parked.
- If the outside temperature is high.
- Due to poor visibility, including in heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- If the sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, rain, or ice.

Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. For more information, see *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *231*. Keep the Night Vision sensor clean and in good repair.

Night Vision Detection Unavailable and icon is displayed when the Night Vision system is unable to detect pedestrians or animals. It may be caused by high ambient temperatures or other conditions. The message can be dismissed and the system does not need service.

In rain, snow, or fog the image may not be clear and the direction of the road ahead may not be seen. In more severe weather conditions, the image may be unclear and unusable. The system does not need service.

Keep the night vision camera clean by activating the front windshield washer five times when it is dark enough for the system to operate. If the Night Vision image still looks blurry, use a soft wet cloth to gently clean the sensor camera lens and dry thoroughly. The night vision camera is behind the lower front grille below the driver side headlamp.

The camera must also be aligned to work correctly. If the camera needs adjustment, see your dealer. Do not attempt to adjust the camera yourself.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the SBZA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone, or blind spot areas. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the turn signal is activated and a vehicle is also detected on the same side, the display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes. Since this system is part of the Lane Change Alert (LCA) system, read the entire LCA section before using this feature.

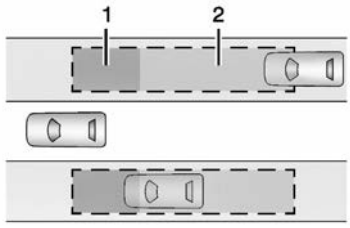
Lane Change Alert (LCA)

If equipped, the Lane Change Alert (LCA) system is a lane-changing aid that can assist drivers with avoiding lane change crashes with moving vehicles in the side blind zone, or blind spot areas or with vehicles rapidly approaching these areas from behind. When a vehicle is detected in the blind zone, the LCA warning display will light up in the corresponding side mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on. The Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system is included as part of the LCA system.

⚠ Warning

LCA does not alert the driver to vehicles outside of the system detection zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

LCA Detection Zones



1. SBZA Detection Zone
2. LCA Detection Zone

When towing a trailer, LCA feature is disabled. When not towing a trailer, the LCA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m (11 ft). The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m (1.5 ft) and 2 m (6 ft) off the ground. Drivers are also warned of vehicles rapidly approaching this area up to approximately 70 m (230 ft) behind the vehicle.

Extended Side Blind Zone Area (ESBZA)

If equipped, the ESBZA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone, or blind spot areas. The extended side blind zone area adds the blind zone area along the side of a trailer that the host vehicle is pulling.

When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in that extended blind zone. If the turn signal is activated and a vehicle is also detected on the same side, the display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes. Since this system is part of the Lane Change Alert system, read the entire Lane Change Alert section before using this feature.

⚠ Warning

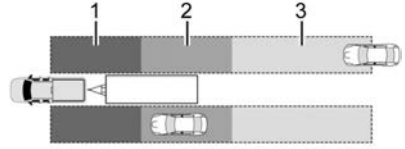
ESBZA does not alert the driver to vehicles outside of the system detection zones, pedestrians,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

ESBZA Detection Zones



1. SBZA Detection Zone
2. ESBZA Detection Zone
3. LCA Detection Zone

The Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) warning area starts at approximately the middle of the vehicle and goes back 5 m (16 ft). The Extended Side Blind Zone Alert (ESBZA) warning area starts at approximately 3 m

(10 ft) to the trailing edge of the vehicle and goes back up to 21 m (69 ft) behind the vehicle. The maximum trailer length is 12 m (39 ft).

How the System Works

The LCA/ESBZA symbol lights up in the side mirrors when the system detects a moving vehicle in the next lane over that is in the extended side blind zone. This indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the SBZA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

Left Side Mirror Display

Right Side Mirror Display

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror LCA/ESBZA displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left- or right-side mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the turn signal is activated in the same direction as a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

LCA/ESBZA displays may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly, or when passing a stopped vehicle. LCA/ESBZA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a bicycle, or object extending out to either side of the vehicle or trailer. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

LCA/ESBZA can be disabled through vehicle personalization. See “Collision/ Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *139*. If SBZA is disabled by the driver, the ESBZA mirror displays will not light up.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

LCA/ESBZA displays may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly, or when passing a stopped vehicle. The LCA/ESBZA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed. Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. LCA/ESBZA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side of the vehicle or trailer. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

LCA/ESBZA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the side blind zone, especially in wet conditions. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

LCA/ESBZA may not operate when the LCA/ESBZA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *442*. If the DIC displays the system unavailable message after cleaning

both sides of the vehicle toward the rear corners of the vehicle, see your dealer.

If the DIC displays the system unavailable message after cleaning both sides of the vehicle toward the rear corners of the vehicle, see your dealer

If the LCA/ESBZA displays do not light up when vehicles are in the blind zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

When ESBZA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the Extended Side Blind Zone Alert On option will not be available on the personalization menu.

Driving with a Trailer

Although this system is intended to help drivers avoid lane change crashes, it does not replace driver vision and therefore should be considered a lane change aid. Even with the ESBZA system, the driver must check carefully for objects outside of the reporting zone (e.g., a fast approaching vehicle) or vehicle along the side of the trailer before changing lanes.

Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

If equipped, LKA may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. This system uses a camera to detect lane markings. The LKA may be ready to assist at speeds between 50 km/h (31 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph). LKA may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking. It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert if the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking. This system is not intended to keep the vehicle centered in the lane. LKA will not assist and alert if the turn signal is active in the direction of lane departure, or if it detects that you are accelerating, braking or actively steering. LKA can be overridden by turning the steering wheel. If the system detects you are steering intentionally across a lane marker, the LDW will not be given. Do not expect the LDW to occur when you are intentionally crossing a lane marker.

⚠ Warning

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. It may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The LKA and LDW systems may not:

- Provide an alert or enough steering assist to avoid a lane departure or crash.
- Detect lane markings under poor weather or visibility conditions. This can occur if the windshield or headlamps are blocked by dirt, snow, or ice; if they are not in proper condition; or if the sun shines directly into the camera.
- Detect road edges.
- Detect lanes on winding or hilly roads.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If LKA only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist or provide an LDW alert when approaching the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marking. Even with LKA and LDW, you must steer the vehicle. Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windshield, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair. Do not use LKA in bad weather conditions or on roads with unclear lane markings, such as construction zones.

⚠ Warning

Using LKA on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Turn the system off.

⚠ Warning

LKA will not alert the driver if a towed trailer crosses into an adjacent lane of travel. Serious injury or property damage may occur if the trailer moves into another lane. Always monitor the trailer position while towing to make sure it is within the same lane as the tow vehicle.

How the System Works

LKA uses a camera sensor installed on the windshield ahead of the rearview mirror to detect lane markings. It may provide brief steering assist if it detects an unintended lane departure. It may further provide an audible alert or the driver seat may pulse indicating that a lane marking has been crossed. The system does not provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) when intentionally steering across a lane marker.

To turn LKA on and off, press on the center console. If equipped, the indicator light on the button comes on when LKA is on and turns off when LKA is disabled. On some vehicles, a long press of over three seconds is required to turn LKA off.

When on, is white, if equipped, indicating that the system is not ready to assist. is green if LKA is ready to assist. LKA may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking. is amber when assisting. It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert by flashing amber if the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking. Additionally, there may be three beeps, or the driver seat may pulse three times, on the right or left, depending on the lane departure direction.

Take Steering

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. If LKA does not detect active driver steering, an alert and chime may be provided. Steer the vehicle to dismiss. LKA may become temporarily unavailable after repeated take steering alerts.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The system performance may be affected by:

- Close vehicles ahead.
- Sudden lighting changes, such as when driving through tunnels.
- Banked roads.
- Roads with poor lane markings, such as two-lane roads.

If the LKA system is not functioning properly when lane markings are clearly visible, cleaning the windshield may help.

A camera blocked message may display if the camera is blocked. Some driver assistance systems may have reduced performance or not work at all. An LKA or LDW unavailable message may display if the systems are temporarily unavailable. This message could be due to a blocked camera. The LKA system does not need service. Clean the outside of the windshield behind the rearview mirror.

LKA assistance and/or LDW alerts may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service. Turn LKA off if these conditions continue.

Fuel

Top Tier Fuel

GM recommends the use of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline to keep the engine clean, reduce engine deposits, and maintain optimal vehicle performance. Look for the TOP TIER Logo or see www.toptiergas.com for a list of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline marketers and applicable countries.

TOP TIER
Detergent Gasoline

CATEGORIE SUPERIÉURE
Essences Détergentes

Recommended Fuel

For diesel engine vehicles, see “Fuel for Diesel Engines” in the Duramax diesel supplement.

Premium unleaded gasoline meeting ASTM specification D4814 with a posted octane rating (R+M)/2 of 91 or greater is recommended.
If unavailable, unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 may be

used, but will result in reduced performance and driveability. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline rated at 91 or greater, the engine needs service.

Do not use any fuel labeled E85 or FlexFuel. Do not use gasoline with ethanol levels greater than 15% by volume.

Prohibited Fuels

Caution

Do not use fuels with any of the following conditions; doing so may damage the vehicle and void its warranty:

- For vehicles that are not FlexFuel, fuel labeled greater than 15% ethanol by volume, such as mid-level ethanol blends (16–50% ethanol), E85, or FlexFuel.
- Fuel with any amount of methanol, methylal, ferrocene, and aniline. These fuels can

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

corrode metal fuel system parts or damage plastic and rubber parts.

- Fuel containing metals such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT), which can damage the emissions control system and spark plugs.
- Fuel with a posted octane rating of less than the recommended fuel. Using this fuel will lower fuel economy and performance, and may decrease the life of the emissions catalyst.

Fuels in Foreign Countries

The U.S., Canada, and Mexico post fuel octane ratings in anti-knock index (AKI). For fuel not to use in a foreign country, see *Prohibited Fuels* ⇨ *332*.

Fuel Additives

TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is highly recommended for use with your vehicle. If your country does not have TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, add ACDelco Fuel System Treatment Plus -Gasoline to the vehicle's gasoline fuel tank at every oil change or 15 000 km (9,000 mi), whichever occurs first. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline and ACDelco Fuel System Treatment Plus-Gasoline will help keep your vehicle's engine fuel deposit free and performing optimally.

Filling the Tank

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

An arrow on the fuel gauge indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel door is on. See *Fuel Gauge* ⇨ *116*.

⚠ Warning

Fuel vapors and fuel fires burn violently and can cause injury or death.

Follow these guidelines to help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump island.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Turn off the engine when refueling.
- Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel.
- Do not leave the fuel pump unattended.
- Avoid using electronic devices while refueling.
- Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel.
- Keep children away from the fuel pump and never let children pump fuel.
- Before touching the fill nozzle, touch a metallic object to discharge static electricity from your body.
- Fuel can spray out if the fill nozzle is inserted too quickly. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Insert the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

fill nozzle slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop before beginning to flow fuel.

The fuel door unlocks when the vehicle doors are unlocked. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *7*.

To open the fuel door, push and release the rearward center edge of the door.

The capless refueling system does not have a fuel cap. Fully insert and latch the fill nozzle, begin fueling.

⚠ Warning

Overfilling the fuel tank by more than three clicks of a standard fill nozzle may cause:

- Vehicle performance issues, including engine stalling and damage to the fuel system.
- Fuel spills.
- Under certain conditions, fuel fires.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait five seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the fill nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *442*. Push the fuel door closed until it latches.

⚠ Warning

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the fill nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Filling the Tank with a Portable Fuel Container

If the vehicle runs out of fuel and must be filled from a portable fuel container:

1. Locate the capless funnel adapter.
2. Insert and latch the funnel into the capless fuel system.

⚠ Warning

Attempting to refuel from a portable fuel container without using the funnel adapter may cause fuel spillage and damage the capless fuel system. This could cause a fire. You or others could be badly burned and the vehicle could be damaged.

3. Remove and clean the funnel adapter and return it to the storage location.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ Warning

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You or others could be badly burned and the vehicle could be damaged. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, in a pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Maintain contact until filling is complete.
- Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Avoid using electronic devices while pumping fuel.

Trailer Towing

General Towing Information

Only use towing equipment that has been designed for the vehicle. Contact your dealer or trailering dealer for assistance with preparing the vehicle to tow a trailer. Read the entire section before towing a trailer.

To tow a disabled vehicle, see *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *437*. To tow the vehicle behind another vehicle such as a motor home, see *Recreational Vehicle Towing* ⇨ *438*.

Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips

⚠ Warning

You can lose control when towing a trailer if the correct equipment is not used or the vehicle is not driven properly. For example, if the trailer is too heavy or the trailer brakes are inadequate for the load, the vehicle may not stop as expected. You and others could be seriously injured. The vehicle may also be damaged, and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Pull a trailer only if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

Driving with a Trailer

Trailering is different than just driving the vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability, and fuel economy.

Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

The following information has many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

When towing a trailer:

- Become familiar with and follow all state and local laws that apply to trailer towing. These requirements vary from state to state.
- State laws may require the use of extended side view mirrors. Even if not required, you should install extended side view mirrors if your visibility is limited or restricted while towing.
- Do not tow a trailer during the first 800 km (500 mi) of vehicle use to prevent damage to the engine, axle, or other parts.
- It is recommended to perform the first oil change before heavy towing.
- During the first 800 km (500 mi) of trailer towing, do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and do not make starts at full throttle.
- Vehicles can tow in D (Drive). Tow/Haul Mode is recommended for heavier trailers. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *266*. If the transmission downshifts too often, a lower gear may be selected using Manual Mode. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *255*.

If equipped, the following driver assistance features should be turned off when towing a trailer:

- Park Assist
- Automatic Parking Assist (APA)
- Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB)

If equipped, the following driver assistance features should be turned to alert or off when towing a trailer, unless equipped with Super Cruise:

- Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)
- Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB)

If equipped with Lane Change Alert (LCA), the LCA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back

when a trailer is towed. Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer.

If equipped with Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), use caution while backing up when towing a trailer, as the RCTA detection zones that extend out from the back of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed.

⚠ Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter if the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window is open.

When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window open.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Also adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *251*.

Towing a trailer requires experience. The combination of the vehicle and trailer is longer and not as responsive as the vehicle itself. Get used to the handling and braking of the combination by driving on a level road surface before driving on public roads.

The trailer structure, the tires, and the brakes must be all be rated to carry the intended cargo. Inadequate trailer equipment can cause the combination to operate in an unexpected or unsafe manner. Before driving, inspect all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires, and mirrors. See *Towing Equipment* ⇨ *343*. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the combination moving and then manually apply the trailer brake controller to check the trailer brakes work. During the trip, occasionally check that the cargo and trailer are secure and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are working.

Towing with a Stability Control System

When towing, the stability control system might be heard. The system reacts to vehicle movement caused by the trailer, which mainly occurs during cornering. This is normal when towing heavier trailers.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving without a trailer. This can help to avoid heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. The combination of the vehicle and trailer will not accelerate as quickly and is much longer than the vehicle alone. It is necessary to go much farther beyond

the passed vehicle before returning to the lane. Pass on level roadways. Avoid passing on hills if possible.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. To move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move that hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Caution

Turn more slowly and make wider arcs when towing a trailer to prevent damage to your vehicle. Making very sharp turns could cause the trailer to contact the vehicle.

Make wider turns than normal when towing, so trailer will not go over soft shoulders, over curbs, or strike road signs, trees, or other objects. Always signal turns well in advance. Do not steer or brake suddenly.

Driving on Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before starting down a long or steep downhill grade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes may overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.

The vehicle can tow in D (Drive). Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions.

When towing at higher altitudes, engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at lower altitudes. If the engine is turned off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, the vehicle could show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run, preferably on level ground, with the transmission in P (Park) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If the overheat warning comes on, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *380*.

Parking on Hills

⚠ Warning

To prevent serious injury or death, always park your vehicle and trailer on a level surface when possible.

When parking your vehicle and your trailer on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, gradually release the brake pedal to allow the chocks to absorb the load of the trailer.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park).
5. Release the brake pedal.

Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
   - Start the engine.
   - Shift into a gear.
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Launching and Retrieving a Boat

Backing the Trailer into the Water

⚠ Warning

- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle before backing onto the sloped part of the ramp. Lower the driver and passenger side windows before backing onto the ramp. This will provide a means of escape in the unlikely event the vehicle slides into the water.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- If the boat launch surface is slippery, have the driver remain in the vehicle with the brake pedal applied while the boat is being launched. The boat launch can be especially slippery at low tide when part of the ramp was previously submerged at high tide. Do not back onto the ramp to launch the boat if you are not sure the vehicle can maintain traction.
- Do not move the vehicle if someone is in the path of the trailer. Some parts of the trailer might be underwater and not visible to people who are assisting in launching the boat.

Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water to prevent damage to the electrical circuits on the trailer. Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after removing the trailer from the water. If the trailer has electric brakes that can function when the trailer is submerged, it might help to leave the electrical trailer connector attached to maintain trailer brake functionality while on the boat ramp.

To back the trailer into the water:

1. If equipped, place the vehicle in four-wheel-drive high.
2. Slowly back down the boat ramp until the boat is floating, but no further than necessary.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet.
4. Have someone place chocks under the front wheels of the vehicle.
5. Gradually release the brake pedal to allow the chocks to absorb the load of the trailer.
6. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park).
7. Release the brake pedal.

Pulling the Trailer from the Water

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine and shift into a gear.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Let up on the brake pedal.

5. Drive slowly until the tires are clear of the chocks.
6. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.
7. Slowly pull the trailer from the water.
8. Once the vehicle and trailer have been driven from the sloped part of the boat ramp, the vehicle can be shifted from four-wheel-drive high. Shift into the drive mode that is appropriate for the road conditions.

Caution

If the vehicle tires begin to spin and the vehicle begins to slide toward the water, remove your foot from the accelerator pedal and apply the brake pedal. Seek help to have the vehicle towed up the ramp.

Maintenance when Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when used to tow trailers. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *452*. It is especially important to check the engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system, and brake system before and during each trip.

Check periodically that all nuts and bolts on the trailer hitch are tight.

Engine Cooling when Trailer Towing

The cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *380*.

Trailer Towing

Caution

Towing a trailer improperly can damage the vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. To tow a trailer correctly, follow the directions in this section and see your dealer for important information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

Trailering is different than just driving the vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

The following information has many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

Trailer Weight

⚠ Warning

Never exceed the towing capacity for your vehicle.

Safe trailering requires monitoring the weight, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature, dimensions of the front of the trailer, and how frequently the vehicle is used to tow a trailer.

Trailering Weight Ratings

When towing a trailer, the combined weight of the vehicle, vehicle contents, trailer, and trailer contents must be below all of the maximum weight ratings for the vehicle, including:

- GCWR: Gross Combined Weight Rating
- GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
- Maximum Trailer Weight Rating
- GAWR-RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating-Rear
- Maximum Trailer Tongue Weight Rating

See “Weight-Distributing Hitch Adjustment” under *Towing Equipment* ⇨ *343* to determine if equalizer bars are required to obtain the maximum trailer weight rating.

See “Trailer Brakes” under *Towing Equipment* ⇨ *343* to determine if brakes are required based on your trailer's weight.

The only way to be sure the weight is not exceeding any of these ratings is to weigh the tow vehicle and trailer combination, fully loaded for the trip, getting individual weights for each of these items.

A trailering information label on the driver's side door B-pillar shows tow rating information for your vehicle.

⚠ Warning

You and others could be seriously injured or killed if the trailer is too heavy or the trailer brakes are inadequate for the load. The vehicle may be damaged, and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Only tow a trailer if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer.

Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR)

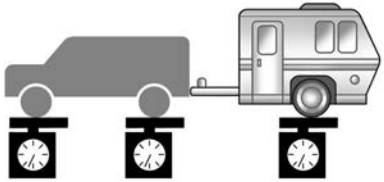
GCWR is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including any fuel, passengers, cargo, equipment, and accessories. Do not exceed the GCWR for your vehicle. The GCWR for the vehicle is on the Trailering Information Label.

To check that the weight of the vehicle and trailer are within the GCWR for the vehicle, follow these steps:

1. Start with the "curb weight" from the Trailering Information Label.
2. Add the weight of the trailer loaded with cargo and ready for the trip.
3. Add the weight of all passengers.
4. Add the weight of all cargo in the vehicle.
5. Add the weight of hitch hardware such as a draw bar, ball, load equalizer bars, or sway bars.
6. Add the weight of any accessories or aftermarket equipment added to the vehicle.

The resulting weight cannot exceed the GCWR value shown on the Trailering Information Label.

The gross combined weight can also be confirmed by weighing the vehicle and trailer on a public scale. The vehicle and trailer should be loaded for the trip with passengers and cargo.



Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

For information about the vehicle's maximum load capacity, see *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*. When calculating the GVWR with a trailer attached, the trailer tongue weight must be included as part of the weight the vehicle is carrying.

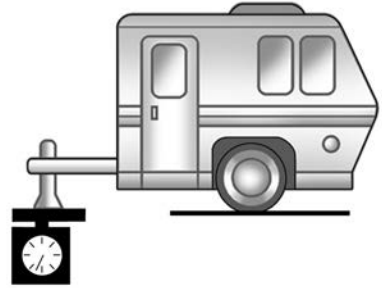
Maximum Trailer Weight

The maximum trailer weight rating is calculated assuming the tow vehicle has a driver, a front seat passenger, and all required trailering equipment. This value represents the heaviest trailer the vehicle can tow, but it may be necessary to reduce the trailer weight to stay within the GCWR, GVWR, maximum trailer tongue load, or GAWR-RR for the vehicle.

A step bumper trailer hitch can only support a total trailer weight up to 2 271 kg (5,000 lb). If a trailer hitch ball is added to the step bumper, check the hitch ball rating to be sure it is higher than the total trailer weight.

Maximum Trailer Tongue Weight Rating

The Maximum Trailer Tongue Weight Rating is the allowable trailer tongue weight that the vehicle can support using a conventional trailer hitch. It may be necessary to reduce the overall trailer weight to stay within the maximum trailer tongue weight rating while still maintaining the correct trailer load balance.



The Maximum Trailer Tongue Weight Rating for a conventional trailer hitch is shown on the Trailering Information Label.

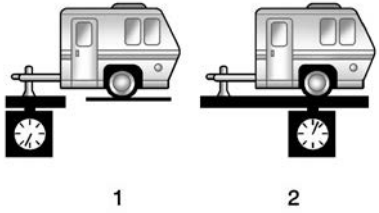
Do not exceed a maximum trailer tongue weight of 567 kg (1,250 lb) for a conventional trailer hitch.

The trailer tongue weight contributes to the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW). GVW includes the curb weight of your vehicle, any passengers, cargo, equipment and the trailer tongue weight. Vehicle options, passengers, cargo, and equipment reduce the maximum allowable tongue weight

the vehicle can carry, which also reduces the maximum allowable trailer weight.

Trailer Load Balance

The correct trailer load balance must be maintained to ensure trailer stability. Incorrect load balance is a leading cause of trailer sway.



The trailer tongue weight (1) should be 10–15% of the total loaded trailer weight (2). Some specific trailer types, such as boat trailers, fall outside of this range. Always refer to the trailer owner's manual for the recommended trailer tongue weight for each trailer. Never exceed the maximum loads for your vehicle, hitch and trailer.

The trailer load balance percentage is calculated as: weight (1) divided by weight (2) times 100.

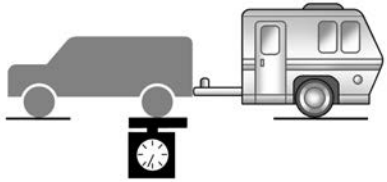
After loading the trailer, separately weigh the trailer and then the trailer tongue and calculate the trailer load balance percentage to see if the weights and distribution are appropriate for your vehicle. If the trailer weight is too high, it may be possible to transfer some of the cargo into your vehicle. If the trailer tongue weight is too high or too low, it may be possible to rearrange some of the cargo inside of the trailer.

Do not exceed the maximum allowable tongue weight for your vehicle. Use the shortest hitch extension available to position the hitch ball closer to your vehicle. This will help reduce the effect of the trailer tongue weight on the trailer hitch and the rear axle.

If a cargo carrier is used in the trailer hitch receiver, choose a carrier that positions the load as close to the vehicle as possible. Make sure the total weight, including the carrier, is no more than half of the maximum allowable tongue weight for the vehicle or 227 kg (500 lb), whichever is less.

Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR-RR)

The GAWR-RR is the total weight that can be supported by the rear axle of the vehicle. Do not exceed the GAWR-RR for the vehicle, with the tow vehicle and trailer fully loaded for the trip including the weight of the trailer tongue. If using a weight-distributing hitch, do not exceed the GAWR-RR after applying the weight distribution spring bars.



The GAWR-RR for the vehicle is on the Trailering Information Label.

Ask your dealer for trailering information or assistance.

Towing Equipment

Hitches

⚠ Warning

In order to avoid serious injury or property damage, always follow the hitch manufacturer's instructions when securing your draw bar/coupling device to the vehicle's hitch receiver.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Ensure that the draw bar/coupling device is secured with a locking retainer pin or other means such that rotation of the pin or locking mechanism will not cause the pin to back out or loosen during use. Failure to correctly secure the draw bar/coupling device to the receiver can result in separation of the hitch/receiver while towing.

Conventional Hitch

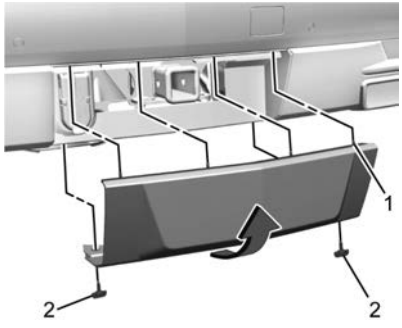
A conventional hitch is bolted to the frame or cross member of the tow vehicle, and is generally rated Class 2, 3, or 4.

Always use the correct hitch equipment for your vehicle. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads can affect the trailer and the hitch.

Proper hitch equipment for your vehicle helps maintain control of the vehicle-trailer combination. Many trailers can be towed using a weight-carrying hitch which has a coupler latched to the hitch ball, or a tow eye latched to a pintle hook. Other trailers may require a weight-distributing hitch that uses spring bars to distribute the trailer tongue weight between your vehicle and trailer axles. See “Maximum Trailer Tongue Weight Rating” under *Trailer Towing* ⇨ *339* for weight limits with various hitch types.

Avoid sharp turns when using a step-bumper hitch to prevent damage. Make wider turns to prevent contact between your trailer and your bumper.

Hitch Cover



To remove hitch cover, if equipped:

1. Remove the two fasteners on the lower tabs (2).
2. Pull the lower edge of the cover to about a 45 degree angle.
3. Pull the cover upward to disengage the upper attachments (1).

To reinstall hitch cover:

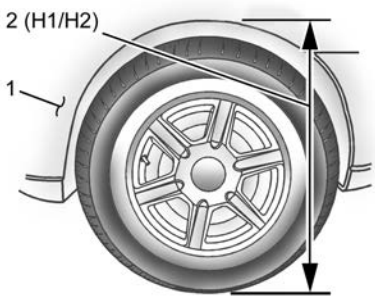
1. Hold cover at a 45 degree angle to the vehicle and push the upper tabs into the slots in the bumper.
2. Push the bottom of the cover forward until the lower tabs line up with the lower slots.
3. Snap the hitch cover into place by pushing the upper corners forward (1).
4. Reinstall the two fasteners on the lower tabs (2).

Consider using mechanical sway controls with any trailer. Ask a trailering professional about sway controls or refer to the trailer manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.

Weight-Distributing Hitch Adjustment

A weight-distributing hitch may be useful with some trailers. Use the following guidelines to determine if a weight-distributing hitch should be used.

Trailer Weight	Weight-Distributing Hitch Usage	Hitch Distribution
Up to 2 720 kg (6,000 lb)	Not Required	50%
Over 2 720 kg (6,000 lb)	Required	50%



1. Front of Vehicle
2. H1/H2 Body to Ground Distance

Towing

1. Position the truck so that the trailer is ready to connect (Keep trailer detached).
2. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening at the fender to the ground (H1).
3. Attach the vehicle to the trailer, do not attach weight distribution bars at this time.
4. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender to the ground (H2).
5. Install and adjust the tension in the weight distributing bars per the manufacturers' recommendations so that the height of the front fender is approximately H2-[(H2-H1)/2] (half way between the two measured ride heights).
6. Visually inspect the trailer and weight distributing hitch to ensure that the manufacturers' recommendations have been met.

Measurement	Height Example 1500 (mm)
H1	1000
H2	1050
H2-H1	50
(H2-H1)/2	25
H2- [(H2-H1)/2]	1025

Towing with the Four Corner Air Suspension System

1. Adjust the vehicle air suspension to "Normal Ground Clearance Height."
2. Position the truck so that the trailer is ready to connect (Keep trailer detached).
3. Enable air suspension ‘Service Mode’ in the center infotainment screen under Settings/Vehicle/ Suspension.
4. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening at the fender to the ground (H1).
5. Attach the vehicle to the trailer, do not attach weight distribution bars at this time.
6. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender to the ground (H2).
7. Install and adjust the tension in the weight distributing bars per the manufacturers’ recommendations so that the height of the front fender is approximately H2- [(H2-H1)/3] (1/3 between the two measured ride heights, below the secondary ride height {H2}).
8. Disable air suspension air suspension "Service Mode."
9. Air suspension will automatically adjust ride height following step 8.
10. Visually inspect the trailer and weight-distributing hitch to ensure that the manufacturers’ recommendations have been met.

Measurement	Height Example 1500 (mm)
H1	1 000
H2	1 060
H2-H1	60
(H2-H1)/3	20
H2-[(H2-H1)/3]	1 040

Tires

- Do not tow a trailer while using a compact spare tire on the vehicle.
- Tires must be properly inflated to support loads while towing a trailer. See *Tires* ⇨ *400* for instructions on proper tire inflation.

Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer, and attach the chains to the holes on the trailer hitch platform. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer.

If the trailer being towed weighs up to 2 271 kg (5,000 lb) with a factory-installed step bumper, safety chains may be attached to the attaching points on the bumper; otherwise, safety chains should be attached to holes on the trailer hitch.

Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Always leave just enough slack so the combination can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

Loaded trailers over 900 kg (2,000 lb) must be equipped with brake systems and with brakes for each axle. Trailer braking equipment conforming to Canadian Standards Association (CSA) requirement CAN3-D313, or its equivalent, is recommended.

State or local regulations may require trailers to have their own braking system if the loaded weight of the trailer exceeds certain minimums that can vary from state to state. Read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so they are installed, adjusted, and maintained properly. Never attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic brake system. If you do, both the vehicle anti-lock brakes and the trailer brakes may not function, which could result in a crash.

Trailer Wiring Harness

The seven-pin trailer connector is mounted in the bumper. This connector can be plugged into a seven-pin universal heavy-duty trailer connector available through your dealer.

Use only a round, seven-wire connector with flat blade terminals meeting SAE J2863 specifications for proper electrical connectivity.

The seven-wire harness contains the following trailer circuits:

- Yellow/Grey: Left Stop/Turn Signal
- Green/Violet: Right Stop/Turn Signal
- Grey/Brown: Taillamps
- White: Ground
- White/Green: Back-up Lamps
- Red/Green: Battery Feed
- Dark Blue: Trailer Brake

To help charge a remote (non-vehicle) battery, change drive mode to Tow Haul. If the trailer is too light for Tow/Haul Mode, turn on the headlamps to help charge the battery.

Electric Brake Control Wiring Provisions

These wiring provisions are included with the vehicle as part of the trailer wiring package. These provisions are for an electric brake controller.

The harness should be installed by your dealer or a qualified service center.

Refer to the aftermarket electric trailer brake controller owner's manual to determine wire color coding of the electric trailer brake controller. The wire colors on the brake controller may be different from the vehicle.

Trailer Lamps

Always check all trailer lamps are working at the beginning of each trip, and periodically on longer trips.

If equipped, the Trailering App will monitor the RH turn/brake lamp circuit, LH turn/brake lamp circuit, running lamp circuit, and reverse lamp circuits on the trailer. DIC messages and Trailering App alerts may be displayed if lighting circuit issues are detected on the trailer.

Pressing START LIGHT TEST in the Trailering App automatically activates trailer lamps. The Trailering App is not a substitute for manually inspecting your trailer lamps. See *Trailering App* ⇨ *354*.

Trailer Connection and Lamp Messages

When a trailer is properly connected and working, no trailer connection or lamp messages appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC). However; if the vehicle detects an issue with a trailer connection or lamp, you may see the following DIC message(s):

- TRAILER DISCONNECTED CHECK CONNECTION appears when a connected trailer is disconnected. It appears immediately when the vehicle is on, or upon the next start-up if the trailer was disconnected while the vehicle was off. Check the trailer connection as appropriate.
- CHECK TRAILER XXX LAMP appears when there is a detected lamp or wiring fault on the trailer. Check the trailer wiring and lamps.

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

When properly connected, the trailer turn signals should will illuminate to indicate the vehicle is turning, changing lanes, or stopping. When towing a trailer, the arrows on the instrument cluster will illuminate even if the trailer is not properly connected or the bulbs are burned out.

Tow/Haul Mode

For instructions on how to enter Tow/Haul mode, see *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *266*.

Tow/Haul assists when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

Tow/Haul Mode is designed to be most effective when the vehicle and trailer combined weight is at least 75% of the vehicle's Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR). See “Maximum Trailer Weight” under *Trailer Towing* ⇨ *339*.

Tow/Haul Mode is most useful when towing a heavy trailer or carrying a large or heavy load:

- through rolling terrain
- in stop-and-go traffic
- in busy parking lots

Operating the vehicle in Tow/Haul Mode when lightly loaded or not towing will not cause damage; however, it is not recommended and may result in unpleasant engine and transmission driving characteristics and reduced fuel economy.

Integrated Trailer Brake Control System

The vehicle may have an Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system for use with electric trailer brakes or most electric over hydraulic trailer brake systems. These instructions apply to both types of electric trailer brakes.

This symbol is on the Trailer Brake Control Panel on vehicles with an ITBC system. The power output to the trailer brakes is proportional to the amount of vehicle braking. This available power output to the trailer brakes can be adjusted to a wide range of trailering situations.

The ITBC system is integrated with the vehicle’s brake, anti-lock brake, and StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) systems. In trailering conditions that cause the vehicle’s anti-lock brake or StabiliTrak/ESC systems to activate, power sent to the trailer's brakes will be automatically adjusted to minimize trailer wheel lock-up. This does not imply that the trailer has StabiliTrak/ESC.

If the vehicle’s brake, anti-lock brake, or StabiliTrak systems are not functioning properly, the ITBC system may not function fully or at all. Make sure all of these systems are fully operational to allow the ITBC system to function properly.

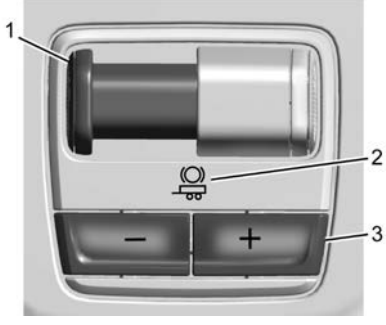
The ITBC system is powered through the vehicle's electrical system. Turning the ignition off will also turn off the

ITBC system. The ITBC system is fully functional only when the ignition is in ON/RUN.

⚠ Warning

Connecting a trailer that has an air brake system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking, including increased stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in serious injury, death, or property damage. Only use the ITBC system with electric or electric over hydraulic trailer brake systems.

Trailer Brake Control Panel



1. Manual Trailer Brake Apply Lever
2. Trailer Symbol
3. Trailer Gain Adjustment Buttons

The ITBC control panel is on the instrument panel to the left of the steering column. The control panel allows adjustment to the amount of output, referred to as Trailer Gain, available to the trailer brakes and allows manual application of the trailer brakes. Use the ITBC control panel and the DIC trailer brake display page to adjust and display power output to the trailer brakes.

Trailer Brake DIC Display Page

The ITBC display page indicates:

- Trailer Gain setting
- Output to the trailer brakes
- Trailer connection
- System operational status.

To display:

- Scroll through the DIC menu pages
- Press a Trailer Gain (+) or (-) button
- Activate the Manual Trailer Brake Apply Lever

TRAILER GAIN:

Press a Trailer Gain button to recall the current Trailer Gain setting. Each press and release of the gain buttons will then change the Trailer Gain setting. Press the Trailer Gain (+) or (-) to adjust. Press and hold to continuously adjust the Trailer Gain. To turn the output to the trailer off, adjust the Trailer Gain setting to 0.0. This setting can be adjusted from 0.0 to 10.0 with a trailer connected or disconnected.

TRAILER OUTPUT: This displays anytime a trailer with electric brakes is connected. Output to the trailer brakes is based on the amount of vehicle braking present and relative to the Trailer Gain setting. Output is displayed from 0 to 100% for each gain setting.

The Trailer Output will indicate "- - - - - -" on the Trailer Brake Display Page whenever the following occur:

- No trailer is connected.
- A trailer without electric brakes is connected, no DIC message will display

- A trailer with electric brakes has become disconnected, a CHECK TRAILER WIRING message displays on the DIC
- There is a fault present in the wiring to the trailer brakes, a CHECK TRAILER WIRING message displays on the DIC
- The ITBC system is not working due to a fault, a SERVICE TRAILER BRAKE SYSTEM message displays in the DIC

Manual Trailer Brake Apply Lever

Slide this lever right to apply the trailer's electric brakes independent of the vehicle's brakes. Use this lever to adjust Trailer Gain to achieve the proper power output to the trailer brakes. The trailer's and the vehicle's brake lamps will come on when either vehicle brakes or manual trailer brakes are applied and properly connected.

Trailer Gain Adjustment Procedure

Trailer Gain should be set for a specific trailering condition and it must be readjusted anytime vehicle loading, trailer loading, or road surface conditions change.

⚠ Warning

Trailer brakes that are over-gained or under-gained may not stop the vehicle and the trailer as intended and can result in a crash. Always follow the instructions to set the Trailer Gain for the proper trailer stopping performance.

To adjust Trailer Gain for each towing condition:

1. Drive the vehicle with the trailer attached on a level road surface representative of the towing condition and free of traffic at about 32 to 40 km/h (20 to 25 mph) and fully apply the Manual Trailer Brake apply lever.

Note

Adjusting Trailer Gain at speeds lower than 32 to 40 km/h (20 to 25 mph) may result in an incorrect gain setting.

2. Adjust the Trailer Gain, using the Trailer Gain adjustment buttons, to just below the point of trailer wheel lock-up, indicated by trailer wheel squeal or tire smoke when a trailer wheel locks.

Note

Trailer wheel lock-up may not occur if towing a heavily loaded trailer. In this case, adjust the Trailer Gain to the highest allowable setting for the towing condition.

3. Readjust Trailer Gain any time vehicle loading, trailer loading, or road surface conditions change or if trailer wheel lock-up is noticed at any time while towing.

Other ITBC-Related DIC Messages

TRAILER BRAKES CONNECTED: This message will briefly display when a trailer with electric brakes is first connected to the vehicle. This message will automatically turn off in about 10 seconds. This message can be acknowledged before it automatically turns off.

CHECK TRAILER WIRING: This message will display if:

- The ITBC system first determines connection to a trailer with electric brakes and then the trailer harness becomes disconnected the vehicle.

  If the disconnect occurs while the vehicle is stationary, this message will automatically turn off in about 30 seconds. This message will also turn off if it is acknowledged or if the trailer harness is reconnected.

  If the disconnect occurs while the vehicle is moving, this message will continue until the ignition is turned off. This message will also turn off if it is acknowledged or if the trailer harness is reconnected.
- There is an electrical fault in the wiring to the trailer brakes. This message will continue as long as there is an electrical fault in the trailer wiring. This message will also turn off if it is acknowledged.

To determine whether the electrical fault is on the vehicle side or trailer side of the trailer wiring harness connection:

1. Disconnect the trailer wiring harness from the vehicle.
2. Turn the ignition off.
3. Wait 10 seconds, then turn the ignition back to RUN.
4. If the CHECK TRAILER WIRING message reappears, the electrical fault is on the vehicle side.

   If the CHECK TRAILER WIRING message only reappears when connecting the trailer wiring harness to the vehicle, the electrical fault is on the trailer side.

SERVICE TRAILER BRAKE SYSTEM: This message will display when there is a problem with the ITBC system. If this message continues over multiple ignition cycles, there is a problem with the ITBC system. Have the vehicle serviced.

If either the CHECK TRAILER WIRING or SERVICE TRAILER BRAKE SYSTEM message displays while driving, the ITBC system may not be fully functional or may not function at all. When traffic conditions allow, carefully pull the vehicle over to the side of the road and turn the ignition off. Check the wiring connection to the trailer and turn the ignition back on. If either of these messages continues, either the vehicle or trailer needs service.

A GM dealer may be able to diagnose and repair problems with the trailer. However, any diagnosis and repair of the trailer is not covered under the vehicle warranty. Contact your trailer dealer for assistance with trailer repairs and trailer warranty information.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

Vehicles with StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) have a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature. Trailer sway is unintended side-to-side motion of a trailer while towing. If the vehicle is towing a trailer and the TSC detects that sway is increasing, the vehicle brakes are selectively applied at each wheel, to help reduce excessive trailer sway. If equipped with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, and the trailer has an electric brake system, StabiliTrak may also apply the trailer brakes.

If TSC is enabled, the Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak warning light will flash on the instrument cluster. Reduce vehicle speed by gradually removing your foot from the accelerator. If trailer sway continues, StabiliTrak can help slow the vehicle down. TSC will not function if StabiliTrak is turned off. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *264*.

⚠ Warning

Trailer sway can result in a crash and in serious injury or death, even if the vehicle is equipped with TSC.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If the trailer begins to sway, reduce vehicle speed by gradually removing your foot from the accelerator. Then pull over to check the trailer and vehicle to help correct possible causes, including an improperly or overloaded trailer, unrestrained cargo, improper trailer hitch configuration, or improperly inflated or incorrect vehicle or trailer tires. See *Towing Equipment* ⇨ *343* for trailer ratings and hitch setup recommendations.

Aftermarket Electronic Trailer Sway Control Devices

Some trailers may come equipped with an electronic device designed to reduce or control trailer sway. Aftermarket equipment manufacturers also offer similar devices that connect to the wiring between the trailer and the vehicle. These devices may interfere with the vehicle's trailer brake systems or other systems, including integrated anti-sway systems, if equipped. Messages related to trailer connections or trailer brakes could appear on the DIC. The effects of these aftermarket devices on vehicle handling or trailer brake performance is not known.

⚠ Warning

Use of aftermarket electronic trailer sway control devices could result in reduced trailer brake performance, loss of trailer brakes, or other malfunctions, and result in a crash. You or others could be seriously injured or killed. Before using one of these devices:

- Ask the device or trailer manufacturer if the device has been thoroughly tested for compatibility with the make, model, and year of your vehicle and any optional equipment installed on your vehicle.
- Before driving, check the trailer brakes are working properly, if equipped. Drive the vehicle with the trailer attached on a level road surface that is free of traffic at about 32-40 km/h

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

(20-25 mph) and fully apply the manual trailer brake apply lever. Also, check the trailer brake lamps and other lamps are functioning correctly.

- If the trailer brakes are not operating properly at any time, or if a DIC message indicates problems with the trailer connections or trailer brakes, carefully pull the vehicle over to the side of the road when traffic conditions allow.

Trailer Tires

Special Trailer (ST) tires differ from vehicle tires. Trailer tires are designed with stiff sidewalls to help prevent sway and to support heavy loads. These features can make it difficult to determine if the trailer tire pressures are low only based on a visual inspection.

Always check all trailer tire pressures before each trip when the tires are cool. Low trailer tire pressure is a leading cause of trailer tire blow-outs.

If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer tire pressure monitoring system, see the trailer tire pressure monitoring system description and the trailering app.

Trailer tires deteriorate over time. The trailer tire sidewall will show the week and year the tire was manufactured. Many trailer tire manufacturers recommend replacing tires more than six years old.

Overloading is another leading cause of trailer tire blow-outs. Never load your trailer with more weight than the tires are designed to support. The load rating is located on the trailer tire sidewall.

Always know the maximum speed rating for the trailer tires before driving. This may be significantly lower than the vehicle tire speed rating. The speed rating may be on the trailer tire sidewall. If the speed rating is not shown, the default trailer tire speed rating is 105 km/h (65 mph).

Trailering App

Trailer Lights App

If equipped, the Trailer Lights App is on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

Touch Start to cycle the trailer lamps on and off to determine if they are working. The test follows this sequence:

1. The running lights turn on first and remain on throughout the sequence.
2. The brake lights turn on for about two seconds.
3. The left turn signal light flashes three times.
4. The right turn signal light flashes three times.
5. The reverse lights turn on for about two seconds.
6. Steps 2–5 repeat for approximately one minute and 45 seconds, or until the test deactivates.

Touch Stop to stop the test. The test will automatically end after one minute and 45 seconds.

The sequence also deactivates when any of the following occur:

- The ignition is turned off.
- The transmission is shifted out of P (Park).
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The turn signal is activated.
- The hazard warning lights are activated.

Trailering App

If equipped, the Trailering App is on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

If equipped this feature allows profiles for connected trailers to be created to view status, to store and track trailer usage information, and to set up towing assistance features.

The Trailering App Preview will appear when the Trailering App is opened for the first time from the Home Page. Touch GET STARTED in the Trailering App to go into the app.

When a trailer is electrically connected and a trailer profile has not been created, there will be an option to create a profile, use a guest profile, or select Accessory/No trailer. After the pop-up is displayed three times, Don't Remind Me will display and touching that will turn off the trailer detection pop-up. To turn the Trailer Detection Alert on, select ON in the Settings tab.

When a trailer is electrically connected and after a Trailer Profile has been created, the trailer detection pop-up will appear with a list of all of the custom Trailer Profiles made on the vehicle. To load an existing Trailer Profile, select one of the Trailer Profiles listed, or load the Guest Trailer Profile by selecting GUEST TRAILER. Touching Accessory/No trailer will select Accessory/No trailer as the active Trailer Profile and will dismiss the pop- up. Shifting the vehicle from P (Park) will select Guest Trailer as the active Trailer Profile and will dismiss the pop-up.

Create a Trailer Profile

1. Touch Create Profile on the trailer detection pop-up or touch + Add Trailer Profile in the Trailering App.
2. Create a name for the trailer.
3. Select the trailer type.
4. Select Save Profile.

A pop-up will indicate the setup is complete. Touch DONE to complete the process or touch TRAILER FEATURE SETUP to set up the Tow/Haul Mode reminder, Trailer Tire Pressure Monitoring System, if equipped, maintenance reminders, or towing assistance, if equipped.

Import a Trailer Profile

A trailer profile saved to an OnStar account can be imported to the vehicle.

1. Touch + Add Trailer Profile in the Trailering App
2. Touch Import Profile on the pop-up.
3. Select a trailer profile from the list.
4. Touch IMPORT.

A pop-up will indicate the import was successful. Touch OK to return to the trailer list and select the trailer profile. The Tow/Haul Mode reminder, Brake Gain Setting and Trailer Tire Pressure sensor learning, if equipped, do not import.

Trailer Feature Setup

Tow/Haul Mode Reminder

To turn the Tow/Haul Mode Reminder setting on, touch Yes. To turn it off, touch No.

Trailer Tire Pressure Setup

If the Trailer Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TTPMS) is detected, touch the Tire Pressure Monitoring icon to set up tire pressure monitoring. Touch Yes to set up the sensors or touch No to return to the previous screen.

The trailer tire pressure sensors can transmit up to 7 m (23 ft) from the hitch receiver of the vehicle.

A trailer must be electrically connected to the vehicle before starting the sensor-to-vehicle learn process.

After selecting Start from the Learn Sensors screen, use the Tool Method or the Manual Method (described below) to learn each tire sensor, during which the current tire number will be highlighted.

Each sensor has a minimum of two minutes to learn, shown by a timer. After a sensor is learned, a checkmark appears next to the tire, the vehicle horn will sound, the vehicle's brake lamps will flash, and all working trailer lamps will flash. It then moves to the next sensor.

To cancel the process touch Stop.

The recommended tire pressure must be entered for the trailer tires. This allows the vehicle to alert when the tire pressure is high or low.

TTPMS must learn the location of the installed tire sensors to show correct air pressure and temperature for each tire. To set up, use one of the following options or see a tire or trailer dealer for service. The learning process must be repeated when the trailer tires are rotated or replaced. See "Editing a Trailer Profile" later in this section for tire pressure sensor relearn information.

Tool Method: A TTPMS activation tool can be purchased separately to learn the sensor locations.

Manual Method: Without the tool, the air pressure can be increased or decreased in each tire for 10 seconds. Do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure found on the tire sidewalls. Make sure to re-adjust tire pressure to the recommended level when the process is complete.

Sensor Learning Steps

To complete the sensor-to-vehicle learn process:

1. Touch Start on the Learn Sensors screen. The horn chirps twice and the Learning Active screen appears on the infotainment display.
2. Start with the driver side front trailer tire.
3. Activate the tool near the valve stem or adjust the air pressure of this tire until the horn chirps and all working vehicle and trailer lights flash.

   The process stops without saving the sensor locations if this step takes more than two minutes.

4. Move to the next tire and repeat Step 3 for each sensor. The horn chirps twice when all sensors are completed.
5. Return to the vehicle to complete the setup.

Maintenance Reminders

To set up maintenance reminders, touch the Trailer Maintenance icon. Select Yes to set up the maintenance reminders for the Trailer Profile. Follow the on-screen prompts. The maximum number of reminders is 50. Select No to return to the previous screen.

Towing Assistance

To set up towing assistance features, if equipped, touch the Towing Assistance icon.

Touch Yes to begin set up or touch No to return to the previous screen.

1. Select the number of axles on the trailer.
2. Enter trailer dimensions
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete setup for available features.

Rear Trailer Guidance Setup, If Equipped

A rear trailer camera must be mounted on the trailer and electrically connected to the vehicle before rear trailer guidance feature can be used. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *302*.

Trailer dimensions must be in range to enable this feature.

Trailer Length: 300 cm (118.1 in) – 1300 cm (511.8 in). Measure from center of coupler to furthest rear point on the trailer.

1. If trailer dimensions are out of range, this feature will be unavailable.
2. Ensure rear trailer camera is connected.
3. Follow instructions to drive forward to complete calibration.

Trailer Length Indicator Setup

1. Follow instructions to drive forward to complete calibration.

Trailer Side Blind Zone Alert Setup

Trailer dimensions must be in range to enable this feature.

- Trailer Length: 300 cm (118.1 in) – 1200 cm (472.4 in). Measure from center of coupler to furthest rear point on the trailer.

If trailer dimensions are out of range, this feature will be unavailable.

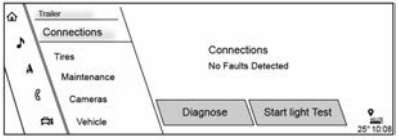
Status View

The Status view shows:

- Vehicle
- Connections
- Tires
- Maintenance
- Cameras

Upon entry, the most recent items will be shown.

Connections



1. Trailer Electrical Diagnostics
2. Light Test Start Button

Connections: OK

If a trailer connection is detected without any faults, the view will display NO FAULTS DETECTED.

Trailer Connections Status

When a trailer is connected, the Trailering App System detects the trailer connection using the Stop/Turn Signal lighting circuits and alerts the driver by requesting a trailer profile setup through the Trailering App System on the infotainment screen. The Trailer Detection Alert setting must be enabled for the alert to display when a trailer is connected.

When a trailer is connected and the ignition is off, the Trailering App System will periodically pulse the lighting circuits of the trailer to verify it is still connected. The trailer lights may periodically flash as a result of this trailer connection detection. These flashes may be more visible in dark ambient light environments. The flashing or flickering lights are a normal condition and the Trailering App System has built-in protections to prevent the battery from draining. When Theft Alert is also enabled the frequency and pattern of this flashing will change.

If a connected trailer becomes disconnected, a message about the trailer disconnect will appear on the DIC immediately (if vehicle is on) or upon next ignition cycle (if trailer was disconnected while vehicle is off). Check your trailer connection if needed.

Connection Problem

If any of the trailer connections are lost, a message about the connection issue will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC). The infotainment display will also show the connection issue in the Connection Status view.

If a trailer connection is not detected, the Trailering App will not display the Connection Status screen.

Connection Trailer Lighting Faults Detected

The Trailering App System monitors for electrical faults on the trailer lights. A message about the lighting issue will appear on the DIC. The infotainment display will also show the lighting issue in the Connection Status view. Repair your trailer lights if needed. A trailer lighting issue is not covered by your GM warranty.

Diagnose View

Touch Diagnose to see more information about the connection problem.

This view will display the names of the trailer connector pins, a graphic of the trailer connector, and a graphic of the back of the trailer.

Any connector pin that failed will be amber color, and the location of the corresponding connection will be highlighted on the graphic of the back of the trailer.

The Running Lights connection may not detect partial outages. Activate the light test to check all trailer lamps. See “Light Test” following.

Light Test

Touch Start Light Test to cycle the trailer lights on and off to determine if they are working. The test follows this sequence:

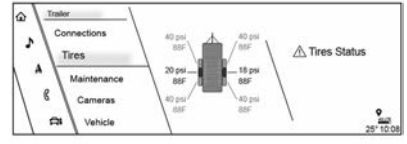
1. The running lights turn on first and remain on throughout the sequence.
2. The brake lights turn on for about two seconds.
3. The left turn signal light flashes three times.
4. The right turn signal light flashes three times.
5. The reverse lights turn on for about two seconds.
6. Steps 2–5 repeat for approximately one minute and 45 seconds, or until the test deactivates.

Touch Stop to stop the test. The test will automatically end after one minute and 45 seconds.

The sequence also deactivates when any of the following occur:

- The ignition is turned off.
- The transmission is shifted out of P (Park).
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The turn signal is activated.
- The hazard warning lights are activated.

Tires

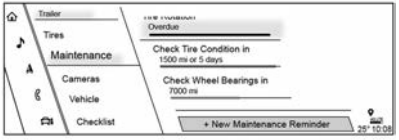


1. Trailer Tire Pressure/Temperature

Tire Pressure and Temperature

If the TTPMS sensor-to-vehicle learn process was completed, the status view will display the current tire pressure and temperature of the trailer tires related to the active Trailer Profile. If a tire’s pressure is low or high, the color of the pressure value will be amber. If a sensor malfunctions, the values are dashed lines. If the screen displays “Service Tire Pressure Monitoring System”, the vehicle needs to be taken to a dealer for service.

Maintenance



1. List of Maintenance Reminders
2. Add a New Maintenance Reminder

The Maintenance Status view displays reminders. Touch a reminder to edit.

Touch + New Maintenance Reminder to go to the Select New Reminder view.

The progress bar turns yellow when the maintenance item reaches 90% complete.

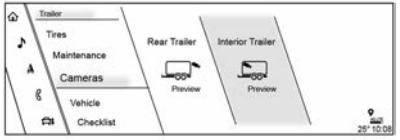
The progress bar turns red when the maintenance item reaches 100% complete.

Maintenance Notifications

- Touch Service Complete to reset the maintenance reminder.
- Touch Remind Me Later to delay the reminder.
- Touch X next to Upcoming Alerts (90%) to dismiss the alert. It will not appear again.
- Touch X next to Maintenance Due (100%) to delay the alert to the next ignition cycle.

Always follow all of the maintenance instructions that came with your trailer.

Cameras

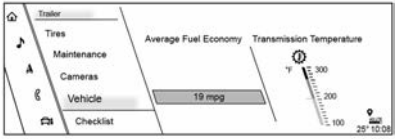


1. Rear Trailer Not Connected/ Preview, if equipped
2. Interior Trailer Not Connected/ Preview, if equipped

The Cameras Status view displays status of trailer cameras.

Touch a connected camera to preview the camera image.

Vehicle



1. Transmission Fluid Temperature
2. Average Fuel Economy with Trailer Profile

Average Fuel Economy

Touch to view the average fuel economy of the vehicle while the Trailer Profile is active.

Transmission Temperature

View the temperature of the transmission fluid by looking at the graphic. The graphic will indicate a dangerous level if the temperature is at 130 °C–150 °C (270 °F–300 °F).

Guest Trailer Status View

Touch the Guest Trailer Profile for the status views.

The Guest Trailer Profile Status view shows:

- Vehicle
- Connections
- Cameras, if equipped

The Trailer Status view displays mileage information. Touch to edit, and follow the on-screen prompts. Mileage and fuel economy will reset after the trailer disconnects. The Cameras Status view displays status of trailer cameras. Touch a connected camera to preview the camera image.

Accessory/No Trailer Status View

If the Accessory/No Trailer profile is active, trailer status information is not available.

Checklist View

This view shows the recommended steps to take before towing a trailer.

Touch the box next to each item if that step has been completed.

Touch ⓘ to access a detailed view of each step. Within each detailed view, touch Next and Previous to navigate between steps.

Touch Clear All to clear the completed statuses from all items in the current checklist.

Custom Checklist Items

For each of the Trailer Profile checklists, there is an option to create custom items to view in the checklist. The custom item will appear at the bottom of the checklist.

Guest Trailer and No Trailer Connected

If Guest Trailer Profile is active or if no trailer is connected, the checklist will show all of the checklists associated with Custom Trailer Profiles in addition to default checklists.

Trailers View

Touch the Trailers tab to view, activate, create, edit, or delete Trailer Profiles.

If a trailer is connected, touch the Trailer Profile name to activate a Trailer Profile.

There can be up to five Custom Trailer Profiles on the vehicle.

The Custom Trailer Profiles and Guest Trailer are in order of the most frequently used. The Accessory/No Trailer profile is shown below the Custom Trailer Profiles and Guest Trailer Profile.

All personalization features are based on the settings for each driver in vehicle personalization. The list of Trailer Profiles is based on vehicle personalization settings.

Guest Trailer

If the Guest Trailer Profile is the active Trailer Profile, trailer detection, connections status, theft, and the Tow/Haul reminder alerts can be sent. The system will not track total mileage or fuel economy, but the system will track trip mileage and fuel economy if the Guest Trailer Profile is active. The Trailer Tire Pressure Monitoring System or maintenance

reminders cannot be set up for a Guest Trailer Profile. The Guest Trailer Profile cannot be edited.

Touch ⓘ to learn more about the Guest Trailer option.

Accessory/No Trailer

If the Accessory/No Trailer Profile is active, alerts will not be sent and the system will not track mileage or fuel economy. The Trailer Tire Pressure Monitoring System or maintenance reminders cannot be set up for the Accessory/No Trailer Profile. The Accessory/No Trailer profile cannot be edited.

No Trailer Connected

When there is no trailer connected, Trailer Profiles cannot be activated but most options can be edited.

Trailer Brake Gain Memory

The system can memorize the brake gain setting of a Trailer Profile or a Guest Trailer Profile. When a Trailer Profile or Guest Trailer Profile is selected, and a brake gain setting is set for that Trailer Profile, a quick notice will appear to indicate that the system has recalled that profile's brake gain setting.

If a Trailer Profile is already active and the brake gain setting had been set for that Trailer Profile, the quick notice will trigger whenever the ignition is turned on.

If there was an error in setting the brake gain for a Trailer Profile, there will be a notification. This pop-up will not appear if the Guest Trailer Profile is active or if there is no trailer connected.

Trailer brake gain should be set for a specific trailering condition and must be adjusted anytime vehicle loading, trailer loading, or road surface conditions change.

Editing a Trailer Profile

Trailer Profile View

Touch to edit any of the following options in the Trailer Profile view:

- Trailer Name
- Towing Assistance Setup, if equipped
- Tire Pressure Setup, if equipped
- Trailer Maintenance
- Edit Mileage
- Reset Average Fuel Economy

Touch Save to save the new value to the Trailer Profile. Touching Back will still save the previously entered information.

Trailer Name

Touch to edit the Trailer Profile's name. Use at least one character and no spaces. Touch Save.

Towing Assistance Setup

A trailer should be connected to complete this portion of profile setup.

Touch to set up towing assistance features for the Trailer Profile. See "Towing Assistance" for details on the setup.

Tire Pressure Setup

Touch to set up the Trailer Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TTPMS) for the Trailer Profile. See "Trailer Tire Pressure Setup" previously in this section for details on the setup. Also, touch Tire Pressure Setup if the trailer tires were rotated or if the tire pressure sensors in the tires were

replaced for this Trailer Profile. The vehicle will need to relearn the tire sensors and their locations.

If TTPMS had been set up previously, the Select Number of Sensors screen will appear after touching Tire Pressure Setup. If the number of sensors has changed, select the number and touch Next.

If a new number of sensors is selected, the Relearn Sensors pop-up will appear. Touch Cancel to go back or touch Relearn to overwrite the current sensors and begin the relearning process. See “Trailer Tire Pressure Setup” previously in this section.

If number of sensors has not changed, touch Next and the Learn sensors screen will appear.

On the Learn Sensors screen. Touch Relearn to overwrite the current sensors and begin the relearning process. See “Trailer Tire Pressure Setup” previously in this section.

On the Learn Sensors screen, touch Next to go to the Edit Recommended Tire Pressure screen.

On the Edit Recommended Tire Pressure screen, touch a number on the keypad to change the recommended tire pressure for the trailer’s tires. This will change the number at which the vehicle displays alerts related to trailer tire pressure. Touch Done to return to the Trailer Profile view.

Trailer Maintenance

Touch to view a list of maintenance reminders for the Trailer Profile.

Touch a reminder to view, reset, delete, or edit it.

Reset Reminder

Touch Maintenance Complete in the reminder view to reset the reminder. On the pop-up, touch Reset to reset the time and mileage values for the reminder. Touch Cancel to return to the previous view and nothing will change.

Edit Reminder

Touch to edit the mileage or time settings for the reminder. Touch Save to save the new settings to the Trailer Profile.

Delete Reminder

Touch to delete the maintenance reminder. On the pop-up, touch Delete to delete the reminder or touch Cancel to return to the previous view and nothing will change.

New Maintenance Reminder

Touch + New Maintenance Reminder to set up a new reminder. Suggested reminders that were previously set will have checkmarks next to them. Suggested reminders that have not been set will have empty boxes next to them. The maximum number of reminders is 50.

Edit Mileage

Touch to edit the Trailer Profile’s mileage. Touch Reset to reset trailer mileage to zero, or enter a new value and touch Save. Touching back will return to the Trailer Profile view.

Effect on Maintenance Reminders

If the mileage is reset or changed, and mileage has already accumulated, any maintenance reminders that have been set up will be adjusted accordingly.

Reset Average Fuel Economy

Touch to reset the average fuel economy for the Trailer Profile. Touch Reset to change, or touch Cancel to go back to the previous view.

Delete/Remove Trailer

Touch to remove the Trailer Profile and all of its settings.

On the pop-up, touch Remove to remove the Trailer Profile from the vehicle. Touch Cancel to dismiss the pop-up and return to the previous view.

Remove will be displayed if there is a connected OnStar plan active with the vehicle. Removing a trailer profile will remove the profile from the vehicle but the profile will still be associated with the user account. However, if there is not a connected OnStar plan then the remove button will read DELETE and the profile will be deleted permanently

Settings View

Within the Trailering App, touch the Settings tab to modify the following settings:

- Trailer Detection Alert
- Maintenance Alerts
- Theft Alert
- Tow/Haul Mode Reminder
- Trailer Length Indicator

Trailer Detection Alert

The Trailer Detection Alert setting will be on by default. Turn it off to disable the Trailer Detection pop-up from displaying when a trailer is connected. The Guest Trailer Profile will become the active Trailer Profile, unless another Trailer Profile is selected manually through the Trailering App. If this setting is disabled while a Custom Trailer Profile is active, that Trailer Profile will remain the active profile until the trailer is disconnected.

Maintenance Alerts

Touch Maintenance Alerts to view the Maintenance Alerts settings page. These alerts are based on the Trailer Profile, so the settings for each Trailer Profile must be turned on or off.

Touch a profile to view more information or adjust the setting for that profile.

The setting will be on by default for each profile. All Maintenance Alerts for that active Trailer Profile will be received.

Turn a setting off to not receive any of the Maintenance Alerts when that Trailer Profile is active.

Theft Alert

A theft alert can be set if a trailer is connected and the alert is enabled. When the trailer is disconnected and the vehicle is off, an alarm will sound.

Touch Theft Alert in Settings to view the Theft Alert settings page. These alerts are based on the Trailer Profile, so the settings for each Trailer Profile must be turned on or off. Touch a profile to view more information or adjust the setting for that profile.

This setting will be off by default for each Trailer Profile, including the Guest Trailer Profile.

A smartphone will receive a notification that the trailer related to the selected Trailer Profile is disconnected from the vehicle, if the setting is on for the active Trailer Profile, the vehicle has an OnStar or connected service plan and the smartphone number has been added to the account for this notification.

If the setting is turned off for a given Trailer Profile, the smartphone will not receive this security notification even if the Trailer Profile is active.

Tow/Haul Mode Reminder

This is a reminder to turn on the Tow/Haul Mode when towing a trailer. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *266*.

Touch Tow/Haul Mode Reminder in Settings to view the Tow/Haul Mode Reminder settings page. These alerts are based on the Trailer Profile, so the settings for each Trailer Profile must be turned on or off. Touch a profile to view more information or to adjust the setting for that profile.

This setting will default to OFF for each Trailer Profile, including the Guest Trailer Profile.

If Tow/Haul Mode is off and this setting is on for a Trailer Profile, each time the ignition is turned on a reminder will appear to turn on Tow/Haul Mode when the Trailer Profile is active.

If Tow/Haul Mode is on and this setting is on for a Trailer Profile, the reminder will not appear when the Trailer Profile is active.

Trailer Length Indicator

Touch Trailer Length Indicator to view the Trailer Length Indicator settings page. If this setting is ON a guideline is displayed in the side mirror camera view to indicate the rear of the attached trailer. If this setting is OFF the guideline will not be displayed.

This setting will default to OFF if the trailer length indicator feature is not set up. See "Towing Assistance" for details on the setup.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

⚠ Warning

The Data Link Connector (DLC) is used for vehicle service and Emission Inspection/Maintenance testing. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *122*. A device connected to the DLC — such as an aftermarket fleet or driver-behavior tracking device — may interfere with vehicle systems. This could affect vehicle operation and cause a crash. Such devices may also access information stored in the vehicle's systems.

Caution

Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle or cause components to not work and would

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.

⚠ Warning

Certain mobile radio equipment, like amplifiers and antennas used for two-way communication, can interfere with some vehicle systems. Always ensure this equipment is supplied with proper local grounding. Follow all of the instructions that came with the equipment and see your GM dealer for additional mobile radio installation instructions.

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *75* and *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *75*.

Vehicle Care

General Information

General Information 368
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements 368
Accessories and Modifications 368

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work 369
Hood 369
Engine Compartment Overview 371
Engine Oil 372
Engine Oil Life System 374
Automatic Transmission Fluid 375
Engine Air Filter Life System 376
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 376
Cooling System 377
Engine Overheating 380
Engine Fan 381
Washer Fluid 382
Brakes 382
Brake Pad Life System 383
Brake Fluid 384
Battery - North America 385
Four-Wheel Drive 385
Front Axle 386
Rear Axle 386
Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 386
Wiper Blade Replacement 387
Glass Replacement 388
Windshield Replacement 388
Gas Strut(s) 388

Headlamp Aiming

Front Headlamp Aiming 389

Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement 389
LED Lighting 389

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload 389
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 391
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 392
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 396
Rear Compartment Fuse Block 398

Wheels and Tires

Tires 400
All-Season Tires 401
Winter Tires 401
Low-Profile Tires 402
Tire Sidewall Labeling 402
Tire Designations 403
Tire Terminology and Definitions 404
Tire Pressure 406
Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation 408
Tire Pressure Monitor System ... 409
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 410
Tire Inspection 414
Tire Rotation 415
When It Is Time for New Tires 416
Buying New Tires 417
Different Size Tires and Wheels 418
Uniform Tire Quality Grading ... 418
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 420
Wheel Replacement 420
Tire Chains 420
If a Tire Goes Flat 421
Tire Changing 422
Full-Size Spare Tire 433

Jump Starting

Jump Starting - North America 434

Towing the Vehicle

Towing the Vehicle 437
Recreational Vehicle Towing 438

Appearance Care

Exterior Care 442
Interior Care 446
Floor Mats 450

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in electronic keys, may contain perchlorate materials. Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to suspension components caused by modifying vehicle height outside of factory settings will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, is not covered

under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer to accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories installed by a dealer technician.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *75*.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to work on your vehicle if you do not have the proper knowledge, service manual, tools, or parts. Always follow owner's manual procedures and consult the service manual for your vehicle before doing any service work.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Publication Ordering Information* ⇨ *476*.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *75*.

If equipped with remote vehicle start, open the hood before performing any service work to prevent remote starting the vehicle accidentally. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *13*.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed. See *Maintenance Records* ⇨ *463*.

Caution

Even small amounts of contamination can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

Hood

⚠ Warning

For vehicles with auto engine stop/start, turn the vehicle off before opening the hood. If the vehicle is on, the engine will start when the hood is opened. You or others could be injured.

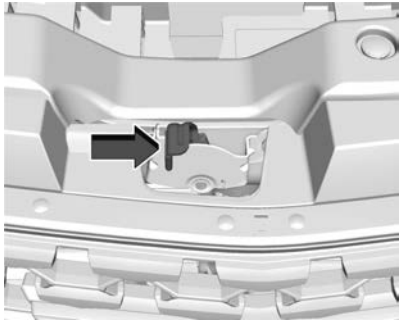
⚠ Warning

Components under the hood can get hot from running the engine. To help avoid the risk of burning unprotected skin, never touch these components until they have cooled, and always use a glove or towel to avoid direct skin contact.

Clear any snow from the hood before opening.

To open the hood:

1. Pull the hood release lever with the symbol. It is on the lower left side of the instrument panel.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and locate the secondary release lever under the front center of the hood. Push the secondary hood release lever to the right to release.
3. After you have partially lifted the hood, the gas strut system will automatically lift the hood and hold it in the fully open position.

To close the hood:

1. Before closing the hood, be sure all filler caps are on properly, and all tools are removed.
2. Pull the hood down until the strut system is no longer holding up the hood.
3. Allow the hood to fall. Check to make sure the hood is latched completely. Repeat this process with additional force if necessary.

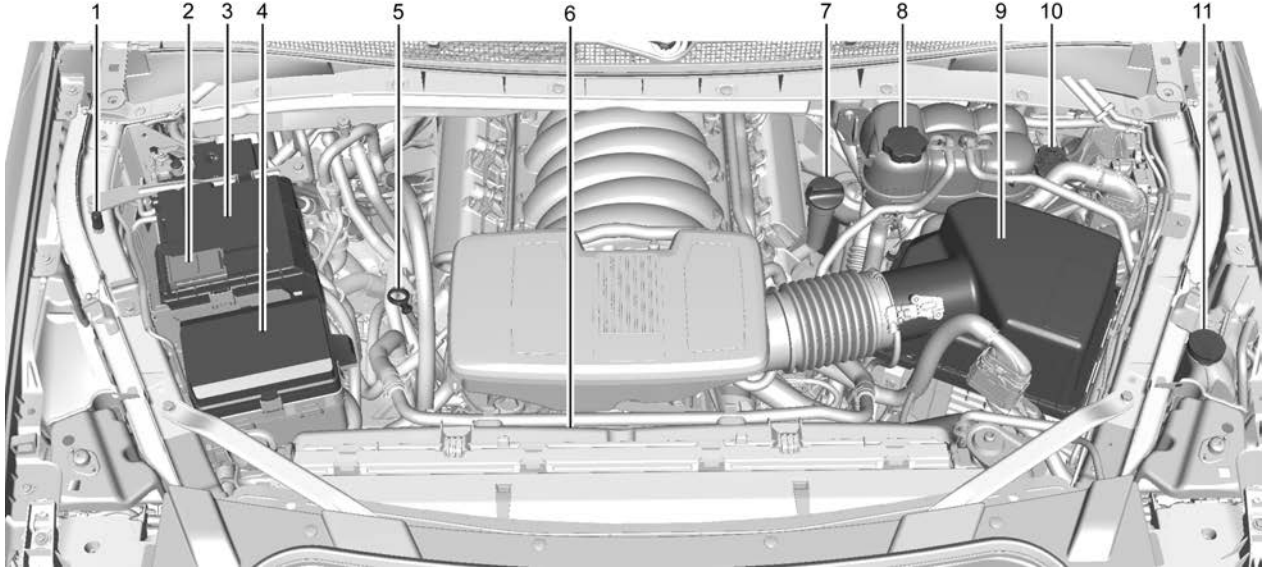
⚠ Warning

Do not drive the vehicle if the hood is not latched completely. The hood could open fully, block your vision, and cause a crash. You or others could be injured. Always close the hood completely before driving.

The Driver Information Center (DIC) will display a message if the hood is not fully closed, and the vehicle is moving. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the hood for obstructions, and close the hood again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

Engine Compartment Overview

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.



1. Remote Negative (–) Location. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *434*.
2. Positive (+) Terminal (Under Cover). See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *434*.
3. *Battery - North America* ⇨ *385*.
4. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *392*.
5. Engine Oil Dipstick. See "Checking Engine Oil" under *Engine Oil* ⇨ *372*.
6. Engine Cooling Fans (Out of View). See *Cooling System* ⇨ *377*.
7. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See "When to Add Engine Oil" under *Engine Oil* ⇨ *372*.
8. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *377*.
9. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *376*.
10. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *384*.
11. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See "Adding Washer Fluid" under *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *382*.

Engine Oil

For diesel engine vehicles, see "Engine Oil" in the Duramax diesel supplement.

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See "Selecting the Right Engine Oil" in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See "Checking Engine Oil" and "When to Add Engine Oil" in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *374*.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See "What to Do with Used Oil" in this section.

Checking Engine Oil

Check the engine oil level regularly, every 650 km (400 mi), especially prior to a long trip. The engine oil dipstick handle is a loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *371* for the location.

⚠ Warning

The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

If a low oil Driver Information Center (DIC) message displays, check the oil level.

Follow these guidelines:

- To get an accurate reading, park the vehicle on level ground. Check the engine oil level after the engine has been off for at least two hours. Checking the engine oil level on steep grades or too soon after engine shutoff can result in incorrect readings. Accuracy

improves when checking a cold engine prior to starting. Remove the dipstick and check the level.

- If unable to wait two hours, the engine must be off for at least 15 minutes if the engine is warm, or at least 30 minutes if the engine is not warm. Pull out the dipstick, wipe it with a clean paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

When to Add Engine Oil

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick and the engine has been off for at least 15 minutes, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See "Selecting the Right Engine Oil" later in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *464*.

Caution

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If the oil level is above the operating range (i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range), the engine could be damaged. Drain the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle, and seek a service professional to remove the excess oil.

See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *371* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *461*.

Specification

Use full synthetic engine oils that meet the dexos1 specification. Engine oils that have been approved by GM as meeting the dexos1 specification are marked with the dexos1 approved logo.

Caution

Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Viscosity Grade

Use SAE 0W-20 viscosity grade engine oil.

When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, it is recommended to select an oil of the correct specification. See "Specification" earlier in this section.

Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils meeting the dexos1 specification are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and miles driven. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 mi). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km (3,000 mi) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. To reset the system:

1. Using the vehicle information screen controls on the right side of the instrument cluster, display OIL LIFE on the screen. See *Vehicle Information* ⇨ *135*. When remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display.
2. Touch RESET on the screen to clear the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message and reset the oil life at 100%.

   Be careful not to reset the oil life display accidentally at any time other than after the oil is changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change.

The oil life system can also be reset as follows:

1. Display OIL LIFE on the vehicle information screen. See *Vehicle Information* ⇨ *135*.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.

   If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is not on, the system is reset.

The system is reset when the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is off.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

When to Check and Change Automatic Transmission Fluid

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

It is usually not necessary to check the transmission fluid level. The only reason for fluid loss is a transmission leak or overheated transmission. This vehicle is not equipped with a transmission fluid level dipstick.

There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid in these vehicles. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer. Contact the dealer for additional information or the procedure can be found in the service manual. See *Publication Ordering Information* ⇨ *476*.

Caution

Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage the vehicle, and the damage may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use the correct automatic transmission fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *461*.

Change the fluid and filter at the scheduled maintenance intervals listed in *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *452*. Be sure to use the transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *461*.

Engine Air Filter Life System

If equipped, this feature provides the engine air filter's remaining life and best timing for a change. The timing to change an engine air filter depends on driving and environmental conditions.

When to Change the Engine Air Filter

When the Driver Information Center (DIC) displays a message to replace the engine air filter at the next oil change, follow this timing.

When the DIC displays a message to replace the engine air filter soon, replace the engine air filter at the earliest convenience.

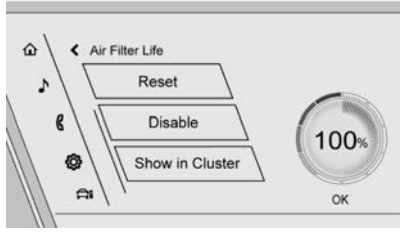
The system must be reset after the engine air filter is changed.

If the DIC displays a message to check the engine air filter system, see your dealer.

How to Reset the Engine Air Filter Life System

To reset:

1. Place the vehicle in P (Park).
2. Access the Air Filter Life screen from the Vehicle Information main screen in the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Information* ⇨ *135* for instructions on navigating and selecting items.



3. Touch Reset on the display screen.
4. Touch Yes to confirm the reset.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

The engine air cleaner/filter is on the driver side of the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *371*.

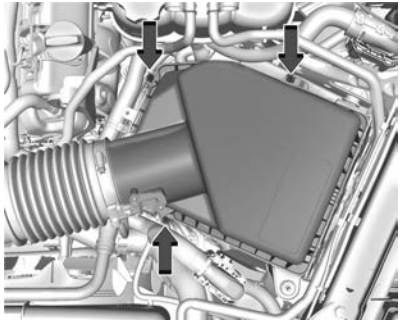
When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

If the vehicle is not equipped with the engine air filter life system see *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *452* for intervals on inspecting and replacing the engine air cleaner filter.

How to Inspect/Replace the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Do not start the engine or have the engine running with the engine air cleaner/filter housing open. Before removing the engine air cleaner/filter, make sure that the engine air cleaner/filter housing and nearby components are free of dirt and debris. Do not clean the engine air cleaner/filter or components with water or compressed air.

To inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter:



1. Remove the three screws, tilt the cover, and slide it out of the assembly.

⚠ Warning

If part replacement is necessary, the part must be replaced with one of the same part number or with an equivalent part. Use of a replacement part without the same fit, form, and function may result in personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

2. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
3. Lower the cover, slide it into the assembly, then secure with the three screws.
4. If equipped, reset the engine air filter life system after replacing the engine air filter. See *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ 376.

⚠ Warning

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. Use caution when working on the engine. Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle with the air cleaner/filter off, as flames may be present if the engine backfires.

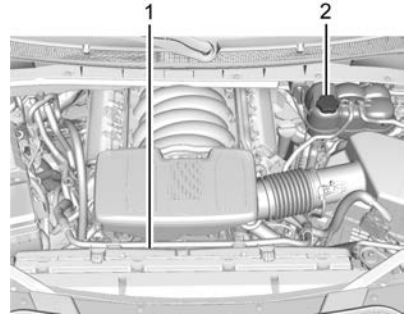
Caution

If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when driving.

Cooling System

If the vehicle has the Duramax diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.



1. Engine Electric Cooling Fans (Out of View)
2. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap

⚠ Warning

An underhood electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Do not touch heater, radiator, a/c pipes or hoses, or other engine parts. They can be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in the vehicle for 5 years or 240 000 km (150,000 mi), whichever occurs first.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating ⇨ 380.*

What to Use

⚠ Warning

Plain water, or other liquids such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but there would not be an overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to –37 °C (–34 °F), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 129 ° C (265 °F), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminum parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

Caution

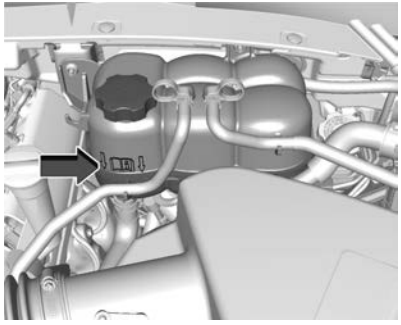
Do not use anything other than a mix of DEX-COOL coolant that meets GM Standard GMW3420 and clean, drinkable water. Anything else can cause damage to the engine cooling system and the vehicle, which would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the trash, or by pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams, or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by an authorized service center, familiar with legal requirements regarding used coolant disposal. This will help protect the environment and your health.

Checking Coolant

The coolant surge tank is in the engine compartment on the driver side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview ⇨ 371.*

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.



Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, wait until it cools down. The coolant level should be at or above the indicated mark. If it is not, there may be a leak in the cooling system.

If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the indicated mark, see the following sections on how to add coolant to the coolant surge tank following.

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see "Cooling System" in the Duramax diesel supplement for the proper coolant fill procedure.

⚠ Warning

Spilling coolant on hot engine parts can burn you. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough.

⚠ Warning

Plain water, or other liquids such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but there would not be an overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned.

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

Caution

Failure to follow the specific coolant fill procedure could cause the engine to overheat and could cause system damage. If coolant is not visible in the surge tank, contact your dealer.

If no coolant is visible in the surge tank, add coolant.

1. Remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

   Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise about one full turn. If a hiss is heard, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.
2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.
3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture to the full cold mark.
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates approximately 90 °C (195 °F).

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the indicated mark.
5. Replace the pressure cap tightly.
6. Verify coolant level after the engine is shut off and the coolant is cold. If necessary, repeat coolant fill procedure Steps 1–6.

Caution

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

Engine Overheating

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

Caution

Do not run the engine if there is a leak in the engine cooling system. This can cause a loss of all coolant

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

and can damage the system and vehicle. Have any leaks fixed right away.

The vehicle has several indicators to warn of engine overheating.

There is a coolant temperature gauge and an engine coolant temperature warning light in the vehicle's instrument cluster. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ *117* and *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light* ⇨ *128*.

In addition, there are ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE, ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE, and ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED messages in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

If the decision is made not to lift the hood when this warning appears, get service help right away. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *471*.

If the decision is made to lift the hood, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Check to see if the engine cooling fan(s) are running. If the engine is overheating, the fans should be running. If they are not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

If No Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

The ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE or the ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE message, along with a low coolant condition, can indicate a serious problem.

If there is an engine overheat warning, but no steam is seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer; see *Trailer Towing* ⇨ *339*.

If the ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE or the ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE message appears with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral), and let the engine idle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat warning no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the vehicle in front. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

If there is still no sign of steam and the vehicle is equipped with an engine driven cooling fan, push down the accelerator until the engine speed is about twice as fast as normal idle speed for at least five minutes while the vehicle is parked. If the warning is still there, turn off the engine and get everyone out of the vehicle until it cools down.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for five minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down.

Engine Fan

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

If the vehicle has electric cooling fans, the fans may be heard spinning at low speed during most everyday driving. The fans may turn off if no cooling is required. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing, high outside temperatures, or operation of the air conditioning system, the fans may change to high speed and an increase in fan noise may be heard. This is normal and indicates that the cooling system is functioning properly. The fans will change to low speed when additional cooling is no longer required.

The electric engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been turned. off. This is normal and no service is required.

Washer Fluid

What to Use

When windshield washer fluid needs to be added, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. Use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid

The vehicle has a low washer fluid message on the DIC that comes on when the washer fluid is low. The message is displayed for 15 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle. When the WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID message displays, washer fluid will need to be added to the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *371* for reservoir location.

Caution

- Do not use washer fluid that contains any type of water repellent coating. This can cause the wiper blades to chatter or skip.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windshield washer. It can damage the windshield washer system and paint.
- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system.
- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer instructions for adding water.
- Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.

Brakes

Disc brake linings have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake linings are worn and new linings are needed. The sound can come and go or can be

heard all the time when the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ Warning

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake linings could result in costly brake repairs.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied, clearing up following several applications. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake linings for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications. See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *464*.

Brake pads should be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service may be required.

Replacing Brake System Parts

Always replace brake system parts with new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes may not work properly. The braking performance can change in many ways if the wrong brake parts are installed or if parts are improperly installed.

Brake Pad Life System

When to Change Brake Pads

This vehicle has a system that estimates the remaining life of the front and rear brake pads. Brake pad life is displayed in the Driver Information Center (DIC), along with a percentage for each axle. The system must be reset every time the brake pads are changed.

When the system has determined that the brake pads need to be replaced, a message will display, which may include mileage remaining.

Brake pads should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

How to Reset the Brake Pad Life System

The system will automatically detect when significantly worn brake pads are replaced. When the ignition is turned on after new pads and wear sensors are installed, a message will display. Follow the prompts to reset the system.

The brake pad life system can also be manually reset:

1. Display Brake Pad Life on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *132*.
2. Select the Brake Pad Life menu.
3. Select front or rear pads as appropriate.

4. Select YES on the confirmation message. Repeat for pads on the other axle if they were also replaced.

How to Disable the Brake Pad Life System

The brake pad life system can be turned off. This may be necessary if aftermarket brake pads without wear sensors are installed. When the system is turned off, the front and rear brake pad life percentages will not display. However, the built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn can still determine when the pads should be replaced. See *Brakes* ⇨ *382*.

To turn off the brake pad life system:

1. Display Brake Pad Life on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *132*.
2. Select the Brake Pad Life menu.
3. Select DISABLE.

To turn the brake pad life system back on, follow the above steps but select ENABLE in Step 2.

Brake Fluid

The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with GM approved DOT 4 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *371* for the location of the reservoir.

Checking Brake Fluid

With the vehicle in P (Park) on a level surface, the brake fluid level should be between the minimum and maximum marks on the brake fluid reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir may go down:

- Normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed. With a leak, the brakes will not work well.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ Warning

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *124*.

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Replace brake fluid at

the specified intervals to prevent increased stopping distance. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *452*.

What to Add

Use only GM approved DOT 4 brake fluid from a clean, sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *461*.

⚠ Warning

The wrong or contaminated brake fluid could result in damage to the brake system. This could result in the loss of braking leading to a possible injury. Always use the proper GM approved brake fluid.

Caution

If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Immediately wash off any painted surface.

Battery - North America

The original equipment battery is maintenance free. Do not remove the cap and do not add fluid.

Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new battery is needed. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *371* for battery location.

⚠ Warning

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories can expose you to chemicals including lead and lead compounds, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

See the warning on the back cover.

Vehicle Storage

⚠ Warning

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. Always wear eye protection.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *434* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

Four-Wheel Drive

Transfer Case

If the vehicle is equipped with Four-Wheel Drive, be sure to perform the lubricant checks described in this section.

When to Check Lubricant

Refer to *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *452* to determine how often to check the lubricant.

How to Check Lubricant

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

1. Fill Plug
2. Drain Plug

If the level is below the bottom of the fill plug (1) hole, located on the transfer case, some lubricant will need to be added. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the fill plug (1) hole. Use care not to overtighten the plug.

What to Use

Refer to *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *461* to determine what kind of lubricant to use.

Front Axle

When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check the front axle fluid unless a leak is suspected or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired. This service can be complex. See your dealer.

Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or drive axles and should be replaced.

Rear Axle

When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check the rear axle fluid unless a leak is suspected or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired. This service can be complex. See your dealer.

Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or drive axles and should be replaced.

Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check

⚠ Warning

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear or cracking.

For the proper type and size, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts* ⇨ *462*.

Caution

Allowing the wiper arm to touch the windshield when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windshield. Any damage that occurs

(Continued)

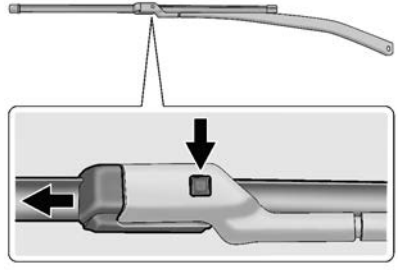
Caution (Continued)

would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not allow the wiper arm to touch the windshield.

Front Wiper Blade Replacement

To replace the wiper blade assembly:

1. Pull the windshield wiper assembly away from the windshield.



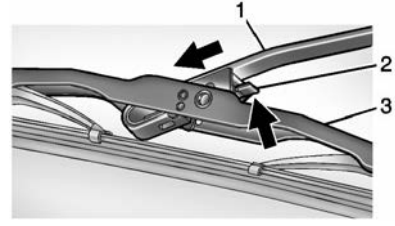
2. Press the button in the middle of the wiper arm connector, and pull the wiper blade away from the arm connector.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Reverse Steps 1–3 for wiper blade replacement.

Rear Wiper Blade Replacement

To replace the rear wiper blade:

1. With the rear wiper in the off position, open the liftglass to access the rear wiper arm/blade.

   The rear wiper blade will not lock in a vertical position so use care when pulling it away from the vehicle.



2. Push the release lever (2) to disengage the hook and push the wiper arm (1) out of the blade assembly (3).

3. Push the new blade assembly securely in the wiper arm hook until the release lever clicks into place.
4. Return the wiper arm and blade assembly to the rest position on the glass.

Glass Replacement

If the windshield or front side glass must be replaced, see your dealer to determine the correct replacement glass.

Windshield Replacement

HUD System

The windshield is part of the HUD system. If the windshield needs to be replaced, be sure to get one that is designed for HUD or the HUD image may look out of focus.

Driver Assistance Systems

If the windshield needs to be replaced and the vehicle is equipped with a front camera sensor for the Driver Assistance Systems, a GM replacement windshield is recommended. The replacement windshield must be installed according to GM specifications for proper alignment. If it is not, these systems may not work properly, they may display messages, or they may not work at all. See your dealer for proper windshield replacement.

Acoustic Windshield

The vehicle is equipped with an acoustic windshield. If the windshield needs to be replaced be sure to get an acoustic windshield so you will continue to have the benefits an acoustic windshield can provide.

Gas Strut(s)

This vehicle is equipped with gas strut(s) to provide assistance in lifting and holding open the hood/trunk/liftgate system in full open position.

⚠ Warning

If the gas struts that hold open the hood, trunk, and/or liftgate fail, you or others could be seriously injured. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service immediately. Visually

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

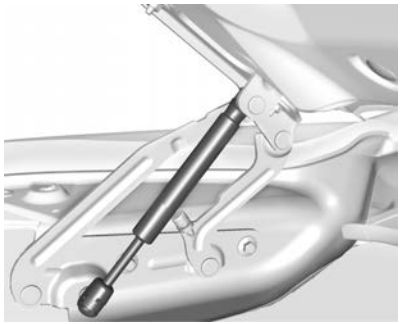
inspect the gas struts for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage periodically. Check to make sure the hood/trunk/liftgate is held open with enough force. If struts are failing to hold the hood/trunk/liftgate, do not operate. Have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Do not apply tape or hang any objects from gas struts. Also do not push down or pull on gas struts. This may cause damage to the vehicle.

See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *452*.

Hood



Trunk

Liftgate

Headlamp Aiming

Front Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset and should need no further adjustment.

If the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. If adjustment to the headlamps is necessary, see your dealer.

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, or any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

Caution

Do not replace incandescent bulbs with aftermarket LED replacement bulbs. This can cause damage to the vehicle electrical system.

LED Lighting

This vehicle has several LED lamps. For replacement of any LED lighting assembly, contact your dealer.

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

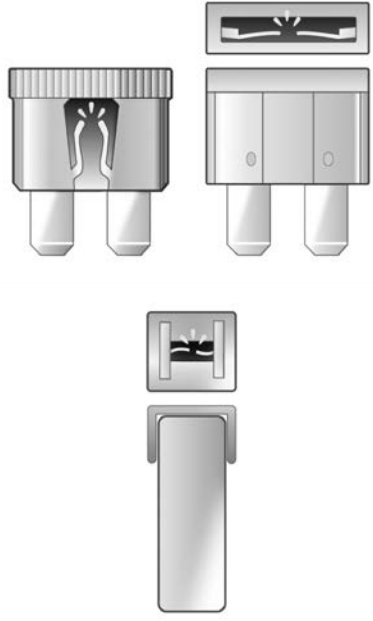
When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the

problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect the wires that provide the power to the devices in your vehicle.

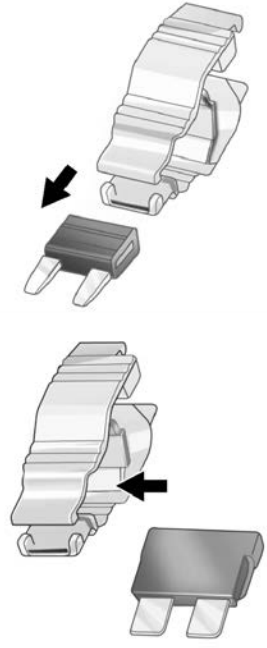
If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

To check a fuse, look at the band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure to replace a bad fuse with a fuse of the identical size and rating.



Replacing a Blown Fuse

1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Locate the fuse puller on the instrument panel end cap. See the *Instrument Panel Fuse Block* ⇨ *396*.



3. Use the fuse puller to remove the fuse from the top or side, as shown above.
4. If the fuse must be replaced immediately, spare fuses are also provided on the instrument panel end cap or borrow a replacement fuse with the same amperage from the fuse block. Choose a vehicle feature that is not needed to safely operate the vehicle. Repeat Steps 2-3.
5. Insert the replacement fuse into the empty slot of the blown fuse.

At the next opportunity, see your dealer to replace the blown fuse.

Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

Windshield Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windshield wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windshield before using the windshield wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

⚠ Danger

Fuses and circuit breakers are marked with their ampere rating. Do not exceed the specified amperage rating when replacing fuses and circuit breakers. Use of an oversized fuse or circuit breaker can result in a vehicle fire. You and others could be seriously injured or killed.

⚠ Warning

Installation or use of fuses that do not meet GM's original fuse specifications is dangerous. The fuses could fail, and result in a fire. You or others could be injured or killed, and the vehicle could be damaged.

See *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *368* and *General Information* ⇨ *368*.

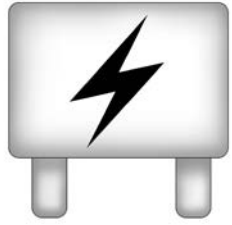
To check or replace a blown fuse, see *Electrical System Overload* ⇨ *389*.

Engine Compartment Fuse Block

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

The engine compartment fuse block is in the engine compartment, on the driver side of the vehicle.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

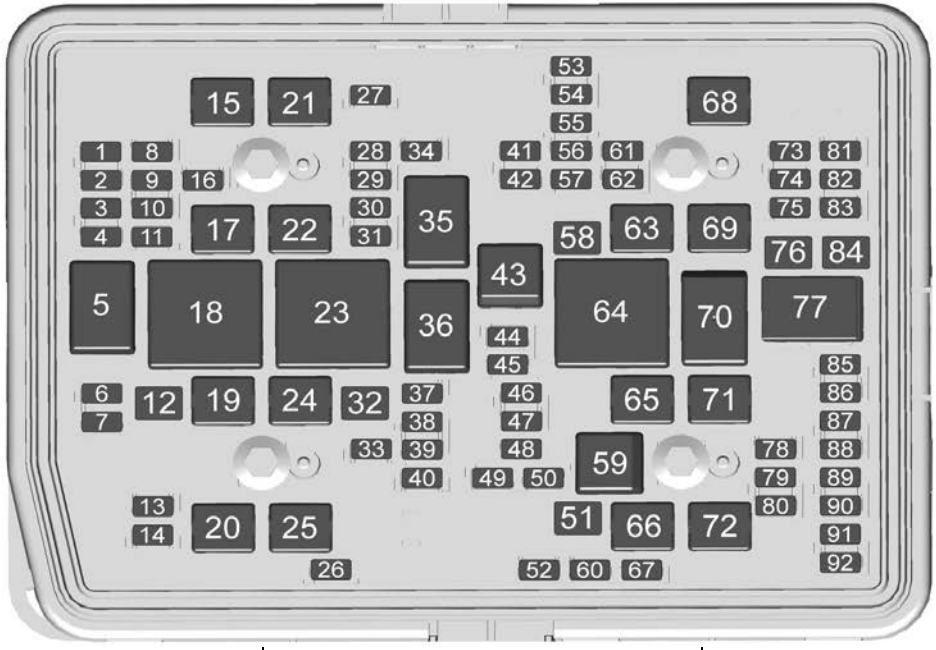


Lift the cover to access the fuse block.

Caution

Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.

A fuse puller is available in the left instrument panel fuse block.



Fuses	Usage
1	–
2	–
3	–
4	–
6	ELM 7 – Exterior Lighting Module 7
7	ELM 4 – Exterior Lighting Module 4
8	–

Fuses	Usage
9	ELM 5 – Exterior Lighting Module 5
10	ELM 6 – Exterior Lighting Module 6
11	LRR/FRT SRR – Long Range Radar/ Front Short Range Radar
12	–
13	Washer Front
14	Washer Rear
15	REC 2 – Rear Electrical Center 2
16	Power Sounder
17	EBCM – Electronic Brake Control Module Battery 1
19	DC/AC Inverter
20	IECR 2 – Instrument Electrical Center Right 2
21	–
22	IECL 1 – Instrument Electrical Center Left 1
24	Fuel Heater
25	REC 1 – Rear Electrical Center 1
26	Camera Wash
27	Horn
28	Headlamp RT – Right
29	Headlamp LT – Left
30	ELM 3 – Exterior Lighting Module 3
31	ELM 1 – Exterior Lighting Module 1
32	–
33	Not R/C
34	–
37	MISC Body Ignition 1
38	MISC Body Ignition 2
39	Upfitter
40	MISC Instrument Panel (IP)
41	Trailer Parking Lamps
42	Right Taillamp
44	Trailer Tow
45	Secondary Axle Motor
46	Engine Control Module (ECM) Ignition
47	OBD Engine
48	–
49	Transmission Auxiliary Oil Pump
50	A/C Clutch
51	TCCM – Transfer Case Control Module
52	Front Wiper
53	–
54	Left Taillamps

Fuses	Usage
55	Trailer Back-up Lamp
56	SADS – Semi Active Damping System
57	Spare
58	Starter Motor
60	Powertrain Sensor 2
61	Automatic Lamp Control (ALC) Main
62	ICCM/CVS/DEF – Integrated Chassis Control Module/ Canister Vent Solenoid/Diesel Exhaust Fluid
63	Trailer Brake
65	–
66	Left Cool Fan Motor
67	AFM 2 – Active Fuel Management 2
68	Automatic Lamp Control (ALC) Motor
69	Starter Pinion

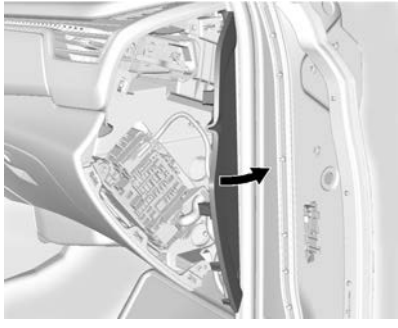
Fuses	Usage
71	Cool Fan Motor Lower
72	Right Cool Fan Motor/Lower
73	Left Trailer Stop Turn Lamp
74	TIM 2 – Trailer Interface Module 2
75	DEFC – Diesel Exhaust Fluid Controller
76	Electric Power Running Boards
78	ECM – Engine Control Module
79	Cabin Cool Pump 17W
80	Powertrain Sensor 1
81	Right Trailer Stop Turn Lamp
82	TIM 1 – Trailer Interface Module 1
83	FTZM – Fuel Tank Zone Module

Fuses	Usage
84	Trailer Battery
85	Auxiliary Water Pump
86	ECM – Engine Control Module
87	Injector B Even
88	02 B Sensor
89	02 A Sensor
90	Injector A Odd
91	Engine Control Module (ECM) Throttle Control
92	Cool Fan Clutch AERO Shutter

Relays	Usage
5	–
18	DC/AC Inverter
23	Fuel Heater
35	Trailer Park Lamp
36	Run/Crank

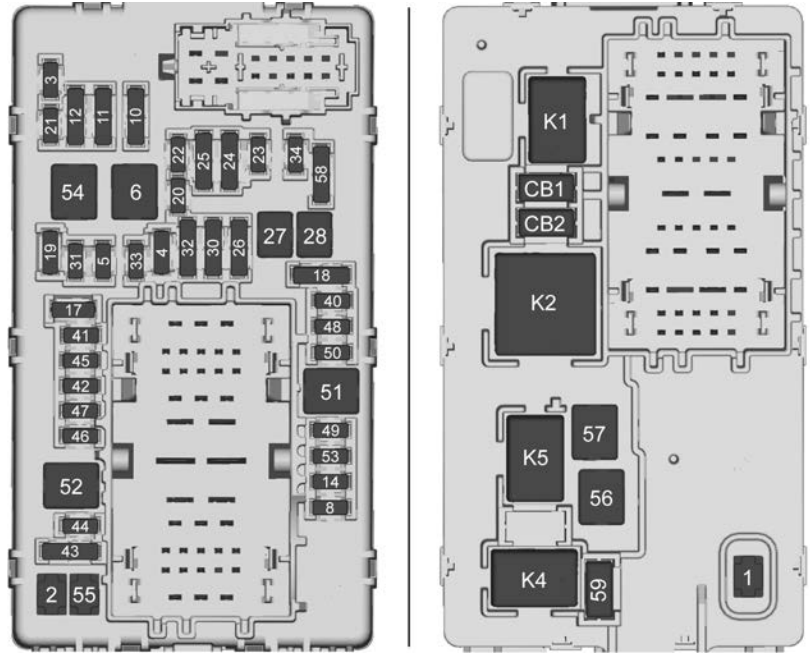
Relays	Usage
43	Secondary Axle Motor
59	A/C Clutch
64	Starter Motor
70	Starter Pinion
77	Powertrain

Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The right instrument panel fuse block access door is on the passenger side edge of the instrument panel.

Pull off the cover to access the fuse block. A fuse puller is available on the right instrument panel end cap.



There are relays on the back of the fuse block. To access, press the tabs and remove the fuse block.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

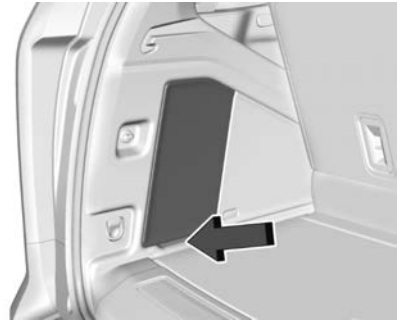
Fuses	Usage
F1	Right Door
F2	Left Door
F3	Universal Garage Door Opener (UGDO)/OnStar Hands-free Calling (OHC)/Camera
F4	BCM 2 – Body Control Module 2
F5	Displays
F6	Front Blower
F8	Left Door Panel
F10	Tilt/Column Lock
F11	DLC/ICM – Data Link Connector/Column Lock/Integrated Center Stack
F12	Central Gateway Module (CGM)/Onstar
F14	Right Door Panel
F17	Steering Wheel Control
F18	–
F19	–
F20	–
F21	–
F22	Heated Wheel
F23	–
F24	–
F25	Special Equipment Option (SEO)/ UPFITTER
F26	USB/Special Equipment Option(SEO) Retained Accessory Power (RAP)
F27	Auxiliary Power Outlet (APO)/Retained Accessory Power
F28	–
F30	SDM/AOS/DMS/NVM – Sensing and Diagnostic Module/Automatic Occupant Sensing/ Driver Monitor System/ Night Vision Module
F31	BCM 3 – Body Control Module 3
F32	Center Stack Module (CSM)/USB
F33	BCM 4 – Body Control Module 4
F34	Out of Park
F40	–
F41	–
F42	Electric Park Brake Switch
F43	RSE/MFC – Rear Seat Infotainment/Multi-- Functional Control
F44	–
F45	Radio Module
F46	–

Fuses	Usage
F47	–
F48	TCM – Telematics Control Module
F49	BCM 1 – Body Control Module 1
F50	–
F51	–
F52	–
F53	–
F54	Sunroof
F55	APO 3 – Auxiliary Power Outlet 3
F56	DC/DC CNV BATT 1 – Direct Current/Direct Current Converter Battery 1
F57	DC/DC CNV BATT 2 – Direct Current/Direct Current Converter Battery 2
F58	Spare
F59	–

Circuit Breakers	Usage
CBO1	APO 1 – Auxiliary Power Outlet 1
CBO2	APO 2 – Auxiliary Power Outlet 2

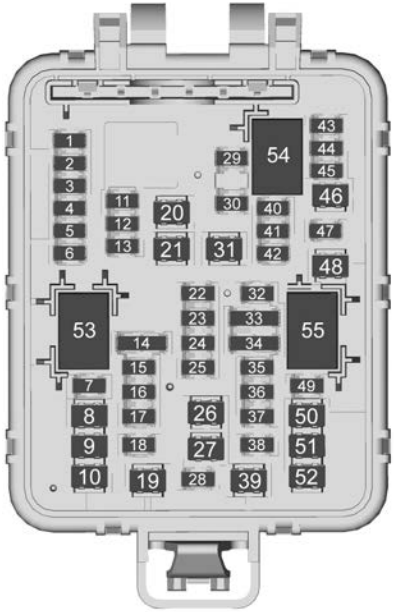
Relays	Usage
K1	–
K2	RAP/ACCY 1 – Retain Accessory Power/ Accessory 1
K4	RAP/ACCY 2 – Retain Accessory Power/ Accessory 2
K5	–

Rear Compartment Fuse Block



The rear compartment fuse block is behind the access panel on the left side of the compartment.

Pull the panel out by grabbing the finger access slot at the rear edge.



The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
F01	RFA – Remote Function Actuator
F02	WCM – Wireless Charging Module
F03	Heated Seat Module Row 1 (Battery 1)
F04	Memory Seat Module (MSM) Driver
F05	–
F06	–
F07	Amp Aux 2 – Amplifier Auxiliary 2
F08	–
F09	SEO UPFTR 2 – Special Equipment Upfitter 2
F10	Motor Seatbelt Passenger
F11	Power Folding Seat Row 2
F12	GBS – Glass Breakage Sensor
F13	–
F14	–

Fuses	Usage
F15	Heated Seat Module Row 1 (Battery 2)
F16	RH CINCH Latch – Right Hand Cinch Latch
F17	Memory Seat Module Passenger
F18	Rear Wiper
F19	Motor Seatbelt Driver
F20	Rear Defogger
F21	–
F22	Rear HVAC Display Control
F23	EOCM – External Object Calculation Module
F24	Amp Aux 3 – Amplifier Auxiliary 3
F25	OBS DET – Obstacle Detection
F26	RDCM – Rear Drive Control Module

Fuses	Usage
F27	Amp Aux 1 – Amplifier Auxiliary 1
F28	VPM – Video Processing Module
F29	–
F30	–
F31	Amp – Amplifier
F32	–
F33	ICCM – Integrated Chassis Control Module
F34	Heated Seat Module Row 2
F35	HFCR – Hands Free Closure Release
F36	ELM – Exterior Lighting Module
F37	–
F38	Power Slide Console
F39	–
F40	–
F41	–
F42	–
F43	UPA – Universal Park Assist
F44	–
F45	AFL AHL – Adaptive Forward Lighting/ Automatic Headlamp Leveling
F46	Rear HVAC Blower Motor
F47	LH CINCH Latch – Left Hand Cinch Latch
F48	Power Seat Recline Module
F49	Lift Glass
F50	Driver Power Seat
F51	Power Liftgate Module
F52	Passenger Power Seat

Relays	Usage
K53	–
K54	–
K55	L/GLASS

Wheels and Tires

Tires

Every new GM vehicle has high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. See the warranty manual for information regarding the tire warranty and where to get service. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer.

⚠ Warning

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.
- Overloading the tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. There could be a blowout and a serious crash. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ➪ *240*.
- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting crash

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when the tires are cold.

- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn or old tires can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.
- Replace any tires that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.
- Improperly repaired tires can cause a crash. Only your dealer or an authorized tire

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

service center should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tires.

- Do not spin the tires in excess of 56 km/h (35 mph) on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tires to explode.

See *Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation* ⇨ *408* for inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed driving.

All-Season Tires

This vehicle may come with all-season tires. These tires are designed to provide good overall performance on most road surfaces and weather conditions. Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. Original equipment all-season tires can be identified by the last two characters of this TPC code, which will be “MS.”

Consider installing winter tires on the vehicle if frequent driving on snow or ice-covered roads is expected. All-season tires provide adequate performance for most winter driving conditions, but they may not offer the same level of traction or performance as winter tires on snow or ice-covered roads. See *Winter Tires* ⇨ *401*.

Winter Tires

This vehicle was not originally equipped with winter tires. Winter tires are designed for increased traction on snow and ice-covered roads. Consider installing winter tires on the vehicle if frequent driving on ice or snow covered roads is expected. See your dealer for details regarding winter tire availability and proper tire selection. Also, see *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *417*.

With winter tires, there may be decreased dry road traction, increased road noise, and shorter tread life.

After changing to winter tires, be alert for changes in vehicle handling and braking.

If using winter tires:

- Use tires of the same brand and tread type on all four wheel positions.
- Use only radial ply tires of the same size, load range, and speed rating as the original equipment tires.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as the original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, Y, and ZR speed rated tires. If winter tires with a lower speed rating are chosen, never exceed the tire's maximum speed capability.

Low-Profile Tires

If the vehicle has 275/50R22 size tires, they are classified as low-profile tires.

Caution

Low-profile tires are more susceptible to damage from road hazards or curb impact than

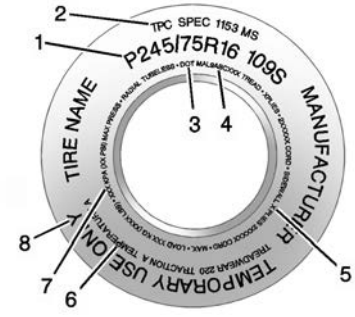
(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

standard profile tires. Tire and/or wheel assembly damage can occur when coming into contact with road hazards like potholes, or sharp edged objects, or when sliding into a curb. The warranty does not cover this type of damage. Keep tires set to the correct inflation pressure and when possible, avoid contact with curbs, potholes, and other road hazards.

Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into the sidewall. The example shows a typical passenger vehicle tire sidewall.



Passenger (P-Metric)/Spare Tire

(1) Tire Size : The tire size is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration in this section.

(2) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification) : Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code

molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

(3) DOT (Department of Transportation) : The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

DOT Tire Date of Manufacture : The last four digits of the Tire Identification Number indicate the tire manufactured date. The first two digits represent the week and the last two digits, the year. For example, the third week of the year 2020 would have a 4-digit DOT date of 0320. Week 01 is the first full week (Sunday through Saturday) of each year.

(4) Tire Identification Number (TIN) : The letters and numbers following the DOT code are the TIN. The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(5) Tire Ply Material : The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(6) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) : Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: tread wear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information, see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading* ⇨ *418*.

(7) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit : Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406* and *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

(8) Temporary Use Only : Only use a temporary spare tire until the road tire is repaired and replaced. This spare tire should not be driven on over 112 km/h (70 mph), or 88 km/h (55 mph) when pulling a trailer, with the proper inflation pressure. See *Full-Size Spare Tire* ⇨ *433*.

Tire Designations

Tire Size

The example shows a typical passenger vehicle tire size.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire

(1) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire : The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter "P" as the first character in the tire size means a passenger

vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(2) Tire Width : The 3-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(3) Aspect Ratio : A 2-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 75, as shown in item (3) of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 75 percent as high as it is wide.

(4) Construction Code : A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction.

(5) Rim Diameter : Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(6) Service Description : These characters represent the load index and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carrying capacity a tire is certified to carry. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load.

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure : The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in kPa (kilopascal) or psi (pounds per square inch).

Accessory Weight : The combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are automatic transmission, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio : The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt : A rubber coated layer of cords between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead : The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire : A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Tire Pressure : The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in kPa (kilopascal) or psi (pounds per square inch) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406*.

Curb Weight : The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings : A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

GVWR : Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

GAWR FRT : Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

GAWR RR : Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall : The side of an asymmetrical tire that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa) : The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire : A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index : An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure : The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating : The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight : The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight : The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 68 kg (150 lb). See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

Occupant Distribution : Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall : The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire : A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure : Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire

placard. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406* and *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

Radial Ply Tire : A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim : A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall : The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating : An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction : The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread : The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators : Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires* ⇨ *416*.

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards) : A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading* ⇨ *418*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight : The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 68 kg (150 lb) plus the rated cargo load. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire : Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard : A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See “Tire and Loading Information Label” under *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

⚠ Warning

Neither tire underinflation nor overinflation is good. Underinflated tires, or tires that do not have enough air, can result in:

- Tire overloading and overheating, which could lead to a blowout.
- Premature or irregular wear.
- Poor handling.
- Reduced fuel economy.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Overinflated tires, or tires that have too much air, can result in:

- Unusual wear.
- Poor handling.
- Rough ride.
- Needless damage from road hazards.

The Tire and Loading Information label on the vehicle indicates the original equipment tires and the correct cold tire inflation pressures. The recommended pressure is the minimum air pressure needed to support the vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight the vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tire and Loading Information label, see *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*. How the vehicle is loaded affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load the vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check the pressure of the tires once a month or more.

Do not forget the spare tire, if the vehicle has one. See *Full-Size Spare Tire* ⇨ *433* for additional information.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tire pressure. Proper tire inflation cannot be determined by looking at the tire. Check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold, meaning the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or no more than 1.6 km (1 mi).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until the recommended pressure is reached. If the inflation pressure is high, press on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve to release air.

Re-check the tire pressure with the tire gauge.

Put the valve caps back on the valve stems to keep out dirt and moisture. Use only valve caps designed for the vehicle by GM. TPMS sensors could be damaged and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation

⚠ Warning

Driving at high speeds, 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher, puts additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat buildup and can cause sudden tire failure. This could cause a crash, and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions allow the vehicle to be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high-speed operation, are in excellent condition, and are set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

Vehicles with tire sizes listed in the High Speed Operation Inflation Pressures table require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold tire inflation pressure to the corresponding value in the table for the tire size on the vehicle.

High Speed Operation Inflation Pressures	
Tire Size	**Cold Inflation Pressure kPa (psi)**
275/50R22 111H	270 kPa (39 psi)

Return the tires to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure when high-speed driving has ended. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240* and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406*.

Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire

pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *410*.

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *476*.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the tires and transmit the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light located on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tire displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC). The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. If the vehicle has DIC buttons, tire pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays, see *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *132*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and needs to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label shows the size of the original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for the tires when they are cold. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location. Also see *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406*.

The TPMS can warn about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *414*, *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *415* and *Tires* ⇨ *400*.

Caution

Tire sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tire sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tire sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tire sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire pressure warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after the road tire is replaced and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tires. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor matching process. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Replacement tires or wheels do not match the original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *417*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly, it cannot detect or signal a low tire pressure condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message come on and stay on.

Tire Fill Alert (If Equipped)

This feature provides visual and audible alerts outside the vehicle to help when inflating an underinflated tire to the recommended cold tire pressure.

When the low tire pressure warning light comes on:

1. Park the vehicle in a safe, level place.
2. Set the parking brake firmly.
3. Place the vehicle in P (Park).

4. Add air to the tire that is underinflated. The turn signal lamp will flash.

   When the recommended pressure is reached, the horn sounds once and the turn signal lamp will stop flashing and briefly turn solid.

Repeat these steps for all underinflated tires that have illuminated the low tire pressure warning light.

⚠ Warning

Overinflating a tire could cause the tire to rupture and you or others could be injured. Do not exceed the maximum pressure listed on the tire sidewall. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling* ⇨ *402* and *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

If the tire is overinflated by more than 35 kPa (5 psi), the horn will sound multiple times and the turn signal lamp will continue to flash for several seconds after filling stops. To release and correct the pressure, while the turn signal lamp is still flashing, briefly press the center of the valve stem. When the recommended pressure is reached, the horn sounds once.

If the turn signal lamp does not flash within 15 seconds after starting to inflate the tire, the tire fill alert has not been activated or is not working.

If the hazard warning flashers are on, the tire fill alert visual feedback will not work properly.

The TPMS will not activate the tire fill alert properly under the following conditions:

- There is interference from an external device or transmitter.
- The air pressure from the inflation device is not sufficient to inflate the tire.
- There is a malfunction in the TPMS.
- There is a malfunction in the horn or turn signal lamps.
- The identification code of the TPMS sensor is not registered to the system.
- The battery of the TPMS sensor is low.

If the tire fill alert does not operate due to TPMS interference, move the vehicle about 1 m (3 ft) back or forward and try again. If the tire fill alert feature is not working, use a tire pressure gauge.

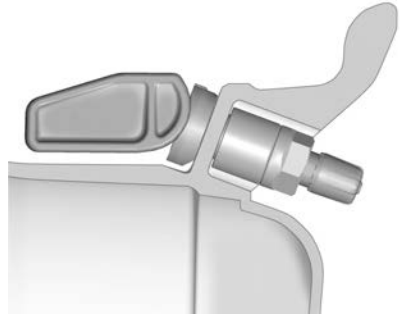
TPMS Sensor Matching Process — Auto Learn Function

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tire/wheel position after rotating the tires or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. When a tire is installed, the vehicle must be stationary for about 20 minutes before the system recalculates. The following relearn process takes up to 10 minutes, driving at a minimum speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). A dash (-) or pressure value will display in the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *132*. A warning message displays in the DIC if a problem occurs during the relearn process.

Trailer Tire Pressure Monitoring Operation

If equipped, the Trailer Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TTPMS) is designed to monitor the pressure of the trailer tires and warn the driver when a low pressure condition exists. TTPMS sensors for four tires are provided. The system can accommodate a trailer with up to six tires if additional sensors are purchased from the dealer. Also, the system can be paired with up to five individual trailers.

Prior to use, the vehicle must learn the sensors by following the learning process. See *Trailering App* ⇨ *354*.



Contact your trailer service center or tire service center to have the pressure sensors installed inside the trailer tires. The technician should insert the sensor stem through the hole in the trailer wheel. When the sensor is correctly positioned, the nut on the sensor stem should be tightened to 8 N•m (6 lb ft). When mounting the trailer tire onto the trailer wheel be careful not to damage the sensor.

The Trailering App can be used to view the tire pressures after the recommended trailer tire pressures have been entered. Refer to the trailer tire placard on the trailer or the trailer tire sidewall for the recommended tire pressure.

The system is compatible with trailer tires that have placard pressure values from 103 - 689 kpa (15 - 100 psi). The hole in the wheel for the tire stem must be 11.43 mm (0.453 in) in diameter. Use of the pressure sensors on a wheel with a different stem hole size could result in loss of air from the tire.

If a low trailer tire pressure condition is detected, the TTPMS displays a warning message on the DIC. If the warning message is displayed, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the tire placard on the trailer.

In addition, the TTPMS monitors the temperature of the trailer tires. If the system detects a high temperature on one or more of the trailer tires, a warning message will be displayed on the DIC. If this warning message is displayed, stop as soon as possible, and inspect the overheated trailer tire.

Common causes for high trailer tire temperature are underinflation, overloading, or tire damage.

TTPMS Malfunction Message

The TTPMS will not function properly if one or more of the trailer tire sensors are missing or inoperable. If the system detects a malfunction, a DIC message indicates that the system requires service. Some of the conditions that can cause the service message to occur are:

- One of the trailer tires has been replaced with the spare tire which does not have a learned TTPMS sensor. The DIC message should turn off after the pressure sensor is installed in the tire, and the learning process is performed successfully. See "TTPMS Sensor Learning Process" under *Trailering App* ⇨ *354*.
- The TTPMS sensor learning process was not done or not completed successfully. The DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor learning process. See "TTPMS Sensor Learning Process" under *Trailering App* ⇨ *354*.
- One or more TTPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message should go off when the TTPMS sensors are installed and the sensor learning process is performed successfully. See "TTPMS Sensor Learning Process" under *Trailering App* ⇨ *354*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TTPMS could cause interference to the TTPMS which could cause loss of signal reception from the sensor.
- If the system does not receive the signal from an individual sensor, an error message may not occur until the vehicle has been driver for a period of time.

If the TTPMS is not functioning properly, it cannot detect or signal a low tire condition. See your dealer for service if the DIC message comes on and stays on when the trailer tire pressures have been checked and determined to be correct.

Tire Inspection

We recommend that the tires, including the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, be inspected for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Replace the tire if:

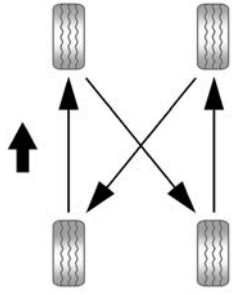
- The indicators at three or more places around the tire can be seen.
- There is cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

Tire Rotation

Tires should be rotated every 12 000 km (7,500 mi). See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *452*.

Tires are rotated to achieve a more uniform wear for all tires. The first rotation is the most important.

Anytime unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tires as soon as possible, check for proper tire inflation pressure, and check for damaged tires or wheels. If the unusual wear continues after the rotation, check the wheel alignment. See *When It Is Time for New Tires* ⇨ *416* and *Wheel Replacement* ⇨ *420*.



Use this rotation pattern when rotating the tires.

Do not include the spare tire in the tire rotation.

Adjust the front and rear tires to the recommended inflation pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label after the tires have been rotated. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406* and *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *410*.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See "Wheel Nut Torque" under *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *464*.

⚠ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can cause wheel nuts to become loose over time. The wheel could come off and cause a crash. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

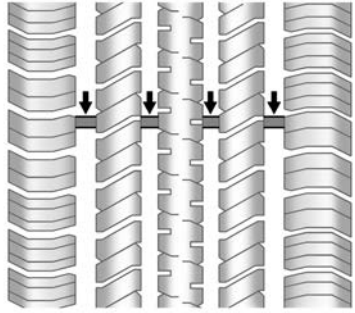
Lightly coat the inner diameter of the wheel hub opening with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tire rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up.

⚠ Warning

Do not apply grease to the wheel mounting surface, wheel conical seats, or the wheel nuts or bolts. Grease applied to these areas could cause a wheel to become loose or come off, resulting in a crash.

When It Is Time for New Tires

Factors, such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tires.



Treadwear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tires. Treadwear indicators appear when the tires have only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *414* and *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *415* for additional information.

The rubber in tires ages over time. This also applies to the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, even if it is never used. Multiple factors including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast aging takes place. GM recommends that tires, including the spare if equipped, be replaced after six years, regardless of tread wear. To identify the age of a tire, use the tire manufacture date, which is the last four digits of the DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN) molded into one side of the tire sidewall. The last four digits of the TIN indicate the tire manufactured date. The first two digits represent the week and the last two digits, the year. For example, the third week of the year 2020 would have a 4-digit DOT date of 0320. Week 01 is the first full week (Sunday through Saturday) of each year.

Vehicle Storage

Tires age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to slow aging. This area should be free of grease, gasoline, or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tires that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for at least a

month, remove the tires or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tires.

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for the vehicle. The original equipment tires installed were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. When replacement tires are needed, GM strongly recommends buying tires with the same TPC Spec rating.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of the vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling* ⇨ *402* for additional information.

GM recommends replacing worn tires in complete sets of four. Uniform tread depth on all tires will help to maintain the performance of the vehicle. Braking and handling performance may be adversely affected if all the tires are not replaced at the same time. If proper rotation and maintenance have been done, all four tires should wear out at about the same time. However, if it is necessary to replace only one axle set of worn tires, place the new tires on the rear axle. See *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *415*.

⚠ Warning

Tires could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tire could cause injury or death. Only your

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

dealer or authorized tire service center should mount or dismount the tires.

⚠ Warning

Mixing tires of different sizes (other than those originally installed on the vehicle), brands, tread patterns, or types may cause loss of vehicle control, resulting in a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tire on all wheels.

⚠ Warning

Using bias-ply tires on the vehicle may cause the wheel rim flanges to develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

and cause a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on the vehicle.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as the original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, Y and ZR speed rated tires. Never exceed the winter tires' maximum speed capability when using winter tires with a lower speed rating.

If the vehicle tires must be replaced with a tire that does not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction (radial) as the original tires.

The Tire and Loading Information label indicates the original equipment tires on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If wheels or tires are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tires, vehicle performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, electronic stability control, or All-Wheel Drive, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

⚠ Warning

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *417* and *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *368*.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter tires, compact spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must

also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

All Passenger Car Tires Must Conform to Federal Safety Requirements In Addition To These Grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law. Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive

loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing are not necessary on a regular basis. Consider an alignment check if there is unusual tire wear or the vehicle is significantly pulling to one side or the other. Some slight pull to the left or right, depending on the crown of the road and/or other road surface variations such as troughs or ruts, is normal. If the vehicle is vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels may need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it. Some aluminum wheels can be repaired. See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Replace wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors with new GM original equipment parts.

⚠ Warning

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of the vehicle. Tires can lose air, and cause loss of control, causing a crash. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Caution

The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ Warning

Replacing a wheel with a used one is dangerous. How it has been used or how far it has been driven may be unknown. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. When replacing wheels, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Tire Chains

⚠ Warning

Do not use tire chains. There is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause loss of control and a crash. Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for the vehicle's tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To avoid vehicle damage, drive slowly and readjust or remove the traction device if it contacts the vehicle. Do not spin the wheels. If traction devices are used, install them on the rear tires.

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blowout while driving, especially if the tires are maintained properly. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there ever is a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

⚠ Warning

Driving on a flat tire will cause permanent damage to the tire. Re-inflating a tire after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tire that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

dealer or an authorized tire service center repair or replace the flat tire as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

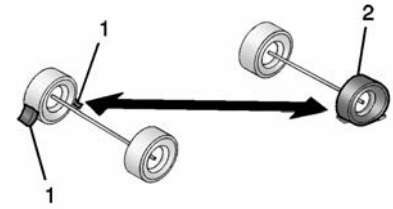
If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road, if possible. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *154*.

⚠ Warning

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall causing injury or death. Find a level place to change the tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Shift the vehicle to P (Park).
3. For vehicles with four-wheel drive with an N (Neutral) transfer case position, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear — not in N (Neutral).
4. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
5. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.
6. Place wheel blocks, if equipped, on both sides of the tire at the opposite corner of the tire being changed.

When the vehicle has a flat tire (2), use the following example as a guide to assist in the placement of the wheel blocks (1), if equipped.



1. Wheel Block (If Equipped)
2. Flat Tire

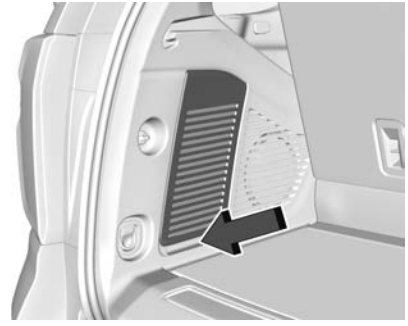
The following information explains how to use the jack and change a tire.

Tire Changing

Before changing a flat tire, see “Hands-Free Operation” under *Liftgate* ⇨ *19*.

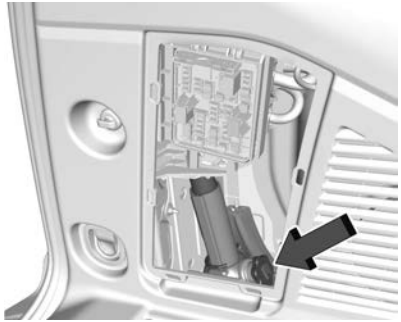
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools

The equipment needed to change a flat tire is stored in the rear of the vehicle. The jacking tools are under the load floor, secured with velcro straps. The jack is behind a door in the trim panel on the driver side.

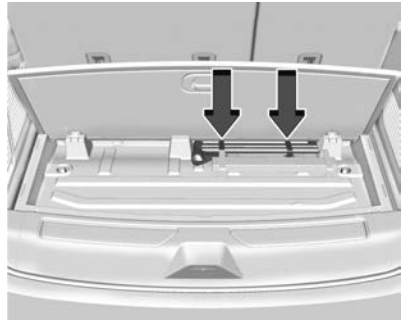


1. Pull to open the trim panel door.

   The third row driver side seat may need to be folded to access the trim panel door.



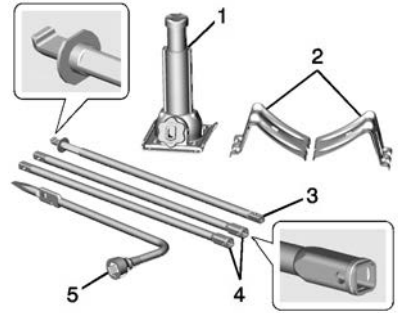
2. Turn the jack knob counterclockwise to release the jack and wheel blocks from the bracket. If equipped, remove the wheel blocks from the jack and place the wheel blocks on both sides of the tire at the opposite corner of the tire being changed. See *If a Tire Goes Flat* ⇨ *421* for more information on the placement of the wheel blocks. Place the jack and wheel blocks near the tire being changed.



Short Wheel Base Shown, Extended Wheel Base Similar

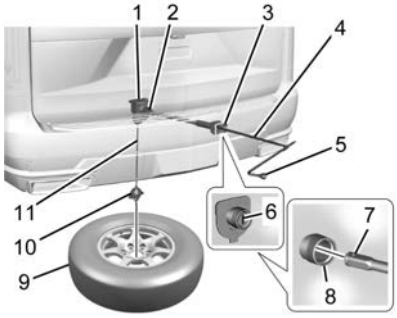
3. Lift the load floor. Remove the jacking tools and place them near the tire being changed.

Use the following tools:



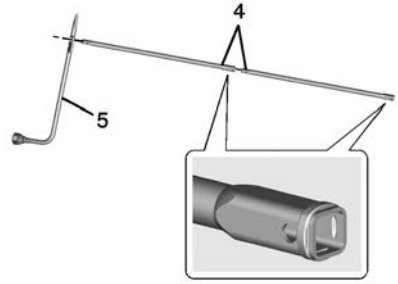
1. Jack
2. Wheel Blocks
3. Jack Handle
4. Jack Handle Extensions
5. Wheel Wrench

To access the spare tire, refer to the following graphics and instructions:

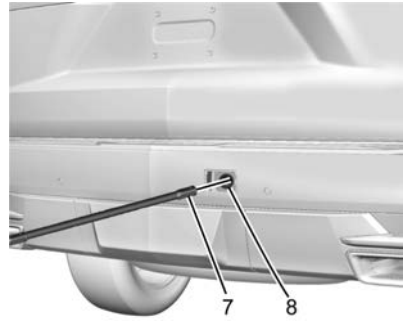


1. Hoist Assembly
2. Hoist Shaft
3. Hoist Shaft Access Cover/Hole
4. Jack Handle Extension
5. Wheel Wrench
6. Spare Tire Lock
7. Hoist End of Extension Tool
8. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
9. Spare Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Up)
10. Tire/Wheel Retainer
11. Hoist Cable

1. Open the hoist shaft access cover (3) on the bumper to access the spare tire lock (6).
2. To remove the spare tire lock (6), insert the mechanical key, turn it clockwise and then pull it straight out.



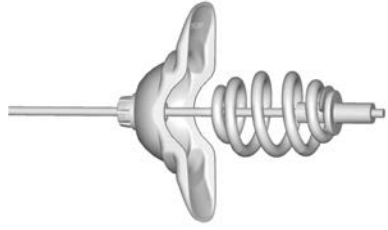
3. Assemble the jack handle extensions (4) and wheel wrench (5), as shown.



4. Insert the open end of the extension (7) through the hole in the rear bumper (8) (hoist shaft access hole).

   Be sure the hoist end of the extension (7) connects to the hoist shaft. The ribbed square end of the extension is used to lower the spare tire.
5. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground. Continue to turn the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.
6. Pull the spare tire out from under the vehicle.

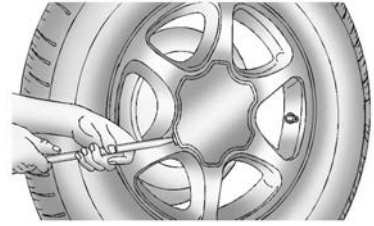
7. Tilt the tire toward the vehicle with some slack in the cable to access the tire/wheel retainer.



   Tilt the retainer and pull it and the cable and spring through the center of the wheel.
8. Put the spare tire near the flat tire.

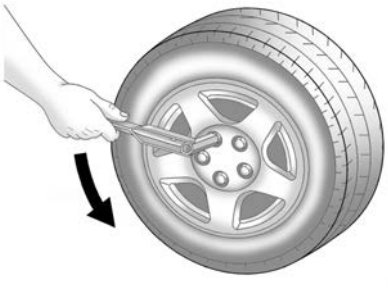
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *If a Tire Goes Flat* ⇨ *421* for more information.



2. If the vehicle has a center cap that covers the wheel fasteners, place the chisel end of the wheel wrench in the slot on the wheel and gently pry the cap out.

   If the wheel has a bolt-on hub cap, loosen the plastic nut caps by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise. The plastic nut caps will be retained in the hub cap after it is removed from the wheel.



3. Use the wheel wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to loosen the wheel nuts. Do not remove the wheel nuts yet.

⚠ Warning

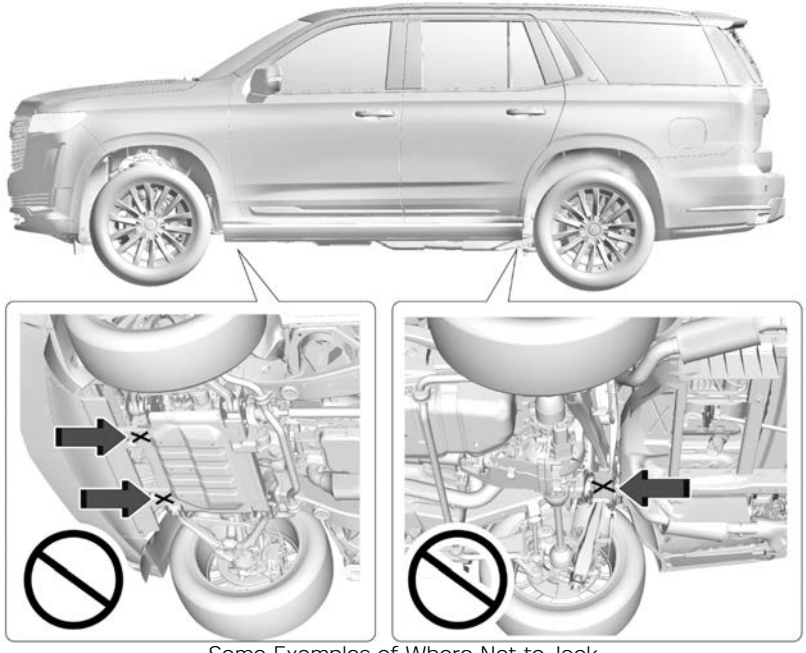
To avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, disable the power assist steps before using a jack or placing an object under the vehicle. See *Power Assist Steps* ⇨ *27*.

Caution

Only raise the vehicle from the jacking locations shown. Raising the vehicle from the rear could damage the frame or other components. The damage may not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Vehicle Jacking Locations

4. Position the jack lift head as shown, at the jacking location nearest the flat tire. The jack must not be used in any other position.



Some Examples of Where Not to Jack

⚠ Warning

Getting under a vehicle when it is lifted on a jack is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

⚠ Warning

Raising the vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

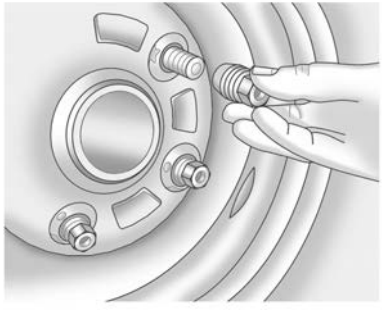
The jack has a feature to limit its travel to prevent overextension. When the height limit is reached, an increase in resistance if felt when attempting to raise the jack

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

farther. Raising the jack past the height limit can damage the jack pin and cause the jack to lock into an overextended position or not lower fully. Do not attempt to force the jack higher once the height limit is reached.

5. Raise the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise in the jack. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to fit under the wheel well.

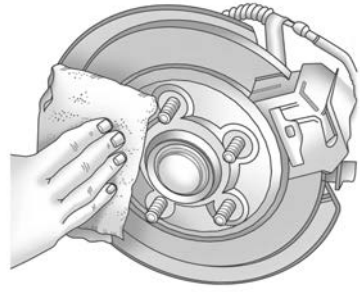


6. Remove all of the wheel nuts.

7. Remove the flat tire.

⚠ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can cause wheel nuts to become loose over time. The wheel could come off and cause a crash. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.



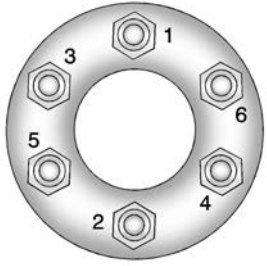
8. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.
9. Place the spare tire on the wheel-mounting surface.

⚠ Warning

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

10. Reinstall the wheel nuts. Tighten each nut by hand. Then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.

11. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle. Lower the jack completely.



12. Tighten the nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown by turning the wheel wrench clockwise.

⚠ Warning

Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification after replacing.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Follow the torque specification supplied by the aftermarket manufacturer when using accessory locking wheel nuts. See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *464* for original equipment wheel nut torque specifications.

Caution

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *464* for the wheel nut torque specification.

When reinstalling the regular wheel and tire, also reinstall either the center cap or the bolt-on hub cap, depending on which one the vehicle has.

- For center caps, line up the tab on the center cap with the slot in the wheel. The cap only goes in one way. Place the cap on the wheel and press until it snaps into place.
- For bolt-on hub caps, line up the plastic nut caps with the wheel nuts and tighten clockwise by hand to get them started. Then tighten with the wheel wrench until snug.

Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

⚠ Warning

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

⚠ Warning

Failure to follow these tire storage instructions carefully could result in personal injury or property

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

damage if the hoist cable fails or if the tire comes loose. Make sure the tire is stored securely before driving.

Caution

Always store the spare tire or flat tire with the valve stem pointed up. Stowing a tire with the valve stem pointed down could result in damage to the wheel.

Caution

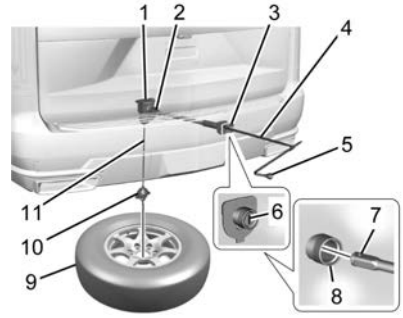
The tire hoist is designed to be raised and lowered with tension on the cable. If the hoist must be raised or lowered without a tire attached, do so only by hand, and at a slow pace, to avoid damaging the mechanism. Do not use power tools.

⚠ Warning

An improperly stored spare tire could come loose and cause a crash. To avoid personal injury or property damage, always store the spare tire when the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

If the vehicle has 275/60R20 or 275/50R22 size tires, the flat tire must be stored inside of the vehicle using the flat tire secure strap inside the glove box. See “Storing a Flat Tire Inside of the Vehicle” later in this section.

If the vehicle has 265/65R18 or 275/55R20 size tires, store the flat tire under the rear of the vehicle in the spare tire carrier. Refer to the following graphics and instructions:

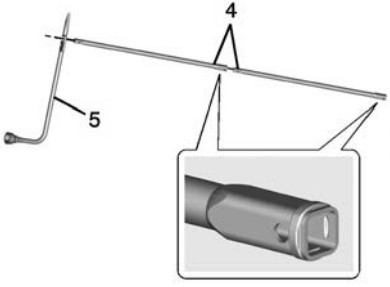


1. Hoist Assembly
2. Hoist Shaft
3. Hoist Shaft Access Cover/Hole
4. Jack Handle Extension
5. Wheel Wrench
6. Spare Tire Lock
7. Hoist End of Extension Tool
8. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
9. Spare Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Up)
10. Tire/Wheel Retainer
11. Hoist Cable

1. Put the tire (9) on the ground at the rear of the vehicle with the valve stem pointed up, and to the rear.

2. Tilt the tire toward the vehicle. Separate the tire/wheel retainer from the guide pin. Pull the pin through the center of the wheel. Tilt the retainer down through the center wheel opening.

   Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel.



3. Assemble the jack handle extensions (4) and wheel wrench (5).

Caution

Use of an air wrench or other power tools with the hoist mechanism is not recommended and could damage the system. Use only the tools supplied with the hoist mechanism.

4. Insert the open end of the extension (7) through the hole in the rear bumper (8) (hoist shaft access hole).
5. Raise the tire part way upward. Make sure the retainer is seated in the wheel opening.
6. Raise the tire fully against the underside of the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. The cable cannot be overtightened.

7. Make sure the tire is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to turn the tire. If the tire moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable.

   Repeat this tightness check procedure when checking the spare tire pressure according to the scheduled maintenance

information or any time the spare tire is handled due to service of other components.

Correctly Stored

Incorrectly Stored

8. Reinstall the spare tire lock.
9. Reinstall the hoist shaft access cover.

Storing the Tools

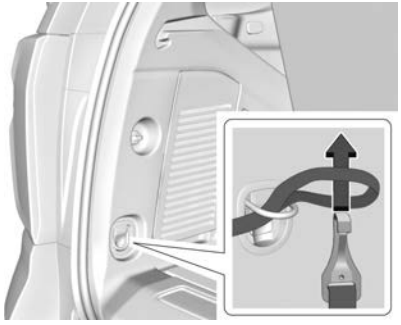
To store the tools:

1. Return the tools (wheel wrench, jack handle, and jack handle extensions) to the tool bag. Use the velcro straps to secure the tool bag under the load floor in the cargo area.
2. Position the jack and wheel blocks in the driver side trim panel over the wheelhouse.
3. Turn the jack knob clockwise until the jack is secured tight in the mounting bracket. Be sure to position the holes in the base of the jack onto the pin in the mounting bracket.
4. Close the trim panel door.

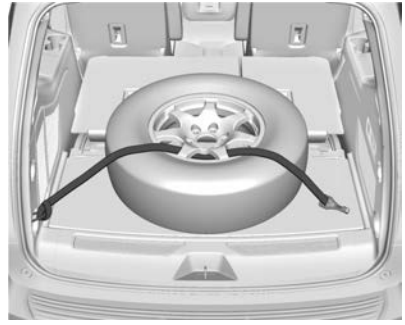
Storing a Flat Tire Inside of the Vehicle

If the vehicle has 275/60R20 or 275/50R22 size tires, the flat tire must be stored inside of the vehicle in the cargo area using the flat tire secure strap inside the glove box.

1. Store the tools. See “Storing the Tools” earlier in this section.
2. The third row seat must be folded down to provide sufficient space to store the flat tire. If the third row seat cannot be folded down, the flat tire cannot be stored and must be left in a safe location, to be picked up at a later time.
3. Once there is sufficient space in the rear of the vehicle, lift the flat tire and place it on top of the load floor, with the valve stem pointed up.



4. Remove the flat tire secure strap from the glove box and place the loop end of the strap through the cargo tie-down. Place the hook end of the strap through the loop and pull it until the strap is fastened securely to the tie-down.



5. Route the hook end of the strap through the wheel, as shown.
6. Attach the hook to the other cargo tie-down in the rear of the vehicle.
7. Tighten the strap.

Full-Size Spare Tire

If this vehicle came with a full-size spare tire, it was fully inflated when new, however, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406* and *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240* for information regarding proper tire inflation and loading the vehicle. For instructions on how to remove, install, or store a spare tire, see *Tire Changing* ⇨ *422*.

If equipped with a temporary use full-size spare tire, it is indicated on the tire sidewall. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling* ⇨ *402*. This spare tire should not be driven on over 112 km/h (70 mph), or 88 km/h (55 mph) when pulling a trailer, at the proper inflation pressure. Repair and replace the road tire as soon as it is convenient, and stow the spare tire for future use.

Caution

If the vehicle has four-wheel drive and a different size spare tire is installed, do not drive in four-wheel drive until the flat tire is repaired and/or replaced. The vehicle could be damaged and the repairs would not be covered by the warranty. Never use four-wheel drive when a different size spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The vehicle may have a different size spare tire than the road tires originally installed on the vehicle. This spare tire was developed for use on this vehicle, so it is all right to drive on it. If the vehicle has four-wheel drive and a different size spare tire is installed, drive only in two-wheel drive.

After installing the spare tire on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible and check that the spare is correctly inflated. The spare tire is made to perform well at speeds up to 112 km/h (70 MPH) at the recommended inflation pressure, so you can finish your trip.

Have the damaged or flat road tire repaired or replaced and installed back onto the vehicle as soon as possible so the spare tire will be available in case it is needed again. Do not mix tires and wheels of difference sizes, because they will not fit. Keep the spare tire and its wheel together.

If the vehicle has a spare tire that does not match the original road tires and wheels in size and type, do not include the spare in the tire rotation.

Jump Starting

Jump Starting - North America

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery - North America ⇨ 385*.

If the vehicle's battery (or batteries) has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ Warning

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories can expose you to chemicals including lead and lead compounds, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

See the warning on the back cover.

⚠ Warning

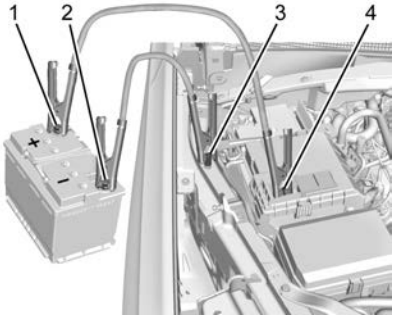
Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Caution

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.



1. Good Battery Positive (+) Terminal
2. Good Battery Negative (–) Terminal
3. Discharged Battery Negative (–) Grounding Point
4. Discharged Battery Positive (+) Terminal

The good battery positive (+) terminal and the good battery negative (–) terminal are on the battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.

The discharged battery positive (+) terminal and the discharged battery negative (–) grounding point are on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The discharged battery positive (+) terminal is under a cover. Open the cover to expose the terminal.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Caution

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting.

2. If you have a vehicle with a diesel engine with two batteries, you should know before you begin that, especially in cold weather, you may not be able to get enough power from a single battery in another vehicle to start your diesel engine. If your vehicle has more than one battery, using the battery that is closer to the starter will reduce electrical resistance. This is located on the passenger side, in the rear of the engine compartment.
3. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause an unwanted ground connection. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put the automatic transmission in P (Park) before setting the parking brake. If you have a four-wheel-drive vehicle, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear, not in N (Neutral).

Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting.

4. Turn the ignition off on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all the lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save the radio!
5. Open the hood on the other vehicle and locate the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal locations on that vehicle.

⚠ Warning

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ Warning

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

6. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (–) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (–) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too. And do not connect the negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.
7. Connect one end of the red positive (+) cable to the discharged battery positive (+) terminal.
8. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the good battery positive (+) terminal. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
9. Connect one end of the black negative (–) cable to the good battery negative (–) terminal. Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step.

10. Connect the other end of the negative (-) cable to the discharged battery negative (-) grounding point.
11. Start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
12. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Caution

If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

Jumper Cable Removal

Reverse the sequence exactly when removing the jumper cables.

After starting the disabled vehicle and removing the jumper cables, allow it to idle for several minutes.

Towing the Vehicle

Caution

Incorrectly transporting a disabled vehicle may cause damage to the vehicle. Use proper tire straps to secure the vehicle to the flatbed tow truck. Do not strap or hook to any frame, underbody, or suspension component not specified below. Do not move vehicles with drive axle tires on the ground. Damage is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

The vehicle may be equipped with an electric parking brake and/or an electronic shifter. In the event of a loss of 12-volt battery power, the electric parking brake cannot be released, and the vehicle cannot be

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

shifted to N (Neutral). Tire skates or dollies must be used under the non-rolling tires to prevent damage while loading/unloading the vehicle. Dragging the vehicle will cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

The vehicle may be equipped with a tow eye. Improper use of the tow eye may cause damage to the vehicle and is not covered by the vehicle warranty. If equipped, use the tow eye to load the vehicle onto a flatbed tow truck from a flat road surface, or to move the vehicle a very short distance at a walking pace. The tow eye is not designed for off-road recovery. The vehicle must be in N (Neutral) with the electric parking brake released when using the tow eye.

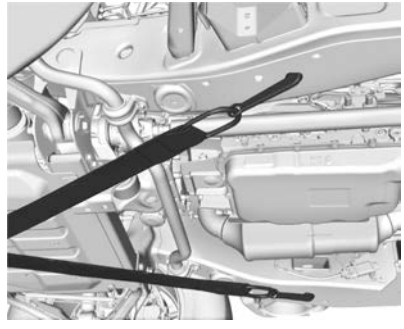
Contact a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be transported. GM recommends a flatbed tow truck to transport a disabled vehicle. Use ramps to help reduce approach angles, if necessary.

If equipped, a tow eye may be located near the spare tire or emergency jack. Do not use the tow eye to pull the vehicle from the snow, mud, sand, or ditch. Tow eye threads may have right or left-hand threads. Use caution when installing or removing the tow eye.

The vehicle must be in N (Neutral) and the electric parking brake must be released when loading the vehicle onto a flatbed tow truck.

- If the vehicle is equipped with car wash mode and has 12-volt battery power, refer to "Car Wash Mode" under *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *251* to place the vehicle in N (Neutral).
- If the 12-volt battery is dead and/or the engine will not start, the vehicle will not move. Try to jump start the vehicle. Refer to *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *434* and if the jump start is successful, retry the "Car Wash Mode" procedure.
- If jump starting is unsuccessful, the vehicle will not move. Tire skates or dollies must be used under the non-rolling tires to prevent vehicle damage.

Front Attachment Points



The vehicle is equipped with specific attachment points to be used to pull the vehicle onto a flatbed car carrier from a flat road surface. Do not use these attachment points to pull the vehicle from snow, mud or sand.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle, such as a motor home. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are dinghy and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels on a dolly.

Follow the tow vehicle manufacturer's instructions. See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.

Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

- Before towing the vehicle, become familiar with the local laws that apply to recreational vehicle towing. These laws may vary by region.
- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.

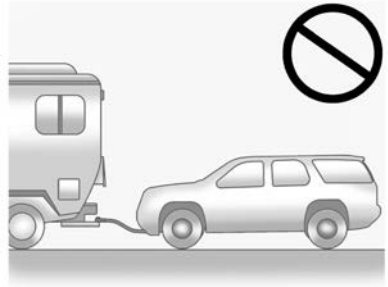
- What is the distance that will be traveled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed.

Caution

Use of a shield mounted in front of the vehicle grille could restrict airflow and cause damage to the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If using a shield, only use one that attaches to the towing vehicle.

Dinghy Towing

Two-Wheel-Drive Vehicles

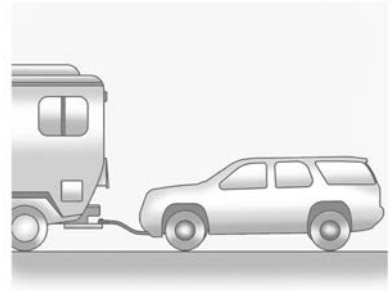


Caution

If the two-wheel-drive vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Two-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with all four wheels on the ground.

Four-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



Only dinghy tow four-wheel-drive vehicles with a two speed transfer case that has an N (Neutral) and a 4↓ setting.

⚠ Warning

Shifting a four-wheel-drive vehicle's transfer case into N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or others could be injured. Set the parking brake before shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral).

To dinghy tow:

1. Position the vehicle being towed behind the tow vehicle, facing forward and on a level surface.
2. Securely attach the vehicle being towed to the tow vehicle.
3. Apply the parking brake and start the engine.
4. Shift the transfer case to N (Neutral). See “Shifting into N (Neutral)” under *Four-Wheel Drive* ⇨ *256* for the proper procedure. Check that the vehicle is in N (Neutral) by shifting the transmission to R (Reverse) and then to D (Drive). There should be no movement of the vehicle while shifting.
5. Shift the transmission to P (Park).

Caution

Failure to tow the vehicle with the transmission in P (Park) can cause damage to the transmission.

6. Turn off the engine.
7. Place the vehicle in ACC/ ACCESSORY mode by pressing the start button without stepping on the brake pedal.
8. Release the parking brake only when you are confident it is secured to tow vehicle and will not roll.

   Before going on to the next step, be sure to take the mechanical key with you. It will be needed to re-enter the vehicle after the power is disconnected. See “Drive Door Key Lock Cylinder Access” under *Door Locks* ⇨ *14*.
9. Disconnect the negative battery cable at the battery and secure the nut and bolt. Cover the negative battery post with a non-conductive material to prevent any contact with the negative battery terminal.

Caution

Failure to disconnect the negative battery cable or to have it contact the terminals can cause damage to the vehicle.

10. Move the steering wheel to make sure the steering column is unlocked.

Caution

If the steering column is locked, vehicle damage may occur.

11. Rock the vehicle to make sure the parking brake is not set and transfer case is in N (Neutral).

Caution

Towing the vehicle with the parking brake set can damage it. Always release the parking brake prior to towing the vehicle.

Disconnecting the Towed Vehicle

Before disconnecting the towed vehicle:

1. Park on a level surface.
2. Connect the battery.
3. Apply the brake pedal.

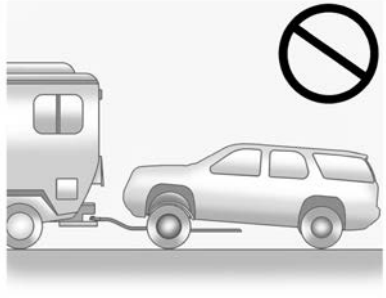
⚠ Warning

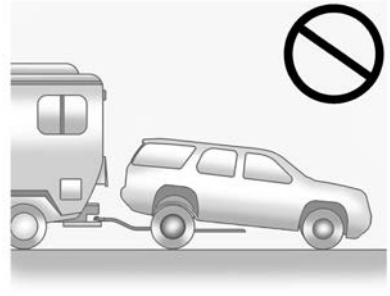
The vehicle can roll when the brake pedal is released. Always apply and hold the brake pedal when setting the parking brake. Make sure the parking brake is fully engaged before releasing the brake pedal.

4. Start the engine and shift the transfer case out of N (Neutral) to 2 ↑. See "Shifting out of N (Neutral)" under *Four-Wheel Drive* ⇨ *256*. See your dealer if the transfer case cannot be shifted out of N (Neutral).
5. Check that the vehicle is in 2 ↑ by shifting the transmission to R (Reverse) and then to D (Drive). There should be movement of the vehicle while shifting.
6. Shift the transmission to P (Park) and turn off the vehicle.
7. Set the parking brake.
8. Release the parking brake.
9. Disconnect the vehicle from the tow vehicle.
10. Reset any lost presets.

The outside temperature display will default to 0 °C (32 °F) but will reset with normal usage.

Dolly Towing





Caution

Do not tow this vehicle with two wheels on the ground, or vehicle damage could occur. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Dolly towing this vehicle is not allowed with either the front or the rear tires on the ground for two-wheel drive or four-wheel drive, regardless of transfer case.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Locks

Locks are lubricated at the factory. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, and have the locks greased after using. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *461*.

Washing the Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle's finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

Caution

Do not use petroleum-based, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal, or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding correct product usage, necessary

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

safety precautions, and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Caution

Avoid using high-pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8 274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

If using an automatic car wash, follow the car wash instructions. The windshield wiper and rear window wiper, if equipped, must be off. Remove any accessories that may be damaged or interfere with the car wash equipment.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

Cleaning Underhood Components

Caution

Do not power wash any component under the hood that has this symbol.

This could cause damage that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Solvents or aggressive cleaners may harm underhood components. The usages of these chemicals should be avoided.

Recommend water only.

A pressure washer may be used, but care must be utilized. The following criteria must be followed:

- Water pressure must be kept below 14,000 KPa (2,000 PSI).
- Water temperature must be below 80 °C (180 °F).

- Spray nozzle with a 40 degree wide angle spray pattern or wider must be used.
- Nozzle must be kept at least 30 cm (1 ft) away from all surfaces.

Finish Care

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended. If painted surfaces are damaged, see your dealer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your dealer for approved cleaning products.

Do not apply waxes or polishes to uncoated plastic, vinyl, rubber, decals, simulated wood, or flat paint as damage can occur.

Caution

Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.

To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Moldings

Caution

Failure to clean and protect the bright metal moldings can result in a hazy white finish or pitting. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

The bright metal moldings on the vehicle are aluminum, chrome or stainless steel. To prevent damage always follow these cleaning instructions:

- Be sure the molding is cool to the touch before applying any cleaning solution.
- Use only approved cleaning solutions for aluminum, chrome or stainless steel. Some cleaners are highly acidic or contain alkaline substances and can damage the moldings.
- Always dilute a concentrated cleaner according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not use cleaners that are not intended for automotive use.
- Use a nonabrasive wax on the vehicle after washing to protect and extend the molding finish.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses, Emblems, Decals, and Stripes

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth, and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps, lenses, emblems,

decals, and stripes. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" previously in this section.

Lamp covers are made of plastic, and some have a UV protective coating. Do not clean or wipe them when dry.

Do not use any of the following on lamp covers:

- Abrasive or caustic agents.
- Washer fluids and other cleaning agents in higher concentrations than suggested by the manufacturer.
- Solvents, alcohols, fuels, or other harsh cleaners.
- Ice scrapers or other hard items.
- Aftermarket appearance caps or covers while the lamps are illuminated, due to excessive heat generated.

Caution

Failure to clean lamps properly can cause damage to the lamp cover that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

Using wax on low gloss black finish stripes can increase the gloss level and create a non-uniform finish. Clean low gloss stripes with soap and water only.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the hood and windshield, when washing the vehicle.

Shutter System

The vehicle may have a shutter system designed to help improve fuel economy. Keep the shutter system clear of debris, snow and ice. If the check engine light is activated, please check to see if the shutter system is clear of debris, snow or ice.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber blades using a lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow, and ice.

Weatherstrips

Apply weatherstrip lubricant on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Lubricate weatherstrips at least once a year. Hot, dry climates may require more frequent application. Black marks from rubber

material on painted surfaces can be removed by rubbing with a clean cloth. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *461*.

Tires

Use a stiff brush with tire cleaner to clean the tires.

Caution

Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.

Wheels and Wheel Trim

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Caution

Chrome wheels and chrome wheel trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

that have been sprayed with magnesium chloride or calcium chloride. These are used on roads for conditions such as dust and ice. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.

Caution

To avoid surface damage on wheels and wheel trim, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, or brushes. Use only GM approved cleaners. Do not drive the vehicle through an automatic car wash that uses silicon carbide tire/wheel cleaning brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Brake System

Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect drum brake linings/shoes for wear or cracks. Inspect all other brake parts.

Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear at least once a year.

Inspect power steering for proper attachment, connections, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.

Visually check constant velocity joint boots and axle seals for leaks.

At least every other oil change lubricate the outer tie rod ends.

Control arm ball joints are maintenance-free.

Caution

Lubrication of applicable steering/suspension points should not be done unless the temperature is –12 °C (10 °F) or higher, or damage could result.

For a heavy-duty Suburban, see the Suburban Heavy-Duty Package supplement.

Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood hinges, liftgate hinges, steel fuel door hinge and power assist step hinges, unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

Underbody Maintenance

Caution

Avoid pressure washing the vehicle frame. Use of high-pressure washers can result in removal of corrosion protection and possible vehicle damage.

At least twice a year, spring and fall, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to thoroughly clean any areas where mud and other debris can collect. If equipped with power assist steps, extend them and then use a high pressure wash to clean all joints and gaps.

Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your dealer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface. See “Finish Care” previously in this section.

Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Before using cleaners, read and follow all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, open the doors and windows to get proper ventilation. Newspapers or dark garments can transfer color to the vehicle’s interior.

Caution

Immediately remove cleaners, hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Caution

Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage to the vehicle. Apply all cleaners directly to a cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners on any switches or controls.

When using liquid soap cleaners, follow the directions on the specific cleaner or soap solution for dilution instructions.

Caution

To prevent damage:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove soil from any interior surface
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with too much pressure.
- Do not get any exposed electrical components wet.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.
- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.
- Do not use disinfecting wipes that are scented or contain bleach. Do not use wipes or cleaners that show a color transfer to the wipe or change the appearance of the interior surface when used.
- Do not use scented or gel-type hand sanitizers. If hand sanitizer comes in contact with interior surfaces of the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap and water solution.

Interior Glass

To clean, use a microfiber cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. If necessary, use a commercial glass cleaner after cleaning with plain water.

Caution

To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window defogger.

Cleaning the windshield with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with water and mild soap.

Coated Moldings

Coated moldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft, lint-free cloth dampened with water.

- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

Vinyl/Rubber

If equipped with vinyl floor and rubber floor mats, use a soft cloth and/or brush dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution.

⚠ Warning

Do not use cleaners that contain silicone, wax-based products, or cleaners that increase gloss on vinyl/rubber floor and mats. These cleaners can permanently change the appearance and feel of the vinyl/rubber and can make the floor slippery. Your foot could slip while operating the vehicle, and you could lose control, resulting in a crash. You or others could be injured.

Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating vacuum brush attachment is being used, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean, lint-free colorfast cloth with water. Microfiber cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil into the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any color transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colorfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

After cleaning, use a paper towel to blot excess moisture.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

Use a microfiber cloth on high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays. First, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that can scratch the surface. Then gently clean by rubbing with a microfiber cloth. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfiber cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Caution

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, Other Plastic Surfaces, Low Gloss Paint Surfaces, and Natural Open Pore Wood Surfaces

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with a mild soap and water solution.

Caution

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, or spot removers. Do not use liquids that contain alcohol or solvents on leather seats. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim, and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windshield under certain conditions.

Caution

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Cargo Cover and Convenience Net

If equipped, wash with warm water and mild detergent. Do not use chlorine bleach. Rinse with cold water, and then dry completely.

Care of Seat Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye seat belt webbing. It may severely weaken the webbing. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean and rinse seat belt webbing only with mild soap and lukewarm water. Allow the webbing to dry.

Floor Mats

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat use:

- The original equipment floor mats are designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need to be replaced, it is recommended that GM-certified floor mats are purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the pedals. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
- Do not use a floor mat if the vehicle is not equipped with a floor mat retainer on the driver side floor.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats

Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock each retainer and remove.

Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snapping into position.

Make sure the floor mat is properly secured in place.

Verify the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Cleaning Rubber Floor Mats (All-Weather Mats and Floor Liners)

See “Vinyl/Rubber” under *Interior Care* ⇨ *446* for important cleaning information.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
General Information 451

Maintenance Schedule
Maintenance Schedule 452

Special Application Services
Special Application Services 458

Additional Maintenance and Care
Additional Maintenance and Care 458

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 461
Maintenance Replacement Parts 462

Maintenance Records
Maintenance Records 463

General Information

Your vehicle is an important investment. This section describes the required maintenance for the vehicle. Follow this schedule to help protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance. It may also help to maintain the value of the vehicle if it is sold. It is the responsibility of the owner to have all required maintenance performed.

Your dealer has trained technicians who can perform required maintenance using genuine replacement parts. They have up-to-date tools and equipment for fast and accurate diagnostics. Many dealers have extended evening and Saturday hours, courtesy transportation, and online scheduling to assist with service needs.

Your dealer recognizes the importance of providing competitively priced maintenance and repair services. With trained technicians, the dealer is the place for routine maintenance such as oil changes and tire rotations and additional maintenance items like tires, brakes, batteries, and wiper blades.

Caution

Damage caused by improper maintenance can lead to costly repairs and may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, recommended fluids, and lubricants are important to keep the vehicle in good working condition.

Do not have chemical flushes that are not approved by GM performed on the vehicle. The use of flushes, solvents, cleaners, or lubricants that are not approved by GM could damage the vehicle, requiring expensive repairs that are not covered by the vehicle warranty.

The Tire Rotation and Required Services are the responsibility of the vehicle owner. It is recommended to have your dealer perform these services every 12 000 km/7,500 mi. Proper vehicle maintenance helps to

keep the vehicle in good working condition, improves fuel economy, and reduces vehicle emissions.

Because of the way people use vehicles, maintenance needs vary. There may need to be more frequent checks and services. The Additional Required Services - Normal are for vehicles that:

- Carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *240*.
- Are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- Use the recommended fuel. See *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *331*.

Refer to the information in the Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal chart.

The Additional Required Services - Severe are for vehicles that are:

- Mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather.
- Mainly driven in hilly or mountainous terrain.
- Frequently towing a trailer.
- Used for high speed or competitive driving.
- Used for taxi, police, or delivery service.

Refer to the information in the Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe chart.

⚠ Warning

Performing maintenance work can be dangerous and can cause serious injury. Perform maintenance work only if the required information, proper tools, and equipment are available. If they are not, see your dealer to have a trained technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work* ⇨ *369*.

Maintenance Schedule

Owner Checks and Services

Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *372*.

Once a Month

- Check the tire inflation pressures, including the spare. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406*.
- Inspect the tires for wear. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *414*.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *382*.

Engine Oil Change

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays, have the engine oil and filter changed within the next 1 000 km/600 mi. If driven under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate the need for vehicle service for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and the oil life system must be reset. Your trained dealer technician can perform this work. If the engine oil life system is reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 5 000 km/3,000 mi since the last service. Reset the oil life system when the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *374*.

Engine Air Filter Change

When the REPLACE AT NEXT OIL CHANGE message displays, the engine air filter should be replaced at the next engine oil change. When the REPLACE ENGINE AIR FILTER SOON message displays, the engine air filter should be replaced at the earliest convenience. Reset the engine air filter life system after the engine air filter is replaced. See *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ *376*.

Extended Idle Use

When the vehicle is used in a way that requires extended idle time, one hour of use shall be deemed the same as 53 km (33 mi). See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *132* for hourmeter.

Air Conditioning Desiccant (Replace Every Seven Years)

The air conditioning system requires maintenance every seven years. This service requires replacement of the desiccant to help the longevity and efficient operation of the air conditioning system. This service can be complex. See your dealer.

Tire Rotation and Required Services Every 12 000 km/ 7,500 mi

Rotate the tires, if recommended for the vehicle, and perform the following services. See *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *415*.

- Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. If needed, change engine oil and filter, and reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *372* and *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *374*.
- Check the air filter life percentage. If necessary, replace the engine air filter and reset the engine air filter life system. See *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ *376*.
- Check engine coolant level. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *377*.
- Check windshield washer fluid level. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *382*.
- Check tire inflation pressures, including the spare. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *406*.
- Inspect tire wear. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *414*.
- Visually check for fluid leaks.
- Inspect brake system. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *442*.
- Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damage, including cracks or tears in the rubber boots, loose or missing parts, or signs of wear at least once a year. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *442*. Lubricate the suspension and steering components at least every other oil change (if equipped with grease fittings).
- Inspect power steering for proper attachment, connections, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.
- Visually inspect halfshafts and drive shafts for excessive wear, lubricant leaks, and/or damage including: tube dents or cracks, constant velocity joint or universal joint looseness, cracked or missing boots, loose or missing boot clamps, center bearing excessive looseness, loose or missing fasteners, and axle seal leaks.
- Check restraint system components. See *Safety System Check* ⇨ *64*.

- Visually inspect the fuel system including the evaporative (EVAP) system for damage or leaks. Visually check all fuel pipes, vapor lines, and hoses for proper attachment, connection, routing, and condition.
- Visually inspect exhaust system and nearby heat shields for loose or damaged parts.
- Lubricate body components. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *442*.
- Check parking brake and automatic transmission park mechanism. See *Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check* ⇨ *386*.
- Check accelerator pedal for damage, high effort, or binding. Replace if needed.
- Visually inspect gas strut for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage. Check the hold open ability of the strut. If the hold open is low, service the gas strut. See *Gas Strut(s)* ⇨ *388*.
- Inspect sunroof track and seal, if equipped. See *Sunroof* ⇨ *37*.
- Verify spare tire key lock operation and lubricate as needed. See *Tire Changing* ⇨ *422*.
- Visually inspect the spare tire to ensure that it is tightly stowed under the vehicle. Push, pull, and try to turn the tire. If the spare tire moves, tighten as necessary. See *Tire Changing* ⇨ *422*.

Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal	12 000 km/7,500 mi	24 000 km/15,000 mi	36 000 km/22,500 mi	48 000 km/30,000 mi	60 000 km/37,500 mi	72 000 km/45,000 mi	84 000 km/52,500 mi	96 000 km/60,000 mi	108 000 km/67,500 mi	120 000 km/75,000 mi	132 000 km/82,500 mi	144 000 km/90,000 mi	156 000 km/97,500 mi	168 000 km/105,000 mi	180 000 km/112,500 mi	192 000 km/120,000 mi	204 000 km/127,500 mi	216 000 km/135,000 mi	228 000 km/142,500 mi	240 000 km/150,000 mi
Rotate tires and perform Required Services. Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. Change engine oil and filter, if needed. Check engine air filter life percentage and status. Change engine air filter, if needed.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace passenger compartment air filter. (1)			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓		
Change transfer case fluid, if equipped with 4WD. (2)													✓							
Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires and/or boots.													✓							
Drain and fill engine cooling system. (3)																				✓
Visually inspect accessory drive belts. (4)																				✓
Replace brake fluid. (5)																				
Replace front and rear wiper blades. (6)		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓
Replace hood and/or body lift support gas struts. (7)										✓										✓
Replace air conditioning desiccant. (8)																				

Footnotes — Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal

(1) Or every two years, whichever comes first. More frequent passenger compartment air filter replacement may be needed if driving in areas with heavy traffic, poor air quality, high dust levels, or environmental allergens. Passenger compartment air filter replacement may also be needed if there is reduced airflow, window fogging, or odors. Your GM dealer can help determine when to replace the filter.

(2) Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can

overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

(3) Or every five years, whichever comes first. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *377*.

(4) Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. Inspect for fraying, excessive cracking, or damage; replace, if needed.

(5) Replace brake fluid every five years. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *384*.

(6) Or every 12 months, whichever comes first. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *387*.

(7) Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. See *Gas Strut(s)* ⇨ *388*.

(8) Replace air conditioning desiccant every seven years.

Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe	**12 000 km/7,500 mi**	**24 000 km/15,000 mi**	**36 000 km/22,500 mi**	**48 000 km/30,000 mi**	**60 000 km/37,500 mi**	**72 000 km/45,000 mi**	**84 000 km/52,500 mi**	**96 000 km/60,000 mi**	**108 000 km/67,500 mi**	**120 000 km/75,000 mi**	**132 000 km/82,500 mi**	**144 000 km/90,000 mi**	**156 000 km/97,500 mi**	**168 000 km/105,000 mi**	**180 000 km/112,500 mi**	**192 000 km/120,000 mi**	**204 000 km/127,500 mi**	**216 000 km/135,000 mi**	**228 000 km/142,500 mi**	**240 000 km/150,000 mi**
Rotate tires and perform Required Services. Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. Change engine oil and filter, if needed. Check engine air filter life percentage and status. Change engine air filter, if needed.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace passenger compartment air filter. (1)			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓		
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter.						✓						✓						✓		
Change transfer case fluid, if equipped with 4WD. (2)						✓						✓						✓		
Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires and/or boots.													✓							
Drain and fill engine cooling system. (3)																				✓
Visually inspect accessory drive belts. (4)																				✓
Replace brake fluid. (5)																				
Replace front and rear wiper blades. (6)		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓		✓
Replace hood and/or body lift support gas struts. (7)										✓										✓
Replace air conditioning desiccant. (8)																				

Footnotes — Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe

(1) Or every two years, whichever comes first. More frequent passenger compartment air filter replacement may be needed if driving in areas with heavy traffic, poor air quality, high dust levels, or environmental allergens. Passenger compartment air filter replacement may also be needed if there is reduced airflow, window fogging, or odors. Your GM dealer can help determine when to replace the filter.

(2) Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

(3) Or every five years, whichever comes first. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *377*.

(4) Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. Inspect for fraying, excessive cracking, or damage; replace, if needed.

(5) Replace brake fluid every five years. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *384*.

(6) Or every 12 months, whichever comes first. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *387*.

(7) Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. See *Gas Strut(s)* ⇨ *388*.

(8) Replace air conditioning desiccant every seven years.

Special Application Services

- Severe Commercial Use Vehicles Only: Lubricate chassis components every oil change.
- Have underbody flushing service performed. See "Underbody Maintenance" in *Exterior Care* ⇨ *442*.

Additional Maintenance and Care

Your vehicle is an important investment and caring for it properly may help to avoid future costly repairs. To maintain vehicle performance, additional maintenance services may be required.

It is recommended that your dealer perform these services — their trained dealer technicians know your vehicle best. Your dealer can also perform a thorough assessment with a multi-point inspection to recommend when your vehicle may need attention.

The following list is intended to explain the services and conditions to look for that may indicate services are required.

Battery

The 12-volt battery supplies power to start the engine and operate any additional electrical accessories.

- To avoid break-down or failure to start the vehicle, maintain a battery with full cranking power.
- Trained dealer technicians have the diagnostic equipment to test the battery and ensure that the connections and cables are corrosion-free.

Belts

- Belts may need replacing if they squeak or show signs of cracking or splitting.
- Trained dealer technicians have access to tools and equipment to inspect the belts and recommend adjustment or replacement when necessary.

Brakes

Brakes stop the vehicle and are crucial to safe driving.

- Signs of brake wear may include chirping, grinding, or squealing noises, or difficulty stopping.
- Trained dealer technicians have access to tools and equipment to inspect the brakes and recommend quality parts engineered for the vehicle.

Fluids

Proper fluid levels and approved fluids protect the vehicle's systems and components. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *461* for GM approved fluids.

- Engine oil and windshield washer fluid levels should be checked at every fuel fill.
- Instrument cluster lights may come on to indicate that fluids may be low and need to be filled.

Hoses

Hoses transport fluids and should be regularly inspected to ensure that there are no cracks or leaks. With a multi-point inspection, your dealer can inspect the hoses and advise if replacement is needed.

Lamps

Properly working headlamps, taillamps, and brake lamps are important to see and be seen on the road.

- Signs that the headlamps need attention include dimming, failure to light, cracking, or damage. The brake lamps need to be checked periodically to ensure that they light when braking.
- With a multi-point inspection, your dealer can check the lamps and note any concerns.

Shocks and Struts

Shocks and struts help aid in control for a smoother ride.

- Signs of wear may include steering wheel vibration, bounce/sway while braking, longer stopping distance, or uneven tire wear.
- As part of the multi-point inspection, trained dealer technicians can visually inspect the shocks and struts for signs of leaking, blown seals, or damage, and can advise when service is needed.

Tires

Tires need to be properly inflated, rotated, and balanced. Maintaining the tires can save money and fuel, and can reduce the risk of tire failure.

- Signs that the tires need to be replaced include three or more visible treadwear indicators; cord or fabric showing through the rubber; cracks or cuts in the tread or sidewall; or a bulge or split in the tire.
- Trained dealer technicians can inspect and recommend the right tires. Your dealer can also provide

tire/wheel balancing services to ensure smooth vehicle operation at all speeds. Your dealer sells and services name brand tires.

Vehicle Care

To help keep the vehicle looking like new, vehicle care products are available from your dealer. For information on how to clean and protect the vehicle's interior and exterior, see *Interior Care* ⇨ *446* and *Exterior Care* ⇨ *442*.

Wheel Alignment

Wheel alignment is critical for ensuring that the tires deliver optimal wear and performance.

- Signs that the alignment may need to be adjusted include pulling, improper vehicle handling, or unusual tire wear.
- Your dealer has the required equipment to ensure proper wheel alignment.

Windshield

For safety, appearance, and the best viewing, keep the windshield clean and clear.

- Signs of damage include scratches, cracks, and chips.
- Trained dealer technicians can inspect the windshield and recommend proper replacement if needed.

Wiper Blades

Wiper blades need to be cleaned and kept in good condition to provide a clear view.

- Signs of wear include streaking, skipping across the windshield, and worn or split rubber.
- Trained dealer technicians can check the wiper blades and replace them when needed.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

This maintenance section applies to vehicles with a gasoline engine. If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see “Recommended Fluids and Lubricants” in the Duramax diesel supplement.

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name or specification, including fluids or lubricants not listed here, can be obtained from your dealer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Chassis Lubrication	Lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL Coolant. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *377*.
Engine Oil	Engine oil meeting the dexos1 specification of the proper SAE viscosity grade. ACDelco dexos1 full synthetic is recommended. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *372*.
Front Axle (4WD Only) and Rear Axle.	See your dealer.
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 4 Hydraulic Brake Fluid.
Key Lock Cylinders, Hood Hinges, Body Door Hinge Pins, Power Assist Steps, Liftgate Hinge, and Fuel Door Hinge	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube. See your dealer.
Transfer Case (4WD Only)	See your dealer.
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip lubricant. See your dealer.
Windshield Washer	Automotive windshield washer fluid that meets regional freeze protection requirements.

Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter		
With high capacity air cleaner	84121219	A3244C
Without high capacity air cleaner	84121217	A3246C
Oil Filter	12707246	PF63
Passenger Compartment Air Filter	13540923	CF206C
Spark Plugs	12622441	41-114
Wiper Blades		
Driver Side – 55 cm (22 in)	84278338	—
Passenger Side – 55 cm (22 in)	84278338	—
Rear – 30 cm (12 in)	84215609	—

Maintenance Records

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. Retain all maintenance receipts.

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance Stamp	Services Performed

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 464
Service Parts Identification 464

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications 464
Engine Drive Belt Routing 466

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This legal identifier is in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver side of the vehicle. It can be seen through the windshield from outside. The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) also appears on the Vehicle Certification label and certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code identifies the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See “Engine Specifications” under *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *464* for the vehicle's engine code.

Service Parts Identification

There may be a large barcode on the certification label on the center pillar that you can scan for the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options

If there is not a large barcode on this label, then you will find this same information on a label inside of the glove box.

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in metric and English conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *461*.

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.

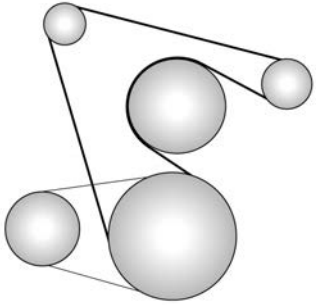
Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Air Conditioning Refrigerant	For the air conditioning system refrigerant type and charge amount, see the refrigerant label under the hood. See your dealer for more information.	
Engine Cooling System*	14.3 L	15.1 qt
Engine Oil with Filter	7.6 L	8.0 qt
Fuel Tank		
Short Wheelbase	90.8 L	24.0 gal
Long Wheelbase	106.0 L	28.0 gal
Transfer Case Fluid	1.5 L	1.6 qt
Rear Axle		
Mechanical Limited Slip	1.5 L	1.6 qt
Electronic Limited Slip	1.5 L	1.6 qt
Wheel Nut Torque	190 N•m	140 lb ft
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		
*Engine cooling system capacity values are based on the entire cooling system and its components.		

Engine Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Spark Plug Gap
6.2L V8 Engine (L87)	L	0.95–1.10 mm (0.037–0.043 in)
Spark plug gaps are preset by the manufacturer. Re-gapping the spark plug is not recommended and can damage the spark plug.		

Engine Drive Belt Routing

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement.



6.2L Engine

Customer Information

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure 467
Customer Assistance Offices 469
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 469
Online Owner Center 470
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 470
Roadside Service 471
Scheduling Service Appointments 472
Courtesy Transportation Program 473
Collision Damage Repair 474
Publication Ordering Information 476
Radio Frequency Statement 476

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 477
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 477
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 477

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 478
Cybersecurity 478
Event Data Recorders 478
OnStar 479
Infotainment System 479

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Cadillac. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE : Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service or parts manager, contact the owner of your dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO : If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by your dealership without

further help, in the U.S., call the Cadillac Customer Assistance Center at 1-800–458–8006. In Canada, call the Canadian Cadillac Customer Care Centre at 1-888-446-2000.

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting Cadillac, remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest following Step One first.

STEP THREE — U.S. Owners : Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with the new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you can file with the Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB AUTO LINE Program is an out-of-court program administered by BBB National Programs, Inc. to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB AUTO LINE Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB AUTO LINE a Division of
BBB National Programs, Inc.
1676 International Drive
Suite 550
McLean, VA 22102

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100
https://www.bbb.org/council/programs-services/dispute-handling-and-resolution/bbb-auto-line

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage, and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

STEP THREE — Canadian Owners : In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, General Motors of Canada Company wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge mediation/arbitration program. General Motors of Canada Company has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving

factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in about 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685, or call the Cadillac Customer Care Centre, 1-888-446-2000, or write to:

General Motors Cadillac Customer Care Centre
General Motors of Canada Company
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

The inquiry should be accompanied by the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Customer Assistance Offices

Cadillac encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Cadillac, the letter should be addressed to:

United States and Puerto Rico

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169
www.Cadillac.com

1-800-458-8006
1-800-833-2622 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Service: 1-800-224-1400

From U.S. Virgin Islands:

1-800-496-9994

Canada

General Motors of Canada Company
Cadillac Customer Care Centre, Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7
www.cadillaccanada.ca

1-888-446-2000 (English/French)
Cadillac Roadside Service:
1-800-882-1112

Overseas

Contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Cadillac has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user can communicate with Cadillac by dialing: 1-800-833-2622. TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.

Online Owner Center

The Cadillac Owner Center (U.S.) my.cadillac.com

Learn more about your vehicle features, shop for and manage your connected services and OnStar plans, and access diagnostic information specific to your vehicle.

Membership Benefits

: Download owner's manuals and view vehicle-specific how-to videos.

: View maintenance schedules, alerts, and Vehicle Diagnostic Information. Schedule service appointments.

: View service records from your dealership and add your own.

: Select a dealer and view locations, maps, phone numbers, and hours.

: Track your vehicle's warranty information.

: View active recalls or search by Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)* ⇨ *464*.

: Manage your profile and payment information. View your GM Rewards Card earnings and My Cadillac Rewards points.

: Chat with online help representatives.

Visit my.cadillac.com and create an account today.

Cadillac Owner Centre (Canada) mycadillac.ca

Visit the Cadillac Owner Centre at mycadillac.ca (English) or my.cadillac.ca (French) to access similar benefits to the U.S. site.

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program

GENERAL MOTORS MOBILITY

GMC

This program is available to qualified applicants for cost reimbursement, up to certain limits, of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for the vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift for the vehicle.

To learn about the GM Mobility program, see www.gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text Telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

General Motors of Canada also has a Mobility program. See cadillaccanada.ca, or call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (800-463-7483) for details. TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

Roadside Service

U.S.: 1-800-224-1400.

Canada: 1-800-882-1112.

Text Telephone (TTY) Users (U.S. Only): 1-888-889-2438.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

Calling for Service

When calling Roadside Service, have the following information ready:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number
- Telephone number of your location
- Location of the vehicle
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle
- Description of the problem

Coverage

Services are provided for the duration of the vehicle's powertrain warranty.

In the U.S., anyone driving the vehicle is covered. In Canada, a person driving the vehicle without permission from the owner is not covered.

Roadside Service is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. General Motors North America and Cadillac reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Service program at any time without notification.

General Motors North America and Cadillac reserve the right to limit services or payment to an owner or driver if they decide the claims are made too often, or the same type of claim is made many times.

Cadillac Owner Privileges™

- **Emergency Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Service to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out. A remote unlock may be available if you have OnStar. For security reasons, the driver must present identification before this service is given.
- **Emergency Tow from a Public Road or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Cadillac dealer for warranty service, or if the vehicle was in a crash and cannot be driven. Assistance is not given when the vehicle is stuck in the sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Service to change a flat tire with a spare tire. The spare tire, if equipped, must be in good condition and properly inflated. It is your responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire if it is not covered by the warranty.
- **Battery Jump Start:** Service to jump start a dead battery.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Service:** If your trip is interrupted due to a warranty failure, incidental expenses may be reimbursed during the Powertrain warranty period. Items considered are hotel, meals, and rental car or a vehicle being delivered back to the customer, up to 500 miles.

Cadillac Technician Roadside Service (U.S. Only)

Cadillac's exceptional Roadside Service is more than an auto club or towing service. It provides every Cadillac owner in the United States with the advantage of contacting a Cadillac advisor and, where available, a Cadillac trained dealer technician who can provide on-site service.

A dealer technician will travel to your location within a 30-mile radius of a participating Cadillac dealership. If beyond this radius, we will arrange to have your car towed to the nearest Cadillac dealership. Each technician travels with a specially equipped service vehicle complete with the necessary Cadillac parts and tools required to handle most roadside repairs.

Services Not Included in Roadside Service

- Impound towing caused by violation of any laws
- Legal fines
- Mounting, dismounting, or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices

Service is not provided if a vehicle is in an area that is not accessible to the service vehicle or is not a regularly traveled or maintained public road, which includes ice and winter roads. Off-road use is not covered.

Services Specific to Canadian-Purchased Vehicles

- **Fuel delivery:** Reimbursement is up to 7 liters. Diesel fuel delivery may be restricted. Propane and other fuels are not provided through this service.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Vehicle registration is required.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Service:** Pre-authorization, original detailed receipts, and a copy of the repair orders are required. Once authorization has been received, the Roadside Service advisor will help you make arrangements and explain how to receive payment. Items considered are hotel, meals, and rental car or a vehicle being delivered back to the customer, up to 800 km.
- **Alternative Service:** If assistance cannot be provided right away, the Roadside Service advisor may give you permission to get local emergency road service. You will receive payment, up to $100, after sending the original receipt to Roadside Service. Mechanical failures may be covered, however any cost for parts and labor for repairs not covered by the warranty are the owner responsibility.

Scheduling Service Appointments

When the vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising the service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If the vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it

can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If your dealer requests you to bring the vehicle for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for same-day repair.

Courtesy Transportation Program

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper-to-Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada), Federal Emission, Extended Powertrain or Electric specific warranties in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several Courtesy Transportation options are available to assist in reducing inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate manual entitled “Limited Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to do so, your dealer may offer the following transportation options:

Shuttle Service

This includes one-way or round-trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters of your dealer's area.

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If overnight warranty repairs are needed, and public transportation is used, the expense must be supported by original receipts and within the maximum amount allowed by GM. If U.S. customers arrange their own transportation, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See your dealer for information.

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

For an overnight warranty repair, the dealer may provide an available courtesy rental vehicle or provide for reimbursement of a rental vehicle. Reimbursement is limited and must be supported by original receipts as well as a signed and completed rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. Additional fees such as fuel, rental vehicle insurance, taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair are also your responsibility.

It may not be possible to provide a like vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Contact your dealer for specific availability.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change, or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Collision Damage Repair

If the vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs diminish the vehicle resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which the vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are the best choice to ensure that the vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part may be an acceptable choice to maintain the vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance; however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for the vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts is not covered by that warranty.

Repair Facility

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your dealer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state-of-the-art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Insuring the Vehicle

Protect your investment in the GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to the GM vehicle by

limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you ensure that the vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If the vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that ensures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read the lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of the lease for poor quality repairs.

If a Crash Occurs

If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move the vehicle only if its position puts you in danger, or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.

Give only the necessary information to police and other parties involved in the crash.

For emergency towing see *Roadside Service* ⇨ *471*.

Gather the following information:

- Driver name, address, and telephone number
- Driver license number
- Owner name, address, and telephone number
- Vehicle license plate number
- Vehicle make, model, and model year
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Insurance company and policy number
- General description of the damage to the other vehicle

Choose a reputable repair facility that uses quality replacement parts. See “Collision Parts” earlier in this section.

If the airbag has inflated, see *What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?* ⇨ *70*.

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that the vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take the vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by the GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with the repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember, if the vehicle is leased, you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as the cost stays within reasonable limits.

Publication Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on the engine, transmission, axle, suspension, brakes, electrical system, steering system, body, etc.

Customer Literature

Owner's manuals are written specifically for owners and are intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The owner's manual includes the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

Customer literature publications available for purchase include owner's manuals, warranty manuals, and portfolios. Portfolios include an owner's manual, warranty manual, if applicable, and zip lock bag or pouch.

Current and Past Models

Service manuals and customer literature are available for many current and past model year GM vehicles.

To order, call 1-800-551-4123 Monday–Friday, 8:00 a.m.–6:00 p.m. eastern time

For credit card orders only (VISA, MasterCard, or Discover), see Helm, Inc. at: www.helminc.com.

To order by mail, write to:

Helm, Incorporated
Attention: Customer Service
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, MI 48170

Make checks payable in U.S. funds.

Radio Frequency Statement

This vehicle uses license-exempt transmitters / receivers / systems that operate on a radio frequency that complies with Part 15/Part 18 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development (ISED) Canada's license-exempt RSS(s) / RSP-100 / ICES-GEN.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause harmful interference.
2. The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to any of these systems by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *https://www.safercar.gov;* or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E.
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *https://www.safercar.gov.*

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that the vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, and notify General Motors of Canada Company. Call Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0510; go to:

www.tc.gc.ca/recalls (English)

www.tc.gc.ca/rappels (French)

or write to:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Directorate
Defect Investigations and Recalls Division
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC J8Z 0A1

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, notify General Motors.

In the U.S., call 1-800-458-8006, or write:

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

In Canada, call 1-888-446-2000, or write:

Canadian Cadillac Customer Care Centre, Mail Code: CA1-163-005
General Motors of Canada Company
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

In Mexico, call 800-466-0805 or 800-212-234-5522.

In other Central America and Caribbean Countries, call 52-555-901-2369.

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

The vehicle has a number of computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven or used. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy them in a crash, and, if equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help the dealer technician service the vehicle or to help GM improve safety or features. Some modules may also store data about how the vehicle is operated, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may retain personal preferences, such as radio presets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Cybersecurity

GM collects information about the use of your vehicle including operational and safety related information. We collect this information to provide, evaluate, improve, and troubleshoot our products and services and to develop new products and services. The protection of vehicle electronics systems and customer data from unauthorized outside electronic access or control is important to GM. GM maintains appropriate security standards, practices, guidelines and controls aimed at defending the vehicle and the vehicle service ecosystem against unauthorized electronic access, detecting possible malicious activity in related networks, and responding to suspected cybersecurity incidents in a timely, coordinated and effective manner. Security incidents could impact your safety or compromise your private data. To minimize security risks, please do not connect your vehicle electronic systems to unauthorized devices or connect your vehicle to any unknown or untrusted networks (such as Bluetooth, WIFI or similar technology). In the event you suspect any security incident impacting your data or the safe operation of your vehicle, please stop operating your vehicle and contact your dealer.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;

- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access these data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request by police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as permitted by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

OnStar

If the vehicle is equipped with OnStar and has an active service plan, additional data may be collected and transmitted through the OnStar system. This includes information about the vehicle's operation; collisions involving the vehicle; the use of the vehicle and its features, including infotainment; and the location and approximate GPS speed of the vehicle. Refer to the OnStar Terms and Conditions and Privacy Statement on the OnStar website.

See *OnStar Additional Information* ➪ *482*.

Infotainment System

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system as part of the infotainment system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. See the infotainment section for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

OnStar

OnStar Overview
OnStar Overview 480

OnStar Services
Emergency 481
Security 481

OnStar Additional Information
OnStar Additional Information 482

OnStar Overview

Voice Command Button

Blue OnStar Button

Red Emergency Button

This vehicle may be equipped with a comprehensive, in-vehicle system that can connect to an OnStar Advisor for Emergency, Security, Navigation, Connections, and Diagnostics Services. OnStar services may require a paid service plan and data plan. OnStar requires the vehicle battery and electrical system, cellular service, and GPS satellite signals to be available and operating. OnStar acts as a link to existing emergency service providers. OnStar may collect information about you and your vehicle, including location information. See OnStar User Terms, Privacy Statement, and Software Terms for more details including system limitations at www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada).

The OnStar system status light is next to the OnStar buttons. If the status light is:

- Solid Green: System is ready.
- Flashing Green: On a call.
- Red: Indicates a problem.
- Off: System is off. Press twice to speak with an OnStar Advisor.

Press or call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) to speak to an Advisor.

Functionality of the Voice Command button may vary by vehicle and region.

Press to:

- Open the OnStar app on the infotainment display. If equipped, the infotainment system has OnStar controls in the embedded OnStar app on the Home Page. Most OnStar functions that can be performed with the buttons can be done using the app. To open the app, touch the OnStar icon on the Home Page. App

updates require a corresponding service plan. Features vary by region and model. Features are subject to change. For more information, see my.cadillac.com/learn or press On.

Or

- Give OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation voice commands.
- Obtain and customize the Wi-Fi hotspot name or SSID and password, if equipped.

Press On to connect to an Advisor to:

- Verify account information or update contact information.
- Get driving directions.
- Receive a Diagnostic check of the vehicle's key operating systems.
- Receive Roadside Service.
- Manage Wi-Fi Settings, if equipped.

Press SOS to get a priority connection to an OnStar Advisor available 24/7 to:

- Get help for an emergency.
- Be a Good Samaritan or respond to an AMBER Alert.
- Get assistance in severe weather or other crisis situations and find evacuation routes.

OnStar Services

Emergency

Emergency Services require an active safety and security plan. With Automatic Crash Response, built-in sensors can automatically alert a specially trained OnStar Advisor who is immediately connected in to the vehicle to help.

Press SOS for a priority connection to an OnStar Advisor who can contact emergency service providers, direct them to your exact location, and relay important information.

With OnStar Crisis Assist, specially trained Advisors are available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, to provide a central point of contact, assistance, and information during a crisis.

With Roadside Service, Advisors can locate a nearby service provider to help with a flat tire, a battery jump, or an empty gas tank.

Security

If equipped, OnStar provides these services:

- With Stolen Vehicle Assistance, OnStar Advisors can use GPS to pinpoint the vehicle and help authorities quickly recover it.
- With Remote Ignition Block, if equipped, OnStar can block the engine from being restarted.
- With Stolen Vehicle Slowdown, if equipped, OnStar can work with law enforcement to gradually slow the vehicle down.

Theft Alarm Notification

If equipped, if the doors are locked and the vehicle alarm sounds, a notification by text, e-mail, or phone call will be sent. If the vehicle is stolen, an OnStar Advisor can work with authorities to recover the vehicle.

OnStar Additional Information

In-Vehicle Audio Messages

Audio messages may play important information at the following times:

- Prior to vehicle purchase. Press On to set up an account.
- After change in ownership and at 90 days.

Transferring Service

Press On to request account transfer eligibility information. The Advisor can cancel or change account information.

Selling/Transferring the Vehicle

Call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) immediately to terminate your OnStar or connected services if the vehicle is disposed of, sold, transferred, or if the lease ends.

Reactivation for Subsequent Owners

Press On and follow the prompts to speak to an Advisor as soon as possible. The Advisor will update vehicle records and explain OnStar or connected service options.

How OnStar Service Works

Automatic Crash Response, Emergency Services, Crisis Assist, Stolen Vehicle Assistance, Remote Services, and Roadside Service are available on most vehicles. Not all OnStar services are available everywhere or on all vehicles. For more information, a full description of OnStar services, system limitations, and OnStar User Terms, Privacy Statement, and Software Terms:

- Call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).
- See www.onstar.com (U.S.).
- See www.onstar.ca (Canada).
- Call TTY 1-877-248-2080.
- Press On to speak with an Advisor.

OnStar or connected services cannot work unless the vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area. The wireless service provider must also have coverage, network capacity, reception, and technology compatible with OnStar or connected services. Service involving location information about the vehicle cannot work unless GPS signals are available, unobstructed, and compatible with the OnStar hardware. OnStar or connected services may not work if the OnStar equipment is not properly installed or it has not been properly maintained. If equipment or software is added, connected, or modified, OnStar or connected services may not work. Other problems beyond the control of OnStar — such as hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather, electrical system design and architecture of the vehicle, damage to the vehicle in a crash, or wireless phone network congestion or jamming — may prevent service.

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *476*.

Services for People with Disabilities

Advisors provide services to help with physical disabilities and medical conditions.

Press On to help:

- Locate a gas station with an attendant to pump gas.
- Find a hotel, restaurant, etc., that meets accessibility needs.
- Provide directions to the closest hospital or pharmacy in urgent situations.

TTY Users

OnStar has the ability to communicate to deaf, hard-of-hearing, or speech-impaired customers while in the vehicle. The available dealer-installed TTY system can provide in-vehicle access to all OnStar services, except Virtual Advisor and OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation.

If equipped, TTY mode can be turned on or off by touching Settings, then Apps, and then Phone. When TTY mode is on, phone calls can be made or received with OnStar using the infotainment display.

OnStar Personal Identification Number (PIN)

A PIN is needed to access some OnStar services. The PIN will need to be changed the first time when speaking with an Advisor. To change the OnStar PIN, contact an OnStar Advisor by pressing On or calling 1-888-4ONSTAR.

Warranty

OnStar equipment may be warranted as part of the vehicle warranty.

Languages

The vehicle can be programmed to respond in multiple languages. Press On and ask for an Advisor. Advisors are available in English, Spanish, and French. Available languages may vary by country.

Potential Issues

OnStar cannot perform Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Assistance after the vehicle has been off continuously for an extended period of time without an ignition cycle. To find out the duration of time that applies for the vehicle, contact an OnStar Advisor by pressing On or calling 1-888-4ONSTAR. If the vehicle has not been started for an extended period of time, OnStar can contact Roadside Service or a locksmith to help gain access to the vehicle.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

- Obstruction of the GPS can occur in a large city with tall buildings; in parking garages; around airports; in tunnels and underpasses; or in an area with very dense trees. If GPS signals are not available, the OnStar system should still operate to call OnStar. However, OnStar could have difficulty identifying the exact location.
- In emergency situations, OnStar can use the last stored GPS location to send to emergency responders.

A temporary loss of GPS can cause loss of the ability to send a Turn-by-Turn Navigation route. The Advisor may give a verbal route or may ask for a call back after the vehicle is driven into an open area.

Cellular and GPS Antennas

Cellular reception is required for OnStar to send remote signals to the vehicle. Do not place items over or near the antenna to prevent blocking cellular and GPS signal reception.

Unable to Connect to OnStar Message

If there is limited cellular coverage or the cellular network has reached maximum capacity, this message may come on. Press to try the call again or try again after driving a few miles into another cellular area.

Vehicle and Power Issues

OnStar services require a vehicle electrical system, wireless service, and GPS satellite technologies to be available and operating for features to function properly. These systems may not operate if the battery is discharged or disconnected.

Add-on Electrical Equipment

The OnStar system is integrated into the electrical architecture of the vehicle. Do not add any electrical equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *365*. Added electrical equipment may interfere with the operation of the OnStar system and cause it to not operate.

Vehicle Software Updates

OnStar or GM may remotely deliver software updates or changes to the vehicle without further notice or consent. These updates or changes may enhance or maintain safety, security, or the operation of the vehicle or the vehicle systems. Software updates or changes may affect or erase data or settings that are stored in the vehicle, such as saved navigation destinations or pre-set radio stations. Neither OnStar nor GM is responsible for any affected or erased data or settings. These updates or changes may also collect personal information. Such collection is described in the OnStar privacy statement or separately disclosed at the time of installation. These updates or changes may also cause a system to automatically communicate with GM servers to collect information about vehicle system status, identify whether updates or changes are available, or deliver updates or changes. An active OnStar agreement constitutes consent to these software updates or changes and agreement that either OnStar or GM may remotely deliver them to the vehicle.

Privacy

The complete OnStar Privacy Statement may be found at www.onstar.com (U.S.), or www.onstar.ca (Canada). We recommend that you review it. If you have any questions, call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or press to speak with an Advisor. Users of wireless communications are cautioned that the privacy of any information sent via wireless cellular communications cannot be assured.

Third parties may unlawfully intercept or access transmissions and private communications without consent.

OnStar - Software Acknowledgements

To obtain the source code under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses, that is contained in this product, please visit https://opensource.lge.com. In addition to the source code, all referred license terms, warranty disclaimers, and copyright notices are available for download. This offer is valid for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product. This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information.

*Provided through LG Electronics Inc., who is solely responsible for provisions of related OSS compliance.

Connected Services

Connected Services

Navigation 486
Connections 486
Diagnostics 488

Connected Services

Navigation

Navigation requires a specific OnStar or connected service plan.

Press to receive Turn-by-Turn directions or have them sent to the vehicle's navigation screen, if equipped. Select Turn-by-Turn Directions from the Services tab of the OnStar app to call an Advisor or select a recent or favorite destination. Touch the navigation icons to select home, address, or place. A destination transfer from OnStar will show the detail view of the destination when it is transferred from OnStar to the Navigation application. See www.onstar.com for a coverage map. Services vary by model. Map coverage is available in the United States and Canada.

Turn-by-Turn Navigation

1. Press to connect to an Advisor.
2. Request directions to be downloaded to the vehicle.
3. Follow the voice-guided commands.

Using Voice Commands During a Planned Route

Functionality of the Voice Command button, if equipped, may vary by vehicle and region. For some vehicles, press to open the OnStar app on the infotainment display.

Send Destination to Vehicle

Directions can be sent to the vehicle's navigation screen, if equipped.

Press , then ask the Advisor to download directions to the vehicle's navigation system, if equipped. After the call ends, the navigation screen will provide prompts to begin driving directions. Routes that are sent to the navigation screen can only be canceled through the navigation system.

See www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada).

Connections

The following services help with staying connected.

For coverage maps, see www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada).

Ensuring Security

- Change the default passwords for the Wi-Fi hotspot and myCadillac mobile app. Make these passwords different from each other and use a combination of letters and numbers to increase the security.
- Change the default name of the SSID (Service Set Identifier). This is your network's name that is visible to other wireless devices. Choose a unique name and avoid family names or vehicle descriptions.

Wi-Fi Hotspot (If Equipped)

The vehicle may have a built-in Wi-Fi hotspot that provides access to the Internet and web content at 4G LTE speed. Up to seven mobile devices can be connected. A data plan is required. Use the in-vehicle controls only when it is safe to do so.

1. To retrieve Wi-Fi hotspot information, press to open the OnStar app on the infotainment display, then select Wi-Fi Hotspot. On some vehicles, touch Wi-Fi or Wi-Fi Settings on the screen.
2. The Wi-Fi settings will display the Wi-Fi hotspot name (SSID), password, and on some vehicles, the connection type (no Internet connection, 3G, 4G, 4G LTE), and signal quality (poor, good, excellent). The LTE icon shows connection to Wi-Fi. It is possible that the icon may not illuminate even though the vehicle has an active connection.
3. To change the SSID or password, press or call 1-888-4ONSTAR to connect with an Advisor. On some vehicles, the SSID and password can be changed in the Wi-Fi Hotspot menu.

After initial set-up, your vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot will connect automatically to your mobile devices. Manage data usage by turning Wi-Fi on or off on your mobile device, by using the myCadillac mobile app, or by contacting an OnStar Advisor.

On some vehicles, Wi-Fi can also be managed from the Wi-Fi Hotspot menu.

MyCadillac Mobile App (If Available)

Download the myCadillac mobile app to compatible Apple and Android smartphones. Cadillac users can access the following services from a smartphone:

- Remotely start/stop the vehicle, if factory-equipped.
- Lock/unlock doors, if equipped with automatic locks.
- Activate the horn and lamps.
- Check the vehicle's fuel level, oil life, or tire pressure, if factory-equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System.
- Send destinations to the vehicle.
- Locate the vehicle on a map (U.S. market only).
- Turn the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot on/off, manage settings, and monitor data consumption, if equipped.
- Locate a dealer and schedule service.
- Request Roadside Service.

- Set a parking reminder with pin drop, take a photo, make a note, and set a timer.
- Connect with Cadillac on social media.

Features are subject to change. For myCadillac mobile app information and compatibility, see my.cadillac.com.

An active OnStar or connected service plan may be required. A compatible device, factory-installed remote start, and power locks are required. Data rates apply. See www.onstar.com for details and system limitations.

Remote Services

Contact an OnStar Advisor to unlock the doors or sound the horn and flash the lamps.

Marketplace

OnStar Advisors can provide offers from restaurants and retailers on your route, help locate hotels, or book a room. These services vary by market.

Diagnostics

By monitoring and reporting on the vehicle's key systems, OnStar Advanced Diagnostics, if equipped, provides a way to keep up on maintenance. Capabilities vary by model. See www.onstar.com for details and system limitations. Features are subject to change. For updates on feature capabilities, see my.cadillac.com. Message and data rates may apply.

Index

A

Accessories and Modifications 368
Accessory Power 249
Adaptive Cruise Control 274
Add-On Electrical Equipment 365
Additional Information
  OnStar 482
Additional Maintenance
  and Care 458
Adjustments
  Lumbar, Front Seats 43
Agreements
  Trademarks and License 211
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 376
Air Conditioning 220, 224
Air Filter
  Life System 376
Air Filter, Passenger
  Compartment 227
Air Suspension
  Four Corner 269
Air Vents 226
Airbag System
  Check 76
  How Does an Airbag Restrain? 69
  Passenger Sensing System 71
  What Makes an Airbag
    Inflate? 69
Airbag System (cont'd)
  What Will You See after an
    Airbag Inflates? 70
  When Should an Airbag
    Inflate? 68
  Where Are the Airbags? 67
Airbags
  Adding Equipment to the
    Vehicle 75
  Passenger Status Indicator 121
  Readiness Light 120
  Servicing Airbag-Equipped
    Vehicles 75
  System Check 65
Alarm
  Vehicle Security 27
Alert
  Lane Change 326
  Rear Cross Traffic 318
  Rear Pedestrian 317
  Side Blind Zone (SBZA) 326
All-Season Tires 401
AM-FM Radio 165
Antenna
  Multi-band 170
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 261
  Warning Light 125

Appearance Care
Exterior 442
Interior 446
Apple CarPlay and
Android Auto 202
Armrest Storage 98
Assistance Systems for Driving 318
Assistance Systems for Parking
and Backing 302
Audio
Bluetooth 173
Auto Stop
Stop/Start System 247
Automatic
Dimming Mirrors 32
Door Locks 18
Emergency Braking (AEB) 320
Headlamp System 153
Parking Assist (APA) 313
Transmission 251
Transmission Fluid 375
Vehicle Hold Light 125
Automatic Transmission
Manual Mode 255
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) 263
Avoiding Untrusted Media
Devices 170
Axle, Front 386
Axle, Rear 386

B

Battery
Exterior Lighting Battery
Saver 158
Load Management 157
Power Protection 157
Battery - North America 385, 434
Blade Replacement, Wiper 387
Bluetooth
Overview 197, 198
Bluetooth Audio 173
Brake
Electric Boost 261
Parking, Electric 261
System Warning Light 124
Brake Pad Life System 383
Brakes 382
Antilock 261
Assist 263
Fluid 384
Pad Life System 383
Braking 231
Automatic Emergency (AEB) 320
Reverse Automatic 315
Braking System
Front Pedestrian (FPB) 322
Break-In, New Vehicle 244
Buckle To Drive 58
Bulb Replacement
Headlamp Aiming 389
Headlamps 389
Buying New Tires 417

C

Calibration 108
California
Perchlorate Materials
Requirements 368
California Proposition
65 Warning 385, 434,
Back Cover
Camera
Rear Vision (RVC) 303
Canadian Vehicle Owners 1
Capacities and Specifications 464
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 251
Liftgate 19
Winter Driving 239
Cargo
Tie-Downs 100
Caution, Danger, and Warning 2
Center Console Storage 99
Chains, Tire 420

Charging
Wireless 111
Charging System Light 122
Check
Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator) 122
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 78
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 83
Older Children 76
Securing 91, 94
Systems 80
Circuit Breakers 391
Cleaning
Exterior Care 442
Interior Care 446
Climate Control Systems
Dual Automatic 220
Rear 224
Clock 108
Cluster, Instrument 114
Collision Damage Repair 474
Compartments
Storage 97
Compass 108
Connected Services
Connections 486
Connected Services (cont'd)
Diagnostics 488
Navigation 486
Connections
Connected Services 486
Control
Traction and Electronic Stability 264
Control of a Vehicle 231
Controls
Steering Wheel 161
Convenience Net 101
Convex Mirrors 31
Coolant
Engine Temperature Gauge 117
Engine Temperature Warning Light 128
Cooling 220, 224
Cooling System 377
Cornering Lamps 155
Courtesy Transportation Program 473
Coverage Explanations 191
Cruise Control 272
Light 131
Cruise Control, Adaptive 274
Cruise Control, Super 285
Cupholders 97
Customer Assistance 469
Offices 469
Text Telephone (TTY) Users 469
Customer Information
Publications Ordering Information 476
Customer Satisfaction
Procedure 467
Cybersecurity 478

D

Damage Repair, Collision 474
Danger, Warning, and Caution 2
Data Collection
Infotainment System 479
OnStar 479
Data Recorders, Event 478
Database Coverage Explanations 191
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 153
Defensive Driving 231
Delayed Locking 18
Destination 184
Diagnostics
Connected Services 488
Distracted Driving 230
Dome Lamps 156

Door
Ajar Light 132
Delayed Locking 18
Locks 14
Power Locks 17
Drive Belt Routing, Engine 466
Driver
Teen 208
Driver Assistance Systems 301
Driver Information
Center (DIC) 132
Driver Mode Control 266
Driver Mode Control Light 128
Driving
Assistance Systems 318
Better Fuel Economy 230
Characteristics and
Towing Tips 335
Defensive 231
Hill and Mountain Roads 238
If the Vehicle is Stuck 240
Impaired 231
Loss of Control 233
Off-Road 234
Off-Road Recovery 233
Vehicle Load Limits 240
Wet Roads 237
Winter 239
Dual Automatic Climate
Control System 220
Dynamic Fuel Management 250

E

Electric Brake Boost 261
Electric Parking Brake 261
Electric Parking Brake Light 124
Electrical Equipment, Add-On 365
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse
Block 392
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 391
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 396
Overload 389
Rear Compartment Fuse
Block 398
Emergency
OnStar 481
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 376
Check Light (Malfunction
Indicator) 122
Compartment Overview 371
Coolant Temperature Gauge 117
Coolant Temperature
Warning Light 128
Cooling System 377
Engine (cont'd)
Drive Belt Routing 466
Exhaust 251
Fan 381
Oil Life System 374
Oil Pressure Gauge 116
Oil Pressure Light 130
Overheating 380
Power Messages 139
Running While Parked 251
Starting 246
Engine Air Filter Life System 376
Entry Lighting 156
Equipment, Towing 343
Event Data Recorders 478
Exit Lighting 157
Extended Parking 250
Extender, Seat Belt 64
Exterior Lamp Controls 150
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 152
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 158

F

Fan
Engine 381
Filter,
Engine Air Cleaner 376

Flash-to-Pass 152
Flashers, Hazard Warning 154
Flat Tire 421
  Changing 422
Floor Mats 450
Fluid
  Automatic Transmission 375
  Brakes 384
  Washer 382
Folding Mirrors 31
Forward Collision Alert (FCA)
  System 318
Four Corner Air Suspension
  Light 129
Four Corner Air Suspension
  System 269
Four-Wheel
  Drive 385
  Drive System 256
Frequency Statement
  Radio 476
Front Axle 386
Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB)
  System 322
Front Seats
  Heated and Ventilated 47
Fuel
  Additives 332
Fuel (cont'd)
  Dynamic Management 250
  Economy, Driving for Better 230
  Filling a Portable Fuel
    Container 334
  Filling the Tank 332
  Foreign Countries 332
  Gauge 116
  Low Fuel Warning Light 130
  Prohibited Fuels 332
  Recommended 331
  Top Tier 331
Full-Size Spare Tire 433
Fuses
  Engine Compartment Fuse
    Block 392
  Fuses and Circuit Breakers 391
  Instrument Panel Fuse Block 396
  Rear Compartment Fuse
    Block 398

G

Garage Door Opener 146
  Programming 146
Gas Strut(s) 388
Gauges
  Engine Coolant Temperature 117
  Engine Oil Pressure 116
Gauges (cont'd)
  Fuel 116
  Odometer 116
  Speedometer 115
  Tachometer 116
  Transmission Temperature 118
  Trip Odometer 116
  Voltmeter 119
  Warning Lights and
    Indicators 113
General Information
  Service and Maintenance 451
  Towing 334
  Vehicle Care 368
Glass Replacement 388
Global Positioning
  System (GPS) 189
Glove Box 97
GM Mobility Reimbursement
  Program 470
Guidance
  Problems with the Route 190

H

Hazard Warning Flashers 154
HD Radio Technology 167
Head Restraints 40
Head-up Display 136

Headlamp Leveling Control 154
Headlamps
Aiming 389
Automatic 153
Bulb Replacement 389
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) 153
Flash-to-Pass 152
High-Beam On Light 131
High/Low Beam Changer 152
Lamps On Reminder 131
Heated
Rear Seats 53
Steering Wheel 104
Heated and Ventilated Front
Seats 47
Heated Mirrors 32
Heating 220, 224
High-Beam On Light 131
High-Speed Operation 408
Hill and Mountain Roads 238
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 263
Hood 369
Horn 104
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly ... 58
HVAC 220, 224

I
If the System Needs Service 191
Ignition Positions 245
Immobilizer 30
Indicator
Pedestrian Ahead 126
Vehicle Ahead 126
Infants and Young Children,
Restraints 78
Information
Publication Ordering 476
Vehicle 135
Infotainment
Rear Seat System 174
Infotainment System 479
Instrument Cluster 114
Instrument Panel Overview 4
Interior Lamps 155
Interior Rearview Mirrors 33
Introduction 1, 159

J
Jump Starting - North America 434

K
Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 7
Keys 6

L
Labeling, Tire Sidewall 402
Lamps
Cornering 155
Daytime Running (DRL) 153
Dome 156
Exterior Controls 150
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 152
Exterior Lighting Battery
Saver 158
Interior 155
Malfunction Indicator (Check
Engine) 122
On Reminder 131
Reading 156
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 326
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 329
Lane Keep Assist Light 126
Lap-Shoulder Belt 61
LATCH System
Replacing Parts after a Crash 91
LATCH, Lower Anchors and
Tethers for Children 83
LED Lighting 389
Leveling Control
Headlamp 154
Liftgate 19

Lighting
Entry 156
Exit 157
Illumination Control 155
LED 389
Lights
Airbag Readiness 120
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 125
Automatic Vehicle Hold 125
Brake System Warning 124
Charging System 122
Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) 122
Cruise Control 131
Door Ajar 132
Driver Mode Control 128
Electric Parking Brake 124
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 128
Engine Oil Pressure 130
Flash-to-Pass 152
Four Corner Air Suspension 129
High-Beam On 131
High/Low Beam Changer 152
Lane Keep Assist 126
Low Fuel Warning 130
Seat Belt Reminders 119
Lights (cont'd)
Security 131
Service Electric Parking Brake 125
StabiliTrak OFF 127
Tire Pressure 130
Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak 127
Traction Off 127
Lock
Steering Column 29
Locking Rear Axle 269
Locks
Automatic Door 18
Delayed Locking 18
Door 14
Lockout Protection 18
Power Door 17
Safety 19
Loss of Control 233
Low Fuel Warning Light 130
Low-Profile Tires 402
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 83
Lumbar Adjustment 43
Front Seats 43

M

Magnetic Ride Control 269
Maintenance
Records 463
Maintenance and Care
Additional 458
Maintenance Schedule 452
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 461
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 122
Manual Mode 255
Map Data Updates 191
Maps 184
Massage
Seats 44
Media
Avoiding Untrusted Devices 170
Memory Seats 45
Messages
Engine Power 139
Vehicle 138
Vehicle Speed 139
Mirror
Rear Camera 33
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming 32
Automatic Dimming Rearview 33
Convex 31

Mirrors (cont'd)
Folding 31
Heated 32
Power 31
Tilt in Reverse 33
Mirrors, Interior Rearview 33
Mode 266
Driver Control 266
Monitor System, Tire Pressure 409
Multi-band Antenna 170

N

Navigation
Connected Services 486
Destination 184
Using the System 180
Navigation Symbols 184
Net, Convenience 101
New Vehicle Break-In 244
Night Vision System 323

O

Odometer 116
Trip 116
Off-Road 234
Driving 234
Recovery 233
Oil
Engine 372
Oil (cont'd)
Engine Oil Life System 374
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge 116
Pressure Light 130
Older Children, Restraints 76
Online Owner Center 470
OnStar 479
OnStar Additional Information 482
OnStar Emergency 481
OnStar Overview 480
OnStar Security 481
Outlets
Power 108
Overheating, Engine 380
Overview 160
Instrument Panel 4

P

Park
Shifting Into 249
Shifting Out of 250
Park Assist 302, 311
Parking
Brake and P (Park)
Mechanism Check 386
Extended 250
Over Things That Burn 250
Parking Assist
Automatic 313
Parking or Backing
Assistance Systems 302
Passenger Airbag Status
Indicator 121
Passenger Compartment Air
Filter 227
Passenger Sensing System 71
Pedestrian Ahead Indicator 126
Perchlorate Materials
Requirements, California 368
Personalization
Vehicle 139
Phone
Apple CarPlay and
Android Auto 202
Bluetooth 197, 198
Port
USB 170
Positioning
Vehicle 190
Power
Door Locks 17
Mirrors 31
Outlets 108
Protection, Battery 157
Retained Accessory (RAP) 249

Power (cont'd)
Seat Adjustment 42
Windows 35
Power Assist Steps 27
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 63
Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording 478
Problems with Route Guidance 190
Program
Courtesy Transportation 473
Prohibited Fuels 332
Proposition 65 Warning,
California ..... 385, 434, Back Cover
Publication Ordering
Information 476

R

Radio
HD Radio Technology 167
Radio Data System (RDS) 168
Radio Frequency Statement 476
Radio Reception 169
Radios
AM-FM Radio 165
Satellite 168
Reading Lamps 156
Rear
Seat Infotainment (RSI)
System 174
Rear Axle 386
Locking 269
Rear Camera Mirror 33
Rear Climate Control System 224
Rear Cross Traffic Alert System ... 318
Rear Pedestrian Alert 317
Rear Seats 49
Heated 53
Rear Storage 98
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 302, 303
Rear Window Washer/Wiper 107
Rearview Mirrors
Automatic Dimming 33
Reclining Seatbacks 43
Recognition
Voice 191
Recommended
Fuel 331
Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants 461
Records
Maintenance 463
Recreational Vehicle Towing 438
Reimbursement Program, GM
Mobility 470
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)
System 7
Remote Vehicle Start 13
Replacement
Glass 388
Replacement Parts
Airbags 76
Maintenance 462
Replacing Airbag System 76
Replacing LATCH System Parts
after a Crash 91
Replacing Seat Belt System
Parts after a Crash 65
Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government 477
General Motors 477
U.S. Government 477
Restraints
Where to Put 82
Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) 249
Reverse Automatic Braking 315
Reverse Tilt Mirrors 33
Ride Control Systems
Magnetic 269
Roads
Driving, Wet 237
Roadside Service 471

Roof
Sunroof 37
Roof Rack System 101
Rotation, Tires 415
Routing, Engine Drive Belt 466
Running the Vehicle While Parked 251

S

Safety Defects Reporting
Canadian Government 477
General Motors 477
U.S. Government 477
Safety Locks 19
Safety System Check 64
Satellite Radio 168
Scheduling Appointments 472
Seat Belts 57
Buckle To Drive 58
Care 64
Extender 64
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 58
Lap-Shoulder Belt 61
Reminders 119
Replacing after a Crash 65
Use During Pregnancy 63
Seats
Head Restraints 40
Heated and Ventilated Front 47
Heated, Rear 53
Lumbar Adjustment, Front 43
Massage 44
Memory 45
Power Adjustment, Front 42
Rear 49
Reclining Seatbacks 43
Second Row 49
Third Row Seat 54
Second Row Seats 49
Securing Child Restraints 91, 94
Security
Light 131
OnStar 481
Vehicle 27
Vehicle Alarm 27
Service 228
Accessories and Modifications 368
Doing Your Own Work 369
Maintenance Records 463
Maintenance, General Information 451
Parts Identification 464
Scheduling Appointments 472
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 125
Services
Special Application 458
Servicing System 191
Servicing the Airbag 75
Settings 204
Shifting
Into Park 249
Out of Park 250
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 326
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 154
Software Updates 165
Special Application Services 458
Specifications and Capacities 464
Speedometer 115
StabiliTrak
OFF Light 127
Start Assist, Hill 263
Start Vehicle, Remote 13
Starting the Engine 246
Steering 232
Heated Wheel 104
Wheel Adjustment 104
Wheel Controls 104
Steering Column Lock 29
Steering Wheel Controls 161

Steps
Power Assist 27
Stop/Start System 247
Storage
Rear 98
Storage Areas
Armrest 98
Center Console 99
Convenience Net 101
Glove Box 97
Roof Rack System 101
Storage Compartments 97
Struts
Gas 388
Stuck Vehicle 240
Sun Visors 37
Sunroof 37
Super Cruise 285
Surround Vision System 303
Symbols 2
Navigation 184
System
Brake Pad Life 383
Engine Air Filter Life 376
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) 318
Four Corner Air Suspension 269
Global Positioning 189
Infotainment 479
System (cont'd)
Night Vision 323
Rear Cross Traffic Alert 318
Rear Seat Infotainment (RSI) 174
Roof Rack 101
Surround Vision 303
Systems
Driver Assistance 301

T

Tachometer 116
Teen Driver 208
Text Telephone (TTY) Users 469
Theft-Deterrent Systems 30
Immobilizer 30
Third-Row Seats 54
Time 108
Tires 400
All-Season 401
Buying New Tires 417
Chains 420
Changing 422
Designations 403
Different Size 418
Full-Size Spare 433
If a Tire Goes Flat 421
Inspection 414
Low Profile 402
Tires (cont'd)
Pressure 406, 408
Pressure Light 130
Pressure Monitor Operation 410
Pressure Monitor System 409
Rotation 415
Sidewall Labeling 402
Terminology and Definitions 404
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 418
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 420
Wheel Replacement 420
When It Is Time for New Tires 416
Winter 401
Top Tier Fuel 331
Towing
Driving Characteristics 335
Equipment 343
General Information 334
Recreational Vehicle 438
Trailer 339
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) 352
Vehicle 437
Traction
Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak Light 127
Off Light 127

Traction Control/Electronic
Stability Control 264
Trademarks and License
Agreements 211
Trailer
Sway Control (TSC) 352
Towing 339
Trailer Towing
App 354
Trailering App 354
Transfer Case
Four-Wheel Drive 256
Transmission
Automatic 251
Fluid, Automatic 375
Temperature Gauge 118
Transportation Program,
Courtesy 473
Trip Odometer 116
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 154

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading 418
Universal Remote System 146
Operation 148
Programming 146
Updates
Map Data 191
Updates (cont'd)
Software 165
USB Port 170
Using the Navigation System 180
Using the System 162
Using This Manual 2

V

Vehicle
Alarm System 27
Automatic Hold Light 125
Canadian Owners 1
Control 231
Identification Number (VIN) 464
Load Limits 240
Messages 138
Personalization 139
Remote Start 13
Security 27
Speed Messages 139
Towing 437
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 126
Vehicle Care
Tire Pressure 406
Vehicle Data Recording and
Privacy 478
Vehicle Hold
Automatic 263
Vehicle Hold (AVH)
Automatic 263
Vehicle Information 135
Vehicle Positioning 190
Vehicle Security
Steering Column Lock 29
Ventilation, Air 226
Visors 37
Voice Recognition 191
Voltmeter Gauge 119

W

Warning
Brake System Light 124
Caution and Danger 2
Warning Lights, Gauges, and
Indicators 113
Warnings
Hazard Flashers 154
Washer Fluid 382
Wheels
Alignment and Tire Balance 420
Different Size 418
Replacement 420
When It Is Time for New Tires 416
Where to Put the Restraint 82
Windows 35
Power 35

Windshield
Replacement 388
Wiper/Washer 105
Winter
Driving 239
Winter Tires 401
Wiper Blade Replacement 387
Wipers
Rear Washer 107
Wireless Charging 111

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

84793868 A

Scan to Access

US

Canada

- Owner's Manual
- Warranty Information
- Connected Services
- myCadillac Mobile App
- How To Videos
- Vehicle Diagnostics
- Schedule Maintenance
- Vehicle Features

United States

Customer Assistance
1-800-458-8006

Roadside Assistance
1-800-224-1400

Canada

Customer Assistance
1-888-446-2000

Roadside Assistance
1-800-882-1112

United States and Canada

Connected Services
1-888-4-ONSTAR